

¹

©Copyright 2021

²

Sean Gasiorowski

$HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ or How I Learned to Stop Worrying and Love the QCD Background

Sean Gasiorowski

A dissertation
submitted in partial fulfillment of the
requirements for the degree of

Doctor of Philosophy

University of Washington

2021

Reading Committee:

Anna Goussiou, Chair

Jason Detwiler

Shih-Chieh Hsu

David Kaplan

Henry Lubatti

Thomas Quinn

Gordon Watts

Program Authorized to Offer Degree:
Physics

22

University of Washington

23

Abstract

24

$HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ or How I Learned to Stop Worrying and Love the QCD Background

25

Sean Gasiorowski

26

Chair of the Supervisory Committee:

27

Professor Anna Goussiou

28

Physics

29

Insert abstract here

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
31 List of Figures	iv
32 Glossary	xix
33 Preface	xxii
34 Chapter 1: The Standard Model of Particle Physics	1
35 1.1 Introduction: Particles and Fields	1
36 1.2 Quantum Electrodynamics	4
37 1.3 An Aside on Group Theory	9
38 1.4 Quantum Chromodynamics	11
39 1.5 The Weak Interaction	14
40 1.6 The Higgs Potential and the SM	20
41 1.7 The Standard Model: A Summary	26
42 Chapter 2: Di-Higgs Phenomenology and Physics Beyond the Standard Model	30
43 2.1 Intro to Di-Higgs	30
44 2.2 Resonant HH Searches	31
45 2.3 Non-resonant HH Searches	33
46 Chapter 3: Experimental Apparatus	37
47 3.1 The Large Hadron Collider	37
48 3.2 The ATLAS Experiment	40
49 Chapter 4: Simulation	49
50 4.1 Event Generation	49
51 4.2 Detector Simulation	52
52 4.3 Correlated Fluctuations in FastCaloSim	54

53	4.4 Outlook	62
54	Chapter 5: Reconstruction	64
55	5.1 Jets	64
56	5.2 Flavor Tagging	66
57	Chapter 6: Setting up the $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ Analysis	76
58	6.1 Data and Monte Carlo Simulation	78
59	6.2 Triggers	80
60	Chapter 7: Analysis Selection	84
61	7.1 Analysis Selection	84
62	7.2 Background Reduction and Top Veto	92
63	7.3 Kinematic Region Definition	95
64	7.4 Discriminating Variable	99
65	Chapter 8: Background Estimation	102
66	8.1 The Two Tag Region	103
67	8.2 Kinematic Reweighting	103
68	Chapter 9: Uncertainties and Validation	163
69	9.1 Statistical Uncertainties and Bootstrapping	163
70	9.2 Background Shape Uncertainties	168
71	9.3 Signal Uncertainties	171
72	9.4 Background Validation	173
73	Chapter 10: Results	176
74	10.1 m_{HH} Distributions	176
75	10.2 Statistical Analysis	188
76	10.3 Results	189
77	Chapter 11: Comparisons with Other Channels	196
78	Chapter 12: Conclusions	199
79	Appendix A: Overview of Other $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ Channels	216

80	Appendix B: Future Ideas for $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$	220
81	B.1 pairAGraph: A New Method for Jet Pairing	220
82	B.2 Background Estimation with Mass Plane Interpolation	225

LIST OF FIGURES

	Figure Number	Page
84 1.1 Diagram of the elementary particles described by the Standard Model [6].	3	
85 2.1 Representative diagrams for the gluon-gluon fusion production of spin-0 (X) 86 and spin-2 (G_{KK}^*) resonances which decay to two Standard Model Higgs 87 bosons. The spin-0 resonance considered for this thesis is a generic narrow 88 width resonance which may be interpreted in the context of two Higgs doublet 89 models [23], whereas the spin-2 resonance is considered as a Kaluza-Klein 90 graviton within the bulk Randall-Sundrum (RS) model [24, 25].	31	
91 2.2 Dominant contributing diagrams for non-resonant gluon-gluon fusion produc- 92 tion of HH . κ_λ and κ_t represent ratios of the Higgs self-coupling and coupling 93 to top quarks respectively, relative to the values predicted by the Standard 94 Model.	32	
95 2.3 Illustration of dominant HH branching ratios. $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ is the most common 96 decay mode, representing 34 % of all HH events produced at the LHC.	33	
97 2.4 Monte Carlo generator level m_{HH} distributions for various values of κ_λ , demon- 98 strating the impact of the interference between the two diagrams of Figure 2.2 99 on the resulting m_{HH} distribution. For $\kappa_\lambda = 0$ there is no triangle diagram con- 100 tribution, demonstrating the shape of the box diagram contribution, whereas 101 for $\kappa_\lambda = 10$, the triangle diagram dominates, with a strong low mass peak. 102 The interplay between the two is quite evident for other values, resulting in, 103 e.g., the double peaked structure present for $\kappa_\lambda = 2$ (near maximal destruc- 104 tive interference) and $\kappa_\lambda = -5$. At $\kappa_\lambda = 5$, the interference leads to a deficit at 105 high m_{HH} , resulting in a narrower distribution (and thus a more pronounced 106 low mass peak) than the $\kappa_\lambda = 10$ case. [26]	35	
107 3.1 Diagram of the ATLAS detector [46]	40	
108 3.2 Cross section of the ATLAS detector showing how particles interact with 109 various detector components [48]	42	
110 3.3 2D projections of the ATLAS coordinate system	43	

111	4.1	Schematic diagram of the Monte Carlo simulation of a hadron-hadron collision. The incoming hadrons are the green blobs with the arrows on the left and right, with the red blob in the center representing the hard scatter event, and the purple representing a secondary hard scatter. Radiation from both incoming and outgoing particles is shown, and the light green blobs represent hadronization, with the outermost dark green circles corresponding to the final state hadrons. Yellow lines are radiated photons. [62]	51
118	4.2	The projected ATLAS computational requirements for Run 3 and the HL-LHC relative to the projected computing budget. Aggressive R&D is required to keep resources within budget [65].	53
121	4.3	Energy and variable weta2, defined as the energy weighted lateral width of a shower in the second electromagnetic calorimeter layer, for 16 GeV photons with full simulation (G4) and FastCaloSimV2 (FCSV2) [67].	55
124	4.4	Example of photon and pion average shapes in 5×5 calorimeter cells. The left column shows the average shape over a sample of 10000 events, while the right column shows the energy ratio, in each cell, of single GEANT4 events with respect to this average. The photon ratios are all close to 1, while the pion ratios show significant deviation from the average.	57
129	4.5	Distribution of the ratio of voxel energy in single events to the corresponding voxel energy in the average shape, with GEANT4 events in blue and Gaussian model events in orange, for 65 GeV central pions in EMB2. Moving top to bottom corresponds to increasing α , left to right corresponds to increasing R , with core voxels numbered 1, 10, 19, Agreement is quite good across all voxels. Results are similar for the VAE method.	58
135	4.6	Correlation coefficient of ratios of voxel energy in single events to the corresponding voxel energy in the average shape, examined between the core bin from $\alpha = 0$ to $2\pi/8$ and each of the other voxels. The periodic structure represents the binning in α , and the increasing numbers in each of these periods correspond to increasing R , where the eight points with correlation coefficient 1 are the eight core bins. Both the Gaussian and VAE generated toy events are able to reproduce the major correlation structures for 65 GeV central pions in EMB2.	59
143	4.7	Comparison of the RMS fluctuations about the average shape with the Gaussian fluctuation model (red), the VAE fluctuation model (green), and without correlated fluctuations (blue) for a range of pion energies, η points, and layers.	60

146	4.8 Comparison of the Gaussian fluctuation model to the default FCSV2 version	83
147	and to G4 simulation, using pions of 65 GeV energy and $0.2 < \eta < 0.25$.	
148	Variables shown relate to calorimeter clusters, three-dimensional spatial group-	
149	ings of cells [72] which provide powerful insight on the structure of energy	
150	deposits in the calorimeter. Variables considered include number and energy	
151	of clusters, the 2nd moment in lambda, ($\langle \lambda^2 \rangle$), which describes the square	
152	of the longitudinal extension of a cluster, where λ is the distance of a cell from	
153	the shower center along the shower axis, and a cluster moment is defined as	
154	$\langle x^n \rangle = \frac{\sum E_i x_i}{\sum E_i}$, and the distance ΔR , between the cluster and the true pion.	
155	With the correlated fluctuations, variables demonstrate improved modeling	
156	relative to default FastCaloSimV2.	61
157	5.1 Illustration of an interaction producing two light jets and one b -jet in the	69
158	transverse plane. While the light jets decay “promptly”, coinciding with	
159	the primary vertex of the proton-proton interaction, the longer lifetime of B	
160	hadrons leads to a secondary decay vertex, displaced from the primary vertex	
161	by length L_{xy} . This is typically a few mm, and therefore is not directly visible	
162	in the detector, but leads to a large transverse impact parameter, d_0 , for the	
163	resulting tracks. [80]	
164	5.2 Performance of the various low and high level flavor tagging algorithms in	73
165	$t\bar{t}$ simulation, demonstrating the tradeoff between b -jet efficiency and light	
166	and c -jet rejection. The high level taggers demonstrate significantly better	
167	performance than any of the individual low level taggers, with DL1 offering	
168	slight improvements over MV2 due to the inclusion of additional input variables.	
169	5.3 Performance of the MV2, DL1, and DL1r algorithms in $t\bar{t}$ simulation, demon-	74
170	strating the tradeoff between b -jet efficiency and light and c -jet rejection. f_c	
171	controls the importance of c -jet rejection in the discriminating variable, and	
172	values shown have been optimized separately for each DL1 configuration. DL1r	
173	demonstrates a significant improvement in both light and c jet rejection over	
174	MV2 and DL1. [85]	
175	6.1 Example distributions in invariant mass of the reconstructed di-Higgs system	83
176	for a variety of spin-0 resonances ($m(X)$) compared to the Standard Model	
177	non-resonant signal (SM HH). Both are presented in their respective signal	
178	regions, after all corresponding analysis selections. The resonant signals are	
179	sharply peaked at values near their respective resonance masses, whereas the	
180	non-resonant signal is much more broad. The different character of these	
181	different signals informs the analysis design.	

182	7.1 Comparison of m_{H_1} vs m_{H_2} planes for the full Run 2 $2b$ dataset with different pairings, where m_{H_1} and m_{H_2} are the invariant masses of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates. As evidenced, this choice significantly impacts where events fall in this plane, and therefore which events fall into the various kinematic regions defined in this plane (see Section 7.3). The signal regions for the resonant/early Run 2 analysis are shown for reference for the BDT and D_{HH} pairings, while the the min ΔR signal region shifted is shifted slightly up and to the right to match the non-resonant selection. Note that the band structure around 80 GeV in both m_{H_1} and m_{H_2} is introduced by the top veto described in Section 7.2.	90
192	7.2 Comparison of signal distributions in the respective signal regions for the min ΔR and D_{HH} pairing for various values of the Higgs trilinear coupling. The distributions are quite similar at the Standard Model point, but for other variations, min ΔR does not pick up the low mass features.	91
196	7.3 Resonant search: Illustration of the impact of the top veto on $t\bar{t}$ Monte Carlo for the resonant analysis, with representative scalar signals shown for reference. The cut value used is 1.5, shown in the dashed black, and events below this value are discarded. This top veto clearly removes the bulk of $t\bar{t}$ events, and the value of the cut is chosen to retain analysis sensitivity, particularly for low mass.	93
202	7.4 Non-resonant search: Illustration of the impact of the top veto on $t\bar{t}$ Monte Carlo for the non-resonant analysis, with the Standard Model signal shown for reference. The cut value used is 1.5, shown in the dashed black, and events below this value are discarded. This top veto clearly removes the bulk of $t\bar{t}$ events. While this plot may seem to motivate a more aggressive cut on X_{Wt} , increasing the value of the cut was found to reduce analysis sensitivity.	94
208	7.5 Regions used for the resonant search, shown on the $2b$ data mass plane. The outermost region (the “control region”) is used for derivation of the nominal background estimate. The innermost region is the signal region, where the signal extraction fit is performed. The region in between (the “validation region”) is used for the assessment of an uncertainty.	96
213	7.6 Regions used for the non-resonant search. The “top” and “bottom” quadrants together comprise the control region, in which the nominal background estimate is derived. The “left” and “right” quadrants together comprise the validation region, which is used to assess an uncertainty. The signal region, in the center, is where the signal extraction fit is performed.	98

218	7.7	Acceptance times efficiency for the respective analysis selections for spin-0, spin-2, and 4b Standard Model signals. The Standard Model acceptance times efficiency is roughly consistent with the resonant signals in the mass range near the Standard Model peak (near 400 to 600 GeV). Acceptance times efficiency at low mass is mostly limited by the trigger, whereas for higher masses, the jets start to merge together, and the efficiency for reconstructing four b -tagged jets decreases. The spin-2 signal has a higher low mass acceptance times efficiency than spin-0 due to the broader signal distributions of this variable, which leads to a distortion of this distribution towards higher mass values. The increase in acceptance times efficiency at very low mass reflects the impact of the kinematic threshold of 250 GeV.	100
229	7.8	Impact of the m_{HH} correction on a range of spin-0 resonant signals. The corrected m_{HH} distributions (solid lines) are much sharper and more centered on the corresponding resonance masses than the uncorrected m_{HH} distributions (dashed).	101
233	8.1	Resonant Search: Distributions of ΔR between the closest Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.	109
236	8.2	Resonant Search: Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.	110
239	8.3	Resonant Search: Distributions of the number of jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs candidates.	111
242	8.4	Resonant Search: Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.	112
245	8.5	Resonant Search: Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.	113
248	8.6	Resonant Search: Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.	114
251	8.7	Resonant Search: Distributions of mass of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.	115

254	8.8 Resonant Search: Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the leading and sub-leading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.	116
255		
256		
257	8.9 Resonant Search: Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied	117
258		
259		
260	8.10 Resonant Search: Distributions of ΔR between the closest Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.	118
261		
262		
263	8.11 Resonant Search: Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.	119
264		
265		
266	8.12 Resonant Search: Distributions of the number of jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs candidates.	120
267		
268		
269	8.13 Resonant Search: Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.	121
270		
271		
272	8.14 Resonant Search: Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.	122
273		
274		
275	8.15 Resonant Search: Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.	123
276		
277		
278	8.16 Resonant Search: Distributions of mass of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.	124
279		
280		
281	8.17 Resonant Search: Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the leading and sub-leading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.	125
282		
283		
284	8.18 Resonant Search: Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied	126
285		
286		
287	8.19 Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of ΔR between the closest Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.	127
288		
289		
290		

291	8.20 Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.	128
294	8.21 Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of the number of jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs candidates.	129
297	8.22 Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.	130
300	8.23 Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.	131
303	8.24 Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.	132
307	8.25 Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of mass of the leading and sub-leading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.	133
310	8.26 Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.	134
313	8.27 Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied.	135
316	8.28 Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of ΔR between the closest Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.	136
320	8.29 Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.	137
323	8.30 Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of the number of jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs candidates.	138

326	8.31 Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.	139
327		
328		
329	8.32 Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.	140
330		
331		
332	8.33 Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.	141
333		
334		
335	8.34 Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of mass of the leading and sub-leading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.	142
336		
337		
338	8.35 Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.	143
339		
340		
341	8.36 Non-resonant Search (4b): Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied.	144
342		
343		
344	8.37 Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of ΔR between the closest Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.	145
345		
346		
347		
348	8.38 Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.	146
349		
350		
351	8.39 Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of the number of jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs candidates.	147
352		
353		
354	8.40 Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.	148
355		
356		
357	8.41 Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.	149
358		
359		
360	8.42 Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.	150
361		
362		

363	8.43 Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of mass of the leading and 364 subleading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after 365 (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.	151
366	8.44 Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the 367 leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR 368 derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.	152
369	8.45 Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , 370 before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control 371 Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied.	153
372	8.46 Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of ΔR between the closest 373 Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value 374 of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 375 3b1l Validation Region.	154
376	8.47 Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading 377 Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after 378 (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.	155
379	8.48 Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of the number of jets before 380 (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation 381 Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs 382 candidates.	156
383	8.49 Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading 384 Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after 385 (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.	157
386	8.50 Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd 387 leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweight- 388 ing for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.	158
389	8.51 Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs 390 Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before 391 (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation 392 Region.	159
393	8.52 Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of mass of the leading and 394 subleading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after 395 (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.	160
396	8.53 Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the 397 leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR 398 derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.	161

399	8.54 Non-resonant Search (3b1l) : Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Vali- dation Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied.	162
403	9.1 Illustration of the approximate bootstrap band procedure, shown as a ratio to the nominal estimate for the 2017 non-resonant background estimate. Each grey line is from the m_{HH} prediction for a single bootstrap training. Figure 9.1(a) shows the variation histograms constructed from median weight \pm the IQR of the replica weights. It can be seen that this captures the rough shape of the bootstrap envelope, but is not good estimate for the overall magnitude of the variation. Figure 9.1(b) demonstrates the applied normalization correction, and Figure 9.1(c) shows the final band (normalized Figure 9.1(a) + Figure 9.1(b)). Comparing this with the IQR variation for the prediction from each bootstrap in each bin in Figure 9.1(d), the approximate envelope describes a very similar variation.	167
414	9.2 Resonant Search : Example of CR vs VR variation in each H_T region for 2018. The variation nicely factorizes into low and high mass components. . .	169
416	9.3 Non-resonant Search (4b) : Example of CR vs VR variation in each signal region quadrant for 2018. Significantly different behavior is seen between quadrants, with the largest variation in quadrant 1 and the smallest in quadrant 4.	170
420	9.4 Resonant Search : Performance of the background estimation method in the resonant analysis reversed $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ kinematic signal region. A new background estimate is trained following nominal procedures entirely within the reversed $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ region, and the resulting model, including uncertainties, is compared with 4b data in the corresponding signal region. Good agreement is shown. The quoted p -value uses the χ^2 test statistic, and demonstrates no evidence that the data differs from the assessed background.	174
427	9.5 Non-resonant Search : Performance of the background estimation method in the 3b + 1 fail validation region. A new background estimate is trained following nominal procedures but with a reweighting from 2b to 3b + 1 fail events. Generally good agreement is seen, though there is some deviation at very low masses in the low $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ low X_{HH} category.	175

432	10.1 Resonant Search: Demonstration of the performance of the nominal reweighting in the control region on corrected m_{HH} , with Figure 10.1(a) showing 2 <i>b</i> events normalized to the total 4 <i>b</i> yield and Figure 10.1(b) applying the reweighting procedure. Agreement is much improved with the reweighting. Note that overall reweighted 2 <i>b</i> yield agrees with 4 <i>b</i> yield in the control region by construction.	178
438	10.2 Resonant Search: Demonstration of the performance of the control region derived reweighting in the validation region on corrected m_{HH} . Agreement is generally good for this extrapolated estimate. Note that the uncertainty band includes the extrapolation systematic, which is defined by a reweighting trained in the validation region.	179
443	10.3 Resonant Search: Signal region agreement of the background estimate and observed data after a background-only profile likelihood fit. The left plot overlays a variety of representative spin-0 signals, while the right does the same for spin-2. The background and data are identical between the two. The closure is generally quite good, though there is an evident deficit in the background estimate relative to the data for higher values of corrected m_{HH} . Note that the spin-2 signals are significantly wider than the spin-0 signals. Near the kinematic threshold of 250 GeV, this leads to, e.g., the double peaked structure of the 280 GeV signal, which is understood to be an effect of the limited kinematic phase space in this region.	180
453	10.4 Non-resonant Search (4b): Demonstration of the performance of the nominal reweighting in the control region on m_{HH} , split into the two $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ regions. Closure is generally good, with some residual mis-modeling in the low $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ region near 600 GeV.	182
457	10.5 Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Demonstration of the performance of the nominal reweighting in the control region on m_{HH} , split into the two $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ regions. Closure is generally good, with similar conclusions as for the 4 <i>b</i> region.	183
460	10.6 Non-resonant Search (4b): Demonstration of the performance of the nominal reweighting in the validation region on m_{HH} , split into the two $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ regions. The low $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ region is consistently overestimated, but, systematic uncertainties are defined via the difference between VR and CR estimates.	184
464	10.7 Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Demonstration of the performance of the nominal reweighting in the validation region on m_{HH} , split into the two $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ regions. A deficit is present near 600 GeV, but agreement is fairly good otherwise.	185

467	10.8 Non-resonant Search (4b): Signal region agreement of the background estimate and observed data after a background-only profile likelihood fit for the $4b$ channels, with Standard Model and $\kappa_\lambda = 6$ signal overlaid for reference. Modeling is generally quite good near the Standard Model peak, but disagreements are seen at very low and high masses. A deficit is present in low $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ bins near 600 GeV.	186
473	10.9 Non-resonant Search (3b1l): Signal region agreement of the background estimate and observed data after a background-only profile likelihood fit for the $3b1l$ channels, with Standard Model and $\kappa_\lambda = 6$ signal overlaid for reference. Conclusions are very similar to the $4b$ channels, with generally good modeling near the Standard Model peak, but disagreements at very low and high masses. A deficit is present near 600 GeV.	187
479	10.10 Expected (dashed black) and observed (solid black) 95% CL upper limits on the cross-section times branching ratio of resonant production for spin-0 ($X \rightarrow HH$) and spin-2 ($G_{KK}^* \rightarrow HH$). The $\pm 1\sigma$ and $\pm 2\sigma$ ranges for the expected limits are shown in the colored bands. The resolved channel expected limit is shown in dashed pink and covers the range from 251 and 1500 GeV. It is combined with the boosted channel (dashed blue) between 900 and 1500 GeV. The theoretical prediction for the bulk RS model with $k/\bar{M}_{\text{Pl}} = 1$ [25] (solid red line) is shown, with the decrease below 350 GeV due to a sharp reduction in the $G_{KK}^* \rightarrow HH$ branching ratio. The nominal $H \rightarrow b\bar{b}$ branching ratio is taken as 0.582. Note that all results use the asymptotic approximation, though the validity of this approximation for the boosted results above 3 TeV is being evaluated.	192
491	10.11 Expected (dashed black) and observed (solid black) 95% CL upper limits or spin-0 (Scalar $\rightarrow HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$) and spin-2 ($G_{KK} \rightarrow HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$) from the early Run 2 $4b$ search [2], to be compared with the results in Figure 10.10. Note that the y -axis scaling differs from Figure 10.10 by a factor of the $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ branching ratio. An excess is present at 280 GeV, with local (global) significance $3.6(2.3)\sigma$. The spin-2 bulk Randall-Sundrum model with $k/\bar{M}_{\text{Pl}} = 1$ is excluded for graviton masses between 313 and 1362 GeV. . . .	193

498	10.12 Expected (dashed black) and observed (solid black) 95% CL upper limits on	194
499	the cross-section times branching ratio of non-resonant production for a range	
500	of values of the Higgs self-coupling, with the Standard Model value ($\kappa_\lambda = 1$)	
501	illustrated with a star. The $\pm 1\sigma$ and $\pm 2\sigma$ ranges for the expected limits are	
502	shown in the colored bands. The cross section limit for HH production is set	
503	at 140 fb (180 fb) observed (expected), corresponding to an observed (expected)	
504	limit of 4.4 (5.9) times the Standard Model prediction. κ_λ is constrained to	
505	be within the range $-4.9 \leq \kappa_\lambda \leq 14.4$ observed ($-3.9 \leq \kappa_\lambda \leq 10.9$ expected).	
506	The nominal $H \rightarrow b\bar{b}$ branching ratio is taken as 0.582. The excess present for	
507	$\kappa_\lambda \geq 5$ is thought to be due to a low mass background mis-modeling, present	
508	due to the optimization of this analysis for the Standard Model point, and is not	
509	present in more sensitive channels in this same region (e.g. $HH \rightarrow bb\gamma\gamma$ [93]).	
510	10.13 Limits including only events above 381 GeV in m_{HH} , to be compared with	195
511	the limits in Figure 10.12. Such a cut is accomplished by dropping m_{HH}	
512	bins below 381 GeV, with the value of 381 GeV determined by the optimized	
513	variable width binning. All other aspects of the procedure and inputs are kept	
514	the same as in Figure 10.12. The excess at and above $\kappa_\lambda = 5$ is significantly	
515	reduced, demonstrating that such an excess is driven by low mass. Notably,	
516	there is minimal impact on the expected sensitivity with this m_{HH} cut.	
517	11.1 Comparison of full Run 2 ATLAS HH searches for spin-0 resonances. The $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$	197
518	channel (blue) is compared with full Run 2 results from $b\bar{b}\tau^+\tau^-$ (both resolved	
519	and boosted) and $b\bar{b}\gamma\gamma$, as well as the combined early Run 2 results. The	
520	$b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel has leading sensitivity above a mass of around 700 GeV, and is	
521	competitive with other channels across much of the mass range, demonstrating	
522	a strong contribution to the ATLAS HH experimental results. [114]	
523	11.2 Comparison of full Run 2 ATLAS HH searches for Standard Model HH	198
524	production. The preliminary results presented in this thesis are not yet	
525	included in these results. However, the results presented in Table 10.3 are	
526	quite competitive with the results from $b\bar{b}\tau^+\tau^-$ and $b\bar{b}\gamma\gamma$, two of the ATLAS	
527	channels with leading sensitivity in the search for HH . Note that these results	
528	include signals produced via both gluon-gluon fusion (ggF) and vector boson	
529	fusion (VBF), and are normalized as such, while the results of this thesis only	
530	include (and are normalized to) ggF production [114]	

531	A.1 Representative Feynman diagrams for the VBF channel. While this channel 532 may be used for both resonant and non-resonant searches [22], this thesis work 533 was developed concurrently with a focused non-resonant search. In addition 534 to variations of the trilinear coupling, κ_λ , VBF is sensitive to various Higgs 535 couplings to vector bosons, namely κ_V and κ_{2V} , attached to VVH and $VVHH$ 536 vertices respectively.	219
537	B.1 Comparison of distributions of $HH p_T$ in the 2018 resonant validation region 538 before reweighting for BDT pairing (left) and pairAGraph (right). $HH p_T$ is 539 a variable with a large difference between $2b$ and $4b$, but the relative shapes 540 seem to be more similar for pairAGraph than for BDT paring, corresponding 541 to the hypothesis that pairAGraph chooses more “ $4b$ -like” jets.	225
542	B.2 Comparison of distributions of $HH p_T$ in the 2018 resonant validation region 543 after reweighting for BDT pairing (left) and pairAGraph (right). $HH p_T$ is 544 a variable with a large difference between $2b$ and $4b$, and the reweighted 545 agreement in the high p_T tail is significantly improved with pairAGraph, with 546 a corresponding reduction in the assigned bootstrap uncertainty in that region.	226
547	B.3 Gaussian process sampling prediction of marginals m_{H1} and m_{H2} for $2b$ signal 548 region events compared to real $2b$ signal region events for the 2018 dataset. 549 Good agreement is seen. Only a small fraction (0.01) of the $2b$ dataset is used 550 for both training and this final comparison to mimic $4b$ statistics.	233
551	B.4 Gaussian process sampling prediction for the mass plane compared to the real 552 $2b$ dataset for 2018. Only a small fraction (0.01) of the $2b$ dataset is used for 553 both training and this final comparison to mimic $4b$ statistics. Good agreement 554 is seen.	235
555	B.5 Gaussian process sampling prediction of marginals m_{H1} and m_{H2} for $4b$ signal 556 region events compared to both control and validation reweighting predictions. 557 While there are some differences, the estimates are compatible.	236
558	B.6 Gaussian process sampling prediction for the $4b$ mass plane compared to the 559 reweighted $2b$ estimate in the signal region. Both estimates are compatible. .	237

560	B.7 Comparison of the interpolation background estimate with real 2b data in the	
561	signal region. Only 1 % of 2b data is used in order to mimic 4b statistics, and	
562	results are presented here summed across years. The “Flow Only” prediction	
563	uses samples of actual 2b signal region data for the input values of m_{H1} and	
564	m_{H2} , whereas the “Flow + GP” prediction uses samples following the Gaussian	
565	process procedure above, more closely mimicking a the full background estima-	
566	tion procedure. The two predictions are quite comparable, demonstrating the	
567	closure of the Gaussian process estimate, and the predicted m_{HH} shape agrees	
568	well with 2b data. Only 2b statistical uncertainty is shown.	238
569	B.8 Comparison of the interpolation background estimate in the 4b signal region	
570	with the control region derived reweighted 2b estimate, shown for each year	
571	individually. Results are generally similar, within around 10 %.	239

GLOSSARY

573 ARGUMENT: replacement text which customizes a L^AT_EX macro for each particular usage.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

575 Five years is both a short time and a long time – many things have happened and many
576 have stayed the same. I certainly know much more physics than I did at the outset, but also
577 have learned to ski, discovered a love for hiking, eaten large amounts of cheese, and survived
578 a pandemic by making sourdough and cinnamon rolls. Of course, the most important part of
579 any journey is the friends we made along the way – the utmost gratitude and appreciation
580 goes to the Seattle friends, for the many nights both hard at work and at College Inn, to
581 the CERN friends, for adventures around Europe and days by the lake, the Chicago friends,
582 for my position as European correspondent for the Dum Dum Donut Intellectuals, and the
583 friends from home, for New Years Eve parties and visits in between. Though we’re scattered
584 across the world, I hope to see you all soon.

585 A thank you, of course, to my family for their continued and constant support, for trying
586 their best to learn physics along with me, and going along on this Ph.D. adventure every
587 step of the way.

588 I am only writing this thesis because of the incredible support of my research group, so a
589 massive thank you to Anna, for your guidance and compassion, for advising me as both a
590 physicist and a person, and for always being available, and Jana, for shaping who I am as a
591 physicist and providing feedback on almost literally every talk that I’ve written – I knew I
592 was getting ready to graduate when you started running out of comments.

593 A special set of thank yous to the SLAC group, namely Nicole, Michael, and Rafael, for
594 being an excellent set of collaborators with an excellent set of ideas to push the analysis
595 forward, many of which are in this thesis, and for being my second research family.

596 And last but not least, a thank you to the entire $HH \rightarrow 4b$ group, of course to Max

597 and Rafael for their guidance and direction, Bejan for being an excellent collaborator and
598 co-editor for the resonant search, Dale and Alex for excelling on the boosted side of things,
599 Lucas, for great work on triggers and for diving headfirst into all of my code, the ggF push
600 squad, for a huge amount of hard work on the non-resonant, and of course the $HH \rightarrow 4\text{beers}$
601 team, many of whom have already been mentioned, but who deserve an extra shout out for
602 keeping things fun even during stressful times.

603 The physics is done, the rest is paperwork. Let us begin.

PREFACE

605 This thesis focuses primarily on searches for pair production of Higgs bosons in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$
606 final state. It begins with an overview of the relevant physics and experimental background
607 for such work, structured as follows: In Chapter 1, I provide an overview of the Standard
608 Model of particle physics, with discussion of the theoretical and experimental development of
609 such a model. Chapter 2 dives more into the details of Higgs boson pair production, as well as
610 the physics beyond the Standard Model relevant for this thesis. Chapter 3 then provides an
611 introduction to the experimental apparatus used for the presented searches, with an outline
612 of the Large Hadron Collider and the ATLAS detector. Chapter 4 details the procedure to
613 simulate the physics processes discussed in Chapters 1 and 2, including simulation of the
614 detector discussed Chapter 3. Finally, a review of the procedures to reconstruct objects used
615 for physics analysis is provided in Chapter 5, with a focus on jets and flavor-tagging.

616 The original contributions of this thesis are discussed in a variety of places. Chapter
617 4 includes my work on the development of methods to improve the modeling of hadronic
618 showers within a parametrized simulation of the ATLAS calorimeter. I entirely developed
619 both the method and the software for the Gaussian method discussed in Chapter 4, including
620 all of the validations presented there. The development of the Variational Autoencoder
621 method was done in collaboration with Dalila Salamani. This work has been published in a
622 set of proceedings [1] and implemented into ATLAS software. At the time of this writing, it
623 is a candidate for inclusion in the Run 3 simulation infrastructure.

624 Chapters 6 through 10 detail searches for resonant and non-resonant pair production of
625 Higgs bosons in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ final state. I was one of the main analyzers for both of these searches,
626 responsible for much of the development of the methods, infrastructure, and documentation.

627 My most major contribution was the development of the background estimation procedure
628 and the associated uncertainties, which I spearheaded both conceptually and practically. This
629 is quite a significant contribution for both the resonant and non-resonant, as it is the core of
630 much of the analysis design, with the most direct impact on the final results – to paraphrase
631 Georges Aad during the resonant review process, “This is the analysis.”

632 This was not my only contribution – for the resonant search, I contributed to the
633 development of the analysis selection and codebase, performed many of the necessary cross-
634 checks, and was the co-editor of the ATLAS internal documentation, along with Beojan
635 Stanislaus, who developed the BDT pairing and much of the analysis software. Credit goes as
636 well to Lucas Borgna, for much of the work behind the development of the trigger strategy.

637 The resonant search follows many of the procedures of the early Run 2 analysis [2], with
638 the pairing method and background estimation method constituting the two biggest analysis-
639 level differences from that work. The non-resonant analysis has several additional changes,
640 which include a variety of new kinematic variable and region definitions, as well as a different
641 pairing method than both the early Run 2 search and the resonant search. I was responsible
642 for a large majority of the studies behind each of these decisions. I am also responsible for
643 the development of much of the modern $4b$ software infrastructure, including, of course, the
644 background estimation framework, a new limit setting framework, and a new centralized
645 plotting framework, the latter of which greatly facilitates both studies and documentation for
646 the more complicated non-resonant analysis strategy.

647 At the time of this writing, the preliminary resonant results have been published [3], with
648 a paper soon to follow, pending some additional studies on the high mass ($> 3 \text{ TeV}$) results
649 in the boosted analysis channel ¹. The non-resonant results are more preliminary, but the
650 analysis strategy presented in this thesis is approximately final, and the analysis is beginning

¹This thesis focuses on the resolved analysis channel, so these additional studies do not impact the final results of this thesis work. The boosted channel is included in the limits presented in Figure 10.10, but in no other plots or results. See Appendix A for a description of the boosted analysis selection.

651 internal ATLAS review.

652 While these above results are the main results of this thesis, proof-of-concept studies for
653 two novel $4b$ analysis methods are included in Appendix B. This work, done in collaboration
654 primarily with Nicole Hartman, was not used for the $4b$ results presented here, but I encourage
655 the interested reader to consider these for further study in future iterations of the $4b$ analysis.
656 I note as well that, while these methods are promising in the context of the $4b$ analysis, they
657 are also methodologically interesting, and conceptually related results have been published
658 concurrently with the development of the work presented in this thesis in [4] and [5].

659

DEDICATION

660

To family, both given and found

661

Chapter 1

662

THE STANDARD MODEL OF PARTICLE PHYSICS

663

The Standard Model of Particle Physics (SM) is a monumental historical achievement, providing a formalism with which one may describe everything from the physics of everyday experience to the physics that is studied at very high energies at the Large Hadron Collider (Chapter 3). In this chapter, we will provide a brief overview of the pieces that go into the construction of such a model. The primary focus of this thesis is searches for pair production of Higgs bosons decaying to four b -quarks. Consequently, we will pay particular attention to the relevant pieces of the Higgs Mechanism, as well as the theory behind searches at a hadronic collider.

671

1.1 *Introduction: Particles and Fields*

672

What is a particle? The Standard Model describes a set of fundamental, point-like, objects shown in Figure 1.1. These objects have distinguishing characteristics (e.g., mass and spin). These objects interact in very specific ways. The set of objects and their interactions result in a set of observable effects, and these effects are the basis of a field of experimental physics.

676

The effects of these objects and their interactions are familiar as fundamental forces: electromagnetism (photons, electrons), the strong interaction (quarks, gluons), the weak interaction (neutrinos, W and Z bosons). Gravity is not described in this model, as the weakest, with effects most relevant on much larger distance scales than the rest. However, the description of these other three is powerful – verifying and searching for cracks in this description is a large effort, and the topic of this thesis.

682

The formalism for describing these particles and their interactions is that of quantum field theory. Classical field theory is most familiar in the context of, e.g., electromagnetism – an

684 electric field exists in some region of space, and a charged point-particle experiences a force
685 characterized by the charge of the point-particle and the magnitude of the field at the location
686 of the point-particle in spacetime. The same language translates to quantum field theory.
687 Here, particles are described in terms of quantum fields in some region of spacetime. These
688 fields have associated charges which describe the forces they experience when interacting
689 with other quantum fields. Most familiar is electric charge – however this applies to e.g., the
690 strong interaction as well, where quantum fields have an associated *color charge* describing
691 behavior under the strong force.

692 Particles are observed to behave in different ways under different forces. These behaviors
693 respect certain *symmetries*, which are most naturally described in the language of group
694 theory. The respective fields, charges, and generators of these symmetry groups are the basic
695 pieces of the SM Lagrangian, which describes the full dynamics of the theory. In the following,
696 we will build up the basic components of this Lagrangian. The treatment presented here relies
697 heavily on Jackson's Classical Electrodynamics [7] for the build-up, and Thomson's Modern
698 Particle Physics [8] for the rest, with reference to Srednicki's Quantum Field Theory [9], and
699 some personal biases and interjections.

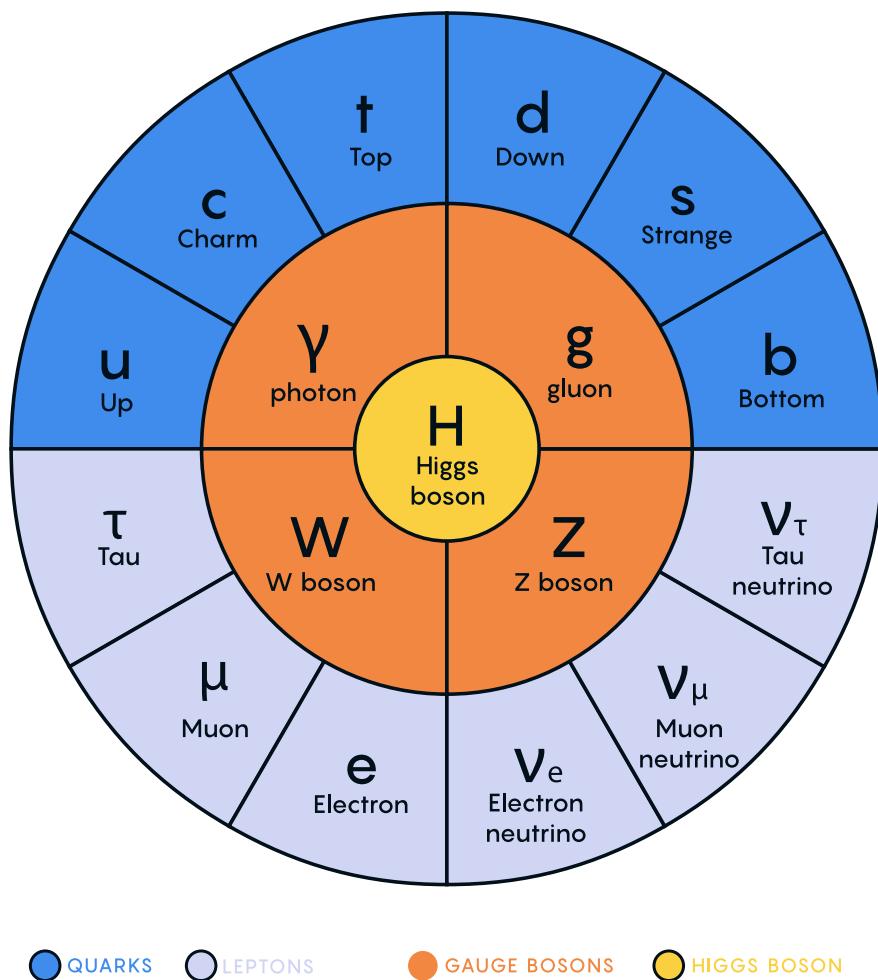


Figure 1.1: Diagram of the elementary particles described by the Standard Model [6].

700 **1.2 Quantum Electrodynamics**

Classical electrodynamics is familiar to the general physics audience: electric (\vec{E}) and magnetic (\vec{B}) fields are used to describe behavior of particles with charge q moving with velocity \vec{v} , with forces described as $\vec{F} = q\vec{E} + q\vec{v} \times \vec{B}$. Hints at some more fundamental properties of electric and magnetic fields come via a simple thought experiment: in a frame of reference moving along with the particle at velocity \vec{v} , the particle would appear to be standing still, and therefore have no magnetic force exerted. Therefore a *relativistic* formulation of the theory is required. This is most easily accomplished with a repackaging: the fundamental objects are no longer classical fields but the electric and magnetic *potentials*: ϕ and \vec{A} respectively, with

$$\vec{E} = -\nabla\phi - \frac{\partial\vec{A}}{\partial t} \quad (1.1)$$

$$\vec{B} = \nabla \times \vec{A} \quad (1.2)$$

It is then natural to fully repackage into a relativistic *four-vector*: $A^\mu = (\phi, \vec{A})$. Considering $\partial^\mu = (\frac{\partial}{\partial t}, \nabla)$, the x components of these above two equations become:

$$E_x = -\frac{\partial\phi}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial A_x}{\partial t} = -(\partial^0 A^1 - \partial^1 A^0) \quad (1.3)$$

$$B_x = \frac{\partial A_z}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial A_y}{\partial z} = -(\partial^2 A^3 - \partial^3 A^2) \quad (1.4)$$

701 where we have used the sign convention $(+, -, -, -)$, such that $\partial^\mu = (\frac{\partial}{\partial x_0}, -\nabla)$.

This is naturally suggestive of a second rank, antisymmetric tensor to describe both the electric and magnetic fields (the *field strength tensor*), defined as:

$$F^{\alpha\beta} = \partial^\alpha A^\beta - \partial^\beta A^\alpha \quad (1.5)$$

Defining a four-current as $J_\mu = (q, \vec{J})$, with q standard electric charge, \vec{J} standard electric current, conservation of charge may be expressed via the continuity equation

$$\partial_\mu J^\mu = 0 \quad (1.6)$$

and all of classical electromagnetism may be packaged into the Lagrangian density:

$$\mathcal{L} = -\frac{1}{4} F_{\mu\nu} F^{\mu\nu} - J^\mu A_\mu. \quad (1.7)$$

This gets us partway to our goal, but is entirely classical - the description is of classical fields and point charges, not of quantum fields and particles. To reframe this, let us go back to the zoomed out view of the particles of the Standard Model. Two of the most familiar objects associated with electromagnetism are electrons: spin-1/2 particles with charge e , mass m , and photons: massless spin-1 particles which are the "pieces" of electromagnetic radiation.

We know that electrons experience electromagnetic interactions with other objects. Given this, and the fact that such interactions must be transmitted *somewhat* between e.g. two electrons, it seems natural that these interactions are facilitated by electromagnetic radiation. More specifically, we may think of photons as *mediators* of the electromagnetic force. It follows, then, that a description of electromagnetism on the level of particles must involve a description of both the "source" particles (e.g. electrons), the mediators (photons), and their interactions. Further, this description must be (1) relativistic and (2) consistent with the classically derived dynamics described above.

The beginnings of a relativistic description of spin-1/2 particles is due to Paul Dirac, with the famous Dirac equation:

$$(i\gamma^\mu \partial_\mu - m)\psi = 0 \quad (1.8)$$

where ∂_μ is as defined above, ψ is a Dirac *spinor*, i.e. a four-component wavefunction, m is the mass of the particle, and γ^μ are the Dirac gamma matrices, which define the algebraic structure of the theory. For the following, we also define a conjugate spinor,

$$\bar{\psi} = \psi^\dagger \gamma^0 \quad (1.9)$$

which satisfies the conjugate Dirac equation

$$\bar{\psi}(i\gamma^\mu \partial_\mu - m) = 0 \quad (1.10)$$

where the derivative acts to the left.

The Dirac equation is the dynamical equation for spin-1/2, but we'd like to express these dynamics via a Lagrangian density. Further, to have a relativistic description, we'd like to

have this be density be Lorentz invariant. These constraints lead to a Lagrangian of the form

$$\mathcal{L} = \bar{\psi}(i\gamma^\mu \partial_\mu - m)\psi \quad (1.11)$$

⁷¹⁶ where the Euler-Lagrange equation exactly recovers the Dirac equation.

The question now becomes how to marry the two Lagrangian descriptions that we have developed. Returning for a moment to classical electrodynamics, we know that the Hamiltonian for a charged particle in an electromagnetic field is described by

$$H = \frac{1}{2m}(\vec{p} - q\vec{A})^2 + q\phi. \quad (1.12)$$

Comparing this to the Hamiltonian for a free particle, we see that the modifications required are $\vec{p} \rightarrow \vec{p} - q\vec{A}$ and $E \rightarrow E - q\phi$. Using the canonical quantization trick of identifying \vec{p} with operator $-i\nabla$ and E with operator $i\frac{\partial}{\partial t}$, this identification becomes

$$i\partial_\mu \rightarrow i\partial_\mu - qA_\mu \quad (1.13)$$

Allowing for the naive substitution in the Dirac Lagrangian:

$$\mathcal{L} = \bar{\psi}(i\gamma^\mu(\partial_\mu + iqA_\mu) - m)\psi - \frac{1}{4}F_{\mu\nu}F^{\mu\nu}. \quad (1.14)$$

⁷¹⁷ where the source term may be interpreted as coming from the Dirac fields themselves, namely,

⁷¹⁸ $-q\bar{\psi}\gamma^\mu\psi A_\mu$.

Setting $q = e$ here (as appropriate for the case of an electron), and defining $D_\mu \equiv \partial_\mu + ieA_\mu$, this may then be written in the form

$$\mathcal{L} = \bar{\psi}(i\gamma^\mu D_\mu - m)\psi - \frac{1}{4}F_{\mu\nu}F^{\mu\nu}. \quad (1.15)$$

⁷¹⁹ which is exactly the quantum electrodynamics Lagrangian.

⁷²⁰ We have swept a few things under the rug here, however. Recall that the general form
⁷²¹ of a Lagrangian is conventionally $\mathcal{L} = T - V$, where T is the kinetic term, and thus ought
⁷²² to contain a derivative with respect to time (c.f. the standard $\frac{1}{2}m\frac{\partial x}{\partial t}$ familiar from basic
⁷²³ kinematics). More particularly, given the definition of conjugate momentum as $\partial\mathcal{L}/\partial\dot{q}$ for

724 $\mathcal{L}(q, \dot{q}, t)$ and $\dot{q} = \frac{\partial q}{\partial t}$, any field q which has no time derivative in the Lagrangian has 0
725 conjugate momentum, and thus no dynamics.

726 Looking at this final form, there is an easily identifiable kinetic term for the spinor fields
727 (just applying the D_μ operator). However trying to identify something similar for the A fields,
728 one comes up short – the antisymmetric nature of $F^{\mu\nu}$ term means that there is no time
729 derivative applied to A^0 .

730 What does this mean? A^μ is a four component object, but it would appear that only three
731 of the components have dynamics: we have too many degrees of freedom in the theory. This
732 is the principle behind *gauge symmetry* – an extra constraint on A^μ (a *gauge condition*) must
733 be defined such that a unique A^μ defines the theory and satisfies the condition. However,
734 we are free to choose this extra condition – the physics content of the theory should be
735 independent of this choice (that is, it should be *gauge invariant*).

To ground this a bit, let us return to basic electric and magnetic fields. These are physical quantities that can be measured, and are defined in terms of potentials as

$$\vec{E} = -\nabla\phi - \frac{\partial\vec{A}}{\partial t} \quad (1.16)$$

$$\vec{B} = \nabla \times \vec{A}. \quad (1.17)$$

736 It is easy to show, for any scalar function λ , that $\nabla \times \nabla\lambda = 0$. This implies that the physical
737 \vec{B} field is invariant under the transformation $\vec{A} \rightarrow \vec{A} + \nabla\lambda$ for any scalar function λ .

738 Under the same transformation of \vec{A} , the electric field \vec{E} becomes $-\nabla\phi - \frac{\partial\vec{A}}{\partial t} - \frac{\partial\nabla\lambda}{\partial t} =$
739 $-\nabla(\phi + \frac{\partial\lambda}{\partial t}) - \frac{\partial\vec{A}}{\partial t}$, such that, for the \vec{E} field to be unchanged, we must additionally apply
740 the transformation $\phi \rightarrow \phi - \frac{\partial\lambda}{\partial t}$.

This set of transformations to the potentials that leave the physical degrees of freedom invariant is expressed in our four vector notation naturally as

$$A_\mu \rightarrow A_\mu - \partial_\mu \lambda \quad (1.18)$$

741 where $A_\mu = (\phi, -\vec{A})$ with our sign convention. It should be noted that this function λ is an
742 arbitrary function of *local* spacetime, and thus expresses invariance of the physics content

⁷⁴³ under a local transformation.

Let us return to the Lagrangian for QED. In particular, focusing on the free Dirac piece

$$\mathcal{L} = \bar{\psi}(i\gamma^\mu \partial_\mu - m)\psi \quad (1.19)$$

we note that if we apply a local transformation of the form $\psi \rightarrow e^{iq\lambda(x)}\psi$ (and correspondingly $\bar{\psi} \rightarrow \bar{\psi}e^{-iq\lambda(x)}$, by definition), the Lagrangian becomes

$$\bar{\psi}e^{-iq\lambda(x)}(i\gamma^\mu \partial_\mu - m)e^{iq\lambda(x)}\psi = \bar{\psi}e^{-iq\lambda(x)}(i\gamma^\mu \partial_\mu)e^{iq\lambda(x)}\psi - m\bar{\psi}\psi. \quad (1.20)$$

As $\partial_\mu(e^{iq\lambda(x)}\psi) = iq e^{iq\lambda(x)}(\partial_\mu \lambda(x))\psi + e^{iq\lambda(x)}\partial_\mu \psi$, this becomes

$$\bar{\psi}(i\gamma^\mu(\partial_\mu + iq\partial_\mu \lambda(x)) - m)\psi. \quad (1.21)$$

Thus, the free Dirac Lagrangian on its own is not invariant under this transformation. We may note, however, that on interaction with an electromagnetic field, as described above, this transformed Lagrangian may be packaged as:

$$\bar{\psi}(i\gamma^\mu(\partial_\mu + iq\partial_\mu \lambda(x) + iqA_\mu) - m)\psi = \bar{\psi}(i\gamma^\mu(\partial_\mu + iq(A_\mu + \partial_\mu \lambda(x))) - m)\psi. \quad (1.22)$$

⁷⁴⁴ since by the arguments above, the physics content of the Lagrangian is invariant under the
⁷⁴⁵ transformation $A_\mu \rightarrow A_\mu - \partial_\mu \lambda$, we may directly make this transformation, and remove this
⁷⁴⁶ extra $\partial_\mu \lambda(x)$ term. It is straightforward to verify that the $\frac{1}{4}F_{\mu\nu}F^{\mu\nu}$ term is invariant under
⁷⁴⁷ this same transformation of A_μ , so we may say that the QED Lagrangian is invariant under
⁷⁴⁸ local transformations of the form $\psi \rightarrow e^{iq\lambda(x)}\psi$.

⁷⁴⁹ These arguments illuminate some important concepts which will serve us well going forward.
⁷⁵⁰ First, while we have remained grounded in the “familiar” physics of electromagnetism for the
⁷⁵¹ above, arguments of the “top down” variety would lead us to the exact same conclusions.
⁷⁵² That is, suppose we wanted to construct a theory of spin-1/2 particles that was invariant
⁷⁵³ under local transformations of the form $\psi \rightarrow e^{iq\lambda(x)}\psi$. More broadly, we could say that we
⁷⁵⁴ desire this theory to be invariant under local $U(1)$ transformations, where $U(1)$ is exactly
⁷⁵⁵ this group, under multiplication, of complex numbers with absolute value 1. By very similar

756 arguments as above, we would see that, to achieve invariance, this theory would necessitate
757 an additional degree of freedom, A_μ , with the exact properties that are familiar to us from
758 electrodynamics. These arguments based on symmetries are extremely powerful in building
759 theories with a less familiar grounding, as we will see in the following.

Second, we defined this quantity $D_\mu \equiv \partial_\mu + ieA_\mu$ above, seemingly as a matter of notational convenience. However, from the latter set of arguments, such a packaging takes on a new power: by explicitly including this gauge field A_μ which transforms in such a way as to keep invariance under a given transformation, the invariance is immediately more manifest. That is, to pose the $U(1)$ invariance in a more zoomed out way, under the transformation $\psi \rightarrow e^{iq\lambda(x)}\psi$, while

$$\bar{\psi}\partial_\mu\psi \rightarrow \bar{\psi}(\partial_\mu + iq\partial_\mu\lambda(x))\psi \quad (1.23)$$

with the extra term that gets canceled out by the gauge transformation of A_μ ,

$$\bar{\psi}D_\mu\psi \rightarrow \bar{\psi}D_\mu\psi \quad (1.24)$$

760 where this transformation is already folded in. This repackaging, called a *gauge covariant*
761 *derivative* is much more immediately expressive of the symmetries of the theory.

762 Finally, to emphasize how fundamental these gauge symmetries are to the corresponding
763 theory, let us examine the additional term needed for $U(1)$ invariance, $q\bar{\psi}\gamma^\mu A_\mu\psi$. While a
764 first principles examination of Feynman rules is beyond the scope of this thesis, it is powerful
765 to note that this is expressive of a QED vertex: the $U(1)$ invariance of the theory and the
766 interaction between photons and electrons are inextricably tied together.

767 1.3 An Aside on Group Theory

768 Quantum electrodynamics is very familiar and well covered, and provides (both historically
769 and in this thesis) a nice bridge between “standard” physics and the language of symmetries
770 and quantum field theory. However, now that we are acquainted with the language, we
771 may set up to dive a bit deeper. To begin, let us look again at the $U(1)$ group that is so
772 fundamental to QED. We have expressed this via a set of transformations on our Dirac spinor

⁷⁷³ objects, ψ , of the form $e^{iq\lambda(x)}$. Note that such transformations, though they are local (i.e. a
⁷⁷⁴ function of spacetime) are purely *phase* transformations. Relatedly, $U(1)$ is an Abelian group,
⁷⁷⁵ meaning that group elements commute.

⁷⁷⁶ To set up language to generalize beyond $U(1)$, note that we may equivalently write $U(1)$
⁷⁷⁷ elements as $e^{ig\vec{\alpha}(x)\cdot\vec{T}}$, $\vec{\alpha}(x)$ and \vec{T} and are vectors in the space of *generators* of the group,
⁷⁷⁸ with each $\alpha^a(x)$ an associated scalar function to generator t^a , and g is some scalar strength
⁷⁷⁹ parameter. Of course this is a bit silly for $U(1)$, which has a single generator, and thus
⁷⁸⁰ reduces to the transformation we discussed above. However, this becomes much more useful
⁷⁸¹ for groups of higher degree, with more generators and degrees of freedom.

⁷⁸² To discuss these groups in a bit more detail, note that $U(n)$ is the unitary group of degree
⁷⁸³ n , and corresponds to the group of $n \times n$ unitary matrices (that is, $U^\dagger U = UU^\dagger = 1$). Given
⁷⁸⁴ that group elements are $n \times n$, this means that there are n^2 degrees of freedom: n^2 generators
⁷⁸⁵ are needed to characterize the group.

⁷⁸⁶ For $U(1)$, this is all consistent with what we have said above – the group of 1×1 unitary
⁷⁸⁷ matrices have a single generator, and the phases we identify above clearly satisfy unitarity.
⁷⁸⁸ Note that these degrees of freedom for the gauge group also characterize the number of gauge
⁷⁸⁹ bosons we need to satisfy the local symmetry: for $U(1)$, we need one gauge boson, the photon.

⁷⁹⁰ Of relevance for the Standard Model are also the special unitary groups $SU(n)$. These
⁷⁹¹ are defined similarly to the unitary groups, with the additional requirement that group
⁷⁹² elements have determinant 1. This extra constraint removes 1 degree of freedom: groups are
⁷⁹³ characterized by $n^2 - 1$ generators.

⁷⁹⁴ In particular, we will examine the groups $SU(2)$ in the context of the weak interaction,
⁷⁹⁵ with an associated $2^2 - 1 = 3$ gauge bosons (cf. the W^\pm and Z bosons), and $SU(3)$, with an
⁷⁹⁶ associated $3^2 - 1 = 8$ gauge bosons (cf. gluons of different flavors). Note that these groups
⁷⁹⁷ are non-Abelian (2×2 or 3×3 matrices do not, in general, commute), leading to a variety of
⁷⁹⁸ complications. However, both of these theories feature interactions with spin-1/2 particles,
⁷⁹⁹ with transformations of a very similar form: $\psi \rightarrow e^{ig\vec{\alpha}(x)\cdot\vec{T}}\psi$, and the general framing of the
⁸⁰⁰ arguments for QED will serve us well in the following.

801 **1.4 Quantum Chromodynamics**

802 In some sense, the simplest extension the development of QED is quantum chromodynamics
803 (QCD). QCD is a theory in which, once the basic dynamics are framed (a non-trivial task!) the
804 group structure becomes apparent. The quark model, developed by Murray Gell-Mann [10]
805 and George Zweig [11], provided the fundamental particles involved in the theory, and had
806 great success in explaining the expanding zoo of experimentally observed hadronic states.

807 Some puzzles were still apparent – the Δ^{++} baryon, e.g., is composed of three up quarks,
808 u , with aligned spins. As quarks are fermions, such a state should not be allowed by the
809 Pauli exclusion principle. The existence of such a state in nature implies the existence
810 of another quantum number, and a triplet of values, called *color charge* was proposed by
811 Oscar Greenberg [12]. With these pieces in place, the structure becomes more apparent, as
812 elucidated by Han and Nambu [13].

813 Let us reason our way to the symmetries using color charge. Experimentally, we know
814 that there is this triplet of color charge values r, g, b (the “plus” values, cf. electric charge)
815 and correspondingly anti-color charge $\bar{r}, \bar{g}, \bar{b}$ (the “minus” values). Supposing that the force
816 behind QCD (the *strong force*) is, similar to QED, interactions between fermions mediated
817 by gauge bosons (quarks and gluons respectively), we can start to line up the pieces.

818 What color charge does a gluon have? Similarly to electric charge, we may associate
819 particles with color charge, anti-particles with anti-color charge. Notably, free particles
820 observed experimentally are colorless (have no color charge). Thus, in order for charge to
821 be conserved throughout such processes, this already implies that there are charged gluons.
822 Further, examining color flow diagrams such as *TODO: insert*, it is apparent first that a
823 gluon has not one but two associated color charges and second that these two must be one
824 color charge and one anti-color charge.

825 Counting up the available types of gluons, then, we come up with nine. Six of mixed
826 color type: $r\bar{b}, r\bar{g}, b\bar{r}, b\bar{g}, g\bar{b}$, and $g\bar{r}$, and three of same color type: $r\bar{r}, g\bar{g}$, and $b\bar{b}$. In practice,
827 however, these latter three are a bit redundant: all express a colorless gluon, which, if we

828 could observe this as a free particle, would be indistinguishable from each other. The *color*
 829 *singlet* state is then a mix of these, $\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}(r\bar{r} + g\bar{g} + b\bar{b})$, leaving two unclaimed degrees of
 830 freedom, which may be satisfied by the linearly independent combinations $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(r\bar{r} - g\bar{g})$ and
 831 $\frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}(r\bar{r} + g\bar{g} - 2b\bar{b})$.

832 We thus have an octet of color states plus a colorless singlet state. If this colorless singlet
 833 state existed, however, we would be able to observe it, not only via interactions with quarks,
 834 but as a free particle. Since do not observe this in nature, this restricts us to 8 gluons. The
 835 simplest group with a corresponding 8 generators is $SU(3)$. Under the assumption that
 836 $SU(3)$ is the local gauge symmetry of the strong interaction, we may proceed in a similar
 837 way as we did for QED. The gauge transformation is $\psi \rightarrow e^{ig_S \vec{\alpha}(x) \cdot \vec{T}} \psi$, where \vec{T} is an eight
 838 component vector of the generators of $SU(3)$, often expressed via the Gell-Mann matrices,
 839 λ^a , as $t^a = \frac{1}{2}\lambda^a$, and the spinor ψ represents the fields corresponding to quarks.

840 This $SU(3)$ symmetry exactly expresses the color structure elucidated above – the Gell-
 841 Mann matrices are an equivalent presentation of the color combinations described above.
 842 Proceeding by analogy to QED, gauge invariance is achieved by introducing eight new degrees
 843 of freedom, G_μ^a , which are the gauge fields corresponding to the gluons, with the gauge
 844 covariant derivative then analogously taking the form $D_\mu \equiv \partial_\mu + ig_S G_\mu^a t^a$.

Recall from the QED derivation that the field strength tensor, $F^{\mu\nu}$ is a rank two antisymmetric tensor which is manifestly gauge invariant and which describes the physical dynamics of the A_μ field. We would like to analogously define a term for the gluon fields. Repackaging this QED tensor, it is apparent that

$$[D_\mu, D_\nu] = D_\mu D_\nu - D_\nu D_\mu \quad (1.25)$$

$$= (\partial_\mu + iqA_\mu)(\partial_\nu + iqA_\nu) - (\partial_\nu + iqA_\nu)(\partial_\mu + iqA_\mu) \quad (1.26)$$

$$= \partial_\mu \partial_\nu + iq\partial_\mu A_\nu + iqA_\mu \partial_\nu + (iq)^2 A_\mu A_\nu - (\partial_\nu \partial_\mu + iq\partial_\nu A_\mu + iqA_\nu \partial_\mu + (iq)^2 A_\nu A_\mu) \quad (1.27)$$

$$= iq(\partial_\mu A_\nu - \partial_\nu A_\mu) + (iq)^2 (A_\mu A_\nu - A_\nu A_\mu) \quad (1.28)$$

$$= iq(\partial_\mu A_\nu - \partial_\nu A_\mu) + (iq)^2 [A_\mu, A_\nu]. \quad (1.29)$$

We proceed through this derivation to highlight that, in the specific case of QED, with its Abelian $U(1)$ gauge symmetry, the field commutator vanishes, leaving exactly the definition of $F_{\mu\nu}$ as described above, i.e.,

$$F_{\mu\nu} = \frac{1}{iq}[D_\mu, D_\nu]. \quad (1.30)$$

We may proceed to define an analogous field strength term for G_μ^a in a similar way:

$$G_{\mu\nu} = \frac{1}{ig_S}[D_\mu, D_\nu] \quad (1.31)$$

This has an extremely nice correspondence, but is complicated by the non-Abelian nature of $SU(3)$, with

$$G_{\mu\nu} = \partial_\mu(G_\nu^a t^a) - \partial_\nu(G_\mu^a t^a) + ig_s[G_\mu^a t^a, G_\nu^a t^a]. \quad (1.32)$$

in which the field commutator term is non-zero. In particular (since each term is summing over a , so we may relabel) as

$$[G_\mu^a t^a, G_\nu^b t^b] = [t^a, t^b]G_\mu^a G_\nu^b \quad (1.33)$$

and as $[t^a, t^b] = if^{abc}t^c$ for the Gell-Mann matrices, where f^{abc} are the structure constants of $SU(3)$, we have

$$G_{\mu\nu} = \partial_\mu(G_\nu^a t^a) - \partial_\nu(G_\mu^a t^a) - g_s f^{abc} t^c G_\mu^a G_\nu^b \quad (1.34)$$

$$= t^a(\partial_\mu G_\nu^a - \partial_\nu G_\mu^a - f^{bca} G_\mu^b G_\nu^c) \quad (1.35)$$

$$= t^a G_{\mu\nu}^a \quad (1.36)$$

⁸⁴⁵ for $G_{\mu\nu}^a = \partial_\mu G_\nu^a - \partial_\nu G_\mu^a - f^{abc} G_\mu^b G_\nu^c$.

⁸⁴⁶ This gives the component of the field strength corresponding to a particular gauge field a ,
⁸⁴⁷ where the first two terms have the familiar form of the QED field strength, while the last
⁸⁴⁸ term is new, and explicitly related to the group structure via the f^{abc} constants. In terms
⁸⁴⁹ of the physics content of the theory, this latter term gives rise to a gluon *self-interaction*, a
⁸⁵⁰ distinguishing feature of QCD.

⁸⁵¹ Similarly as in QED, a Lorentz invariant combination of field strength tensors may be made
⁸⁵² as $G_{\mu\nu} G^{\mu\nu}$. However, this is not manifestly gauge invariant. Under a gauge transformation

- 853 U , the covariant derivative behaves as $D^\mu \rightarrow UD^\mu U^{-1}$, corresponding to $G^{\mu\nu} \rightarrow UG^{\mu\nu}U^{-1}$.
854 The cyclic property of the trace thus ensures the gauge invariance of $\text{tr}(G_{\mu\nu}G^{\mu\nu})$, which we
855 will write as $G_{\mu\nu}^a G_a^{\mu\nu}$ with the implied sum over generators a .

Packaging up the theory, it is tempting to copy the form of the QED Lagrangian, with the identifications we have made above:

$$\mathcal{L} = \bar{\psi}(i\gamma^\mu D_\mu - m)\psi - \frac{1}{4}G_{\mu\nu}^a G_a^{\mu\nu}. \quad (1.37)$$

However this is not quite correct due to the $SU(3)$ nature of the theory. In terms of the physics, the Dirac fields ψ have associated color charge, which must interact appropriately with the G_μ fields. Mathematically, the generators t^a are 3×3 matrices, while the ψ are four component spinors. Adding a color index to the Dirac fields, i.e., ψ_i where i runs over the three color charges, and similarly indexing the generators t_{ij}^a , we may then express the $SU(3)$ gauge covariant derivative component-wise as

$$(D_\mu)_{ij} = \partial_\mu \delta_{ij} + ig_S G_\mu^a t_{ij}^a \quad (1.38)$$

- 856 where δ_{ij} is the Kronecker delta, as ∂_μ does not participate in the $SU(3)$ structure.

The Lagrangian then becomes

$$\mathcal{L} = \bar{\psi}_i(i(\gamma^\mu D_\mu)_{ij} - m\delta_{ij})\psi_j - \frac{1}{4}G_{\mu\nu}^a G_a^{\mu\nu}. \quad (1.39)$$

- 857 and we have constructed QCD.

858 1.5 The Weak Interaction

- 859 One of the first theories of the weak interaction was from Enrico Fermi [14], in an effort to
860 explain beta decay, a process in which an electron or positron is emitted from an atomic
861 nucleus, resulting in the conversion of a neutron to a proton or proton to a neutron respectively.
862 Fermi's hypothesis was of a direct interaction between four fermions. However, in the advent of
863 QED, it is natural to wonder if a theory based on mediator particles and gauge symmetries
864 applies to the weak force as well. The modern formulation of such a theory is due to Sheldon

865 Glashow, Steven Weinberg, and Abdus Salam [15], and is what we will describe in the
866 following.

867 Considering emission of an electron, Fermi's theory involves an initial state neutron that
868 transitions to a proton with the emission of an electron and a neutrino. This transition
869 gives a hint that something slightly more complicated is happening than in QED: there is an
870 apparent mixing between particle types.

871 Now, with the assumption there are mediators for such an interaction, we further know
872 from beta decay and charge conservation that there must be at least two such degrees of
873 freedom: e.g. one that decays to an electron and neutrino (W^-) and one that decays to a
874 positron and neutrino (W^+). From consideration of the process $e^+e^- \rightarrow W^+W^-$, it turns
875 out that with just these two degrees of freedom, the cross section for this process increases
876 without limit as a function of center-of-mass energy, ultimately violating unitarity (more
877 W^+W^- pairs come out than e^+e^- pairs go in). This is resolved with a third, neutral degree
878 of freedom, the Z boson, whose contribution interferes negatively, regulating this process.

879 This leads to three degrees of freedom for the gauge symmetry of the weak interactions, so
880 we thus need a theory which is locally invariant under transformations of a group with three
881 generators. The simplest such choice is $SU(2)$. We may follow a very similar prescription as
882 for QED and QCD: $SU(2)$ has three generators, which implies the existence of three gauge
883 bosons, call them W_μ^k . The gauge transformation may be expressed as $\psi \rightarrow e^{ig_W \vec{\alpha}(x) \cdot \vec{T}} \psi$, where
884 in this case the generators are for $SU(2)$, which may be written in terms of the familiar Pauli
885 matrices: $\vec{T} = \frac{1}{2}\vec{\sigma}$. The structure constants for $SU(2)$ are the antisymmetric Levi-Civita
886 tensor, so the corresponding gauge covariant derivative is $D_\mu \equiv \partial_\mu + ig_W W_\mu^k t^k$, and the field
887 strength tensor is $W_{\mu\nu}^k = \partial_\mu W_\nu^k - \partial_\nu W_\mu^k - \epsilon^{ijk} W_\mu^k W_\nu^k$.

The corresponding Lagrangian would thus be

$$\mathcal{L} = \bar{\psi}_i (i(\gamma^\mu D_\mu)_{ij} - m\delta_{ij}) \psi_j - \frac{1}{4} W_{\mu\nu}^k W_k^{\mu\nu} \quad (1.40)$$

888 where indices i and j run over $SU(2)$ charges.

889 On considering some of the details, the universe unfortunately turns out to be a bit

more complicated. However, this still provides a useful starting place for elucidating the theory of weak interactions. First off, let us consider the particle content, namely, what do the Dirac fields correspond to? This is still a theory of fermionic interactions with gauge bosons. However, we might notice that the fermion content of this theory is both a) broader than QCD, as we know experimentally (cf. beta decay) that both quarks and leptons (e.g. electrons) participate in the weak interaction and b) this fermion content seemingly has a large overlap with QED. In terms of the gauge bosons, we know that at both W^+ and W^- are electrically charged – this means that we expect some interaction of the weak theory with electromagnetism.

However, before diving deeper into this apparent connection between the weak interaction and QED, let us focus on the gauge symmetry. In QCD, the $SU(3)$ content of the theory is expressed via a contraction of color indices – the theory allows for transitions between quarks of one color and quarks of another. Thinking similarly in terms of $SU(2)$ transitions, the beta decay example is already fruitful – there is a transition between an electron and its corresponding neutrino, as well as between two types of quark. In particular, for the case of neutron (with quark content udd) and proton (with quark content udu), the weak interaction provides for a transition from down to up quark.

Such $SU(2)$ dynamics are described via a quantity called *weak isospin*, denoted I_W with third component $I_W^{(3)}$, and can be thought of in a very similar way as color charge in QCD (i.e. as the charge corresponding to the weak interaction). Since $SU(2)$ is 2×2 , there are two such charge states for the fermions, denoted as $I_W^{(3)} = \pm \frac{1}{2}$. This means that the bosons must have $I_W = 1$ such that, by sign convention corresponding to electric charge, the W^+ boson has $I_W^{(3)} = +1$, the Z boson has $I_W^{(3)} = 0$, and the W^- boson has $I_W^{(3)} = -1$.

From conservation of electric charge, this means that transitions involving a W^\pm are between particles that differ by ± 1 in both weak isospin $I_W^{(3)}$ and electric charge. We may thus line up all such doublets as:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \nu_e \\ e^- \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \nu_\mu \\ \mu^- \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \nu_\tau \\ \tau^- \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} u \\ d' \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} c \\ s' \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} t \\ b' \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.41)$$

913 with the top corresponding to the lower weak isospin and electric charge particles, and the
914 lower quark entries (d' , etc) corresponding to the weak quark eigenstates (which are related
915 to the mass eigenstates by the CKM matrix *TODO: more detail*). Similar doublets may be
916 constructed for the corresponding anti-particles.

The fundamental structuring of these transitions around both electric and weak charge is again indicative of a natural connection. However, nature is again a bit more complicated than we have described. This is because the weak interaction is a *chiral* theory. For massless particles, chirality is the same as the perhaps more intuitive *helicity*. This describes the relationship between a particle's spin and momentum: if the spin vector points in the same direction as the momentum vector, helicity is positive (the particle is “right-handed”), and if the two point in opposite directions, the helicity is negative (the particle is “left-handed”). More concretely:

$$H = \frac{\vec{s} \cdot \vec{p}}{|\vec{s} \cdot \vec{p}|}. \quad (1.42)$$

For massive particles, this generalizes a bit – in the language of Dirac fermions that we have developed, we define projection operators

$$P_R = \frac{1}{2}(1 + \gamma^5) \quad \text{and} \quad P_L = \frac{1}{2}(1 - \gamma^5) \quad (1.43)$$

917 for right and left-handed chiralities respectively – acting on a Dirac field with such operators
918 projects the field onto the corresponding chiral state.

Experimentally, this pops up via parity violation and the famous $V - A$ theory. For the scope of this thesis, it is sufficient to say that the weak interaction is only observed to take place for left-handed particles (and correspondingly, right-handed anti-particles). We therefore modify the theory stated above by projecting all fermions participating in the weak interaction onto respective chiral states – in particular, the $SU(2)$ gauge symmetry only acts on left-handed particles and right-handed anti-particles. We therefore modify the theory appropriately, denoting the chiral projected gauge symmetry as $SU(2)_L$, and similarly for the

Dirac fields. In particular, the weak isospin doublets listed above must now be left-handed:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \nu_e \\ e^- \end{pmatrix}_L, \begin{pmatrix} \nu_\mu \\ \mu^- \end{pmatrix}_L, \begin{pmatrix} \nu_\tau \\ \tau^- \end{pmatrix}_L, \begin{pmatrix} u \\ d' \end{pmatrix}_L, \begin{pmatrix} c \\ s' \end{pmatrix}_L, \begin{pmatrix} t \\ b' \end{pmatrix}_L \quad (1.44)$$

919 and right-handed particle states are placed in singlets and assigned 0 charge under $SU(2)_L$
920 ($I_W = I_W^{(3)} = 0$).

With all of these assignments, let us revisit our guess at the form of the weak interaction Lagrangian. First, dwelling on the kinetic term $\bar{\psi}_i(i(\gamma^\mu D_\mu)_{ij}\psi_j)$, we note that the assigning of left-handed fermions to isospin doublets and right-handed fermions to isospin singlets allows us to remove explicit $SU(2)$ indices by treating these as the fundamental objects, that is, for a single *generation* of fermions, we may write:

$$\bar{Q}i\gamma^\mu D_\mu Q + \bar{u}i\gamma^\mu D_\mu u + \bar{d}i\gamma^\mu D_\mu d + \bar{L}i\gamma^\mu D_\mu L + \bar{e}i\gamma^\mu D_\mu e \quad (1.45)$$

921 for left-handed doublets Q and L for quarks and electron fields respectively and right handed
922 singlets u and d for up and down quark fields and e for electrons.

More concisely, and summing over the three generations of fermions, we may write

$$\sum_f \bar{f}i\gamma^\mu D_\mu f \quad (1.46)$$

923 where the f are understood to run over the fermion chiral doublets and singlets as above.

This then leaves our Lagrangian as

$$\mathcal{L} = \sum_f \bar{f}i\gamma^\mu D_\mu f - \frac{1}{4}W_{\mu\nu}^k W_k^{\mu\nu} \quad (1.47)$$

$$= \sum_f \bar{f}\gamma^\mu(i\partial_\mu - \frac{1}{2}g_W W_\mu^k \sigma_k)f - \frac{1}{4}W_{\mu\nu}^k W_k^{\mu\nu}, \quad (1.48)$$

924 where we have expanded the covariant derivative for clarity. You may note that we have
925 dropped the mass term in the equation above – we will discuss this in detail in just a moment.

First, however, we return to the above comment about fermion content – we neglected to include the sum over fermions in our QED derivation for simplicity. However, all of the

fermions considered in the discussion of the weak interaction have an electric charge (except for the neutrinos). It would be nice to repackage the theory into a coherent *electroweak* theory. This is fairly straightforward when considering the gauge approach – from the discussion above we should expect the electroweak gauge group to be something like $SU(2) \times U(1)$, with four corresponding gauge bosons. Consider a gauge theory with group $SU(2)_L \times U(1)_Y$ – that is, the same weak interaction as discussed previously, but a new $U(1)_Y$ gauge group for electromagnetism, with transformations defined as

$$\psi \rightarrow e^{ig' \frac{Y}{2} \lambda(x)} \psi \quad (1.49)$$

926 with *weak hypercharge* Y .

Similarly to our discussion of QED, we may write the $U(1)_Y$ gauge field as B_μ , and interactions with the Dirac fields take the form $g' \frac{Y}{2} \gamma^\mu B_\mu \psi$. The relationship between this hypercharge and new B_μ field and classical electrodynamics is not so obvious – however it is convenient to parametrize as

$$\begin{pmatrix} A_\mu \\ Z_\mu \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta_W & \sin \theta_W \\ -\sin \theta_W & \cos \theta_W \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} B_\mu \\ W_\mu^3 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.50)$$

927 where A_μ and Z_μ are the physical fields, and we pick W_μ^3 as the neutral weak boson.

928 Note that in the $SU(2)_L \times U(1)_Y$ theory, the Lagrangian must be invariant under all of
929 the local gauge transformations. In particular, this means that the hypercharge must be the
930 same for fermion fields in each weak doublet to preserve $U(1)_Y$ invariance. This gives insight
931 into the relation between the charges of $SU(2)_L \times U(1)_Y$ and electric charge. In particular
932 we know that the hypercharge, Y , of e^- ($I_W^{(3)} = -\frac{1}{2}$) and ν_e ($I_W^{(3)} = +\frac{1}{2}$) is the same.

Supposing that $Y = \alpha I_W^{(3)} + \beta Q$, we must have $-\alpha \frac{1}{2} - \beta = \alpha \frac{1}{2} \implies \beta = -\alpha$. Therefore, choosing an overall scaling from convention,

$$Y = 2(Q - I_W^{(3)}). \quad (1.51)$$

933 Some of these particular forms are best understood in the context of the Higgs mechanism
934 – we will return to this discussion below.

935 **1.6 The Higgs Potential and the SM**

936 In the above, we have neglected a discussion of masses. However there are several things to
937 sort out here. In the first place, we know experimentally that the weak interactions occur
938 over very short ranges at low energies (e.g., why Fermi's effective four fermion interaction was
939 such a good description). This is consistent with massive W^\pm and Z bosons (and indeed, this
940 is seen experimentally). However, requiring local gauge invariance forbids mass terms in the
941 Lagrangian. In the simple $U(1)$ QED example, such a term would have the form $\frac{1}{2}m_\gamma^2 A_\mu A^\mu$,
942 which is not invariant under the transformation $A_\mu \rightarrow A_\mu - \partial_\mu \lambda$, and similar arguments hold
943 for gauge bosons in the electroweak theory and QCD.

Similar issues are encountered with fermions – in the electroweak theory above, the gauge symmetries are separated into left and right handed chirality via doublet and singlet states. This means that a mass term would need to be separated as well. Such a term would have the form:

$$m\bar{f}f = m(\bar{f}_L + \bar{f}_R)(f_L + f_R) \quad (1.52)$$

$$= m(\bar{f}_L f_L + \bar{f}_L f_R + \bar{f}_R f_L + \bar{f}_R f_R) \quad (1.53)$$

$$= m(\bar{f}_L f_R + \bar{f}_R f_L) \quad (1.54)$$

944 where we have used that $f_{L,R} = P_{L,R}f$, $\bar{f}_{L,R} = \bar{f}P_{R,L}$, and $P_R P_L = P_L P_R = 0$. As left
945 and right-handed particles transform differently under $SU(2)_L$, this is manifestly not gauge
946 invariant.

947 The question then becomes: how do we include particle masses while preserving the
948 gauge properties of our theory? The answer, due to Robert Brout and François Englert [16],
949 Peter Higgs [17], and Gerald Guralnik, Richard Hagen, and Tom Kibble [18] comes via the
950 Higgs mechanism, which we will describe in the following. Importantly for this thesis, this
951 mechanism predicts the existence of a physical particle, the Higgs boson, and a particle
952 consistent with the Higgs boson was seen by both ATLAS [19] and CMS [20] in 2012.

To explain the Higgs, we focus first on generating masses for the electroweak gauge bosons.

Consider adding two complex scalar fields ϕ^+ and ϕ^0 to the Standard Model embedded in a weak isospin doublet ϕ . We may write the doublet as

$$\phi = \begin{pmatrix} \phi^+ \\ \phi^0 \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} \phi_1 + i\phi_2 \\ \phi_3 + i\phi_4 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.55)$$

⁹⁵³ where we explicitly note the four available degrees of freedom.

The Lagrangian for such a doublet takes the form

$$\mathcal{L} = (\partial_\mu \phi)^\dagger (\partial^\mu \phi) - V(\phi) \quad (1.56)$$

where V is the corresponding potential. Considering the particular form

$$V(\phi) = \mu^2 \phi^\dagger \phi + \lambda (\phi^\dagger \phi)^2 \quad (1.57)$$

⁹⁵⁴ we may notice that this has some interesting properties. Considering, as illustration, a similar
⁹⁵⁵ potential for a real scalar field, $\mu^2 \chi^2 + \lambda \chi^4$, taking the derivative and setting it equal to 0
⁹⁵⁶ yields extrema when $\chi = 0$ and $(\mu^2 + 2\lambda\chi^2) = 0 \implies \chi^2 = -\frac{\mu^2}{2\lambda}$. For $\mu^2 > 0$, there is a
⁹⁵⁷ unique minimum at $\chi = 0$, and for $\mu^2 < 0$ there are degenerate minima at $\chi = \pm\sqrt{-\frac{\mu^2}{2\lambda}}$.
⁹⁵⁸ Note that we take $\lambda > 0$, otherwise the only minima in the theory are trivial.

The same simple calculus for the complex Higgs doublet above yields degenerate minima for $\mu^2 < 0$ at

$$\phi^\dagger \phi = \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1^2 + \phi_2^2 + \phi_3^2 + \phi_4^2) = \frac{v}{2} = -\frac{\mu^2}{2\lambda} \quad (1.58)$$

However, though there is this degenerate set of minima, there can only be a single *physical* vacuum state (we say that the symmetry is *spontaneously broken*). Without loss of generality, we may align our axes such that the physical vacuum state is at

$$\langle 0 | \phi | 0 \rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ v \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.59)$$

⁹⁵⁹ where we have explicitly chosen a real, non-zero vacuum expectation value for the neutral
⁹⁶⁰ component of the Higgs doublet to maintain a massless photon, as we shall see. Physically,
⁹⁶¹ however, this makes sense - the vacuum is not electrically charged.

The vacuum is a classical state – we want a quantum one. We may express fluctuations about this nonzero expectation value via an expansion as $v + \eta(x) + i\xi(x)$. However, renaming of fields is only meaningful for the non-zero vacuum component - we thus have:

$$\phi = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} \phi_1 + i\phi_2 \\ v + \eta(x) + i\phi_4 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (1.60)$$

where we may expand the Lagrangian listed above:

$$\mathcal{L} = (\partial_\mu \phi)^\dagger (\partial^\mu \phi) - \mu^2 \phi^\dagger \phi - \lambda(\phi^\dagger \phi)^2. \quad (1.61)$$

It is an exercise in algebra to plug in the expansion about v into this Lagrangian: first expanding the potential

$$V(\phi) = \mu^2 \phi^\dagger \phi + \lambda(\phi^\dagger \phi)^2 \quad (1.62)$$

$$= \mu^2 \left(\sum_i \phi_i(x)^2 + (v + \eta(x))^2 \right) + \lambda \left(\sum_i \phi_i(x)^2 + (v + \eta(x))^2 \right) \quad (1.63)$$

$$= -\frac{1}{4} \lambda v^4 + \lambda v^2 \eta^2 + \lambda v \eta^3 + \frac{1}{4} \lambda \eta^4 \quad (1.64)$$

$$+ \frac{1}{2} \lambda \sum_{i \neq j} \phi_i^2 \phi_j^2 + \lambda v \eta \sum_i \phi_i(x)^2 + \frac{1}{2} \lambda \eta^2 \sum_i \phi_i(x)^2 + \frac{1}{4} \sum_i \phi_i(x)^4 \quad (1.65)$$

where the sums are over the $i \in 1, 2, 4$, that is, the fields with 0 vacuum expectation, and we have used the definition $\mu^2 = -\lambda v^2$.

Within this potential, we note a quadratic term in $\eta(x)$ which we may identify with a mass, namely $m_\eta = \sqrt{2\lambda v^2}$, whereas the ϕ_i are massless. These ϕ_i are known as *Goldstone bosons*, and correspond to quantum fluctuations along the minimum of the potential. Of particular note for this thesis are the interaction terms $\lambda v \eta^3$ and $\frac{1}{4} \lambda \eta^4$, expressing trilinear and quartic self-interactions of the η field.

Expanding the kinetic term

$$(\partial_\mu \phi)^\dagger (\partial^\mu \phi) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_i (\partial_\mu \phi_i)(\partial^\mu \phi_i) + \frac{1}{2} (\partial_\mu(v + \eta(x)))(\partial^\mu(v + \eta(x))) \quad (1.66)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \sum_i (\partial_\mu \phi_i)(\partial^\mu \phi_i) + \frac{1}{2} (\partial_\mu \eta)(\partial^\mu \eta) \quad (1.67)$$

⁹⁶⁹ in a similar way, completing the story of three massless degrees of freedom (Goldstone bosons)
⁹⁷⁰ and one massive one.

Now, this doublet is embedded in an $SU(2)_L \times U(1)$ theory, so we would like to preserve that gauge invariance. This is achieved in the same way as for the Dirac fields, with the introduction of the electroweak gauge covariant derivative such that the Lagrangian for the Higgs doublet and the electroweak bosons is just

$$\mathcal{L} = (D_\mu \phi)^\dagger (D^\mu \phi) - \mu^2 \phi^\dagger \phi - \lambda (\phi^\dagger \phi)^2 - \frac{1}{4} W_{\mu\nu}^k W_k^{\mu\nu} - \frac{1}{4} F_{\mu\nu} F^{\mu\nu} \quad (1.68)$$

⁹⁷¹ with $D_\mu = \partial_\mu + ig_W W_\mu^k t^k + ig' \frac{Y}{2} B_\mu$.

We note that it is convenient to pick a gauge such that the Goldstone fields do not appear in the Lagrangian, upon which we may identify the field $\eta(x)$ with the physical Higgs field, $h(x)$. The field mass terms then very apparently come via the covariant derivative, namely, as

$$W_\mu^k \sigma^k + B_\mu = \begin{pmatrix} W_\mu^3 + B_\mu & W_\mu^1 - iW_\mu^2 \\ W_\mu^1 + iW_\mu^2 & -W_\mu^3 + B_\mu \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.69)$$

we may then write

$$D_\mu \phi = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 2\partial_\mu + ig_W W_\mu^3 + ig' Y B_\mu & ig_W W_\mu^1 + \frac{1}{2} g_W W_\mu^2 \\ ig_W W_\mu^1 - g_W W_\mu^2 & 2\partial_\mu - ig_W W_\mu^3 + ig' Y B_\mu \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ v + h \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.70)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} ig_W (W_\mu^1 - iW_\mu^2)(v + h) \\ (2\partial_\mu - ig_W W_\mu^3 + ig' Y B_\mu)(v + h) \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.71)$$

⁹⁷² As identified above, $Y = 2(Q - I_W^{(3)})$. The Higgs has 0 electric charge, and the lower doublet
⁹⁷³ component has $I_W^{(3)} = -\frac{1}{2}$, yielding $Y = 1$.

Computing $(D_\mu \phi)^\dagger (D^\mu \phi)$, then, yields

$$\frac{1}{8} g_W^2 (W_\mu^1 + iW_\mu^2)(W^{\mu 1} - iW^{\mu 2})(v + h)^2 + \frac{1}{8} (2\partial_\mu + ig_W W_\mu^3 - ig' B_\mu)(2\partial^\mu - ig_W W^{\mu 3} + ig' B^\mu)(v + h)^2 \quad (1.72)$$

and extracting terms quadratic in the fields gives

$$\frac{1}{8} g_W^2 v^2 (W_{\mu 1} W^{\mu 1} + W_{\mu 2} W^{\mu 2}) + \frac{1}{8} v^2 (g_W W_\mu^3 - g' B_\mu)(g_W W^{\mu 3} - g' B^\mu) \quad (1.73)$$

meaning that W_μ^1 and W_μ^2 have masses $m_W = \frac{1}{2}g_W v$. The neutral boson case is a bit more complicated. Writing the corresponding term as

$$\frac{1}{8}v^2 \begin{pmatrix} W_\mu^3 & B_\mu \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} g_W^2 & -g_W g' \\ -g_W g' & g'^2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} W^{\mu 3} \\ B^\mu \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.74)$$

we note that we must diagonalize this mass matrix to get the physical mass eigenstates. Doing so in the usual way yields eigenvalues 0 , $g'^2 + g_W^2$, thus corresponding to $m_\gamma = 0$ and $m_Z = \frac{1}{2}v\sqrt{g'^2 + g_W^2}$, with physical fields as the (normalized) eigenvectors

$$A_\mu = \frac{g'W_\mu^3 + g_W B_\mu}{\sqrt{g_W^2 + g'^2}} \quad (1.75)$$

$$Z_\mu = \frac{g_W W_\mu^3 - g' B_\mu}{\sqrt{g_W^2 + g'^2}} \quad (1.76)$$

From this form, the angular parametrization of the physical fields is very apparent, namely, defining

$$\tan \theta_W = \frac{g'}{g_W}, \quad (1.77)$$

these equations may be written in terms of the single parameter θ_W as

$$A_\mu = \cos \theta_W B_\mu + \sin \theta_W W_\mu^3 \quad (1.78)$$

$$Z_\mu = -\sin \theta_W B_\mu + \cos \theta_W W_\mu^3 \quad (1.79)$$

and, notably, from the above equations,

$$\frac{m_W}{m_Z} = \cos \theta_W. \quad (1.80)$$

To get the mass terms from Equation 1.72, we extracted those terms quadratic in fields, i.e., the v^2 terms within $(v + h)^2$. However there are also terms of the form VVh and $VVhh$ that arise, which describe the Higgs interactions with the corresponding vector bosons $V = W^\pm, Z$. Namely, identifying physical W bosons as

$$W^\pm = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(W^1 \mp iW^2) \quad (1.81)$$

we may express the first term of Equation 1.72 as

$$\frac{1}{4}g_W^2 W_\mu^- W^{+\mu} (v + h)^2 = \frac{1}{4}g_W^2 v^2 W_\mu^- W^{+\mu} + \frac{1}{2}g_W^2 v W_\mu^- W^{+\mu} h + \frac{1}{4}g_W^2 W_\mu^- W^{+\mu} h^2 \quad (1.82)$$

with the first term corresponding to the mass term $m_W = \frac{1}{2}g_W v$, and the second two terms corresponding to hW^+W^- and hhW^+W^- vertices. Of particular note is the coupling strength

$$g_{HWW} = \frac{1}{2}g_W^2 v = g_W m_W \quad (1.83)$$

974 which is proportional to the W mass – an analysis with the form of the physical Z boson
975 finds that the coupling g_{HZZ} is also proportional to the Z mass.

The Higgs coupling to fermions (in particular to quarks) is of particular interest for this thesis. We showed above that a naive introduction of a mass term

$$m\bar{f}f = m(\bar{f}_L f_R + \bar{f}_R f_L) \quad (1.84)$$

976 is manifestly not gauge invariant because right and left handed particles transform differently
977 under $SU(2)_L$. However, because the Higgs is constructed via an $SU(2)_L$ doublet, ϕ , writing
978 a fermion doublet as L and conjugate \bar{L} , it is apparent that $\bar{L}\phi$ is invariant under $SU(2)_L$.

Combining with the right handed singlet, R , creates a term invariant under $SU(2)_L \times U(1)_Y$, $\bar{L}\phi R$ (and correspondingly $(\bar{L}\phi R)^\dagger$), such that we may include Yukawa [21] terms

$$\mathcal{L}_{Yukawa} = -g_f \left[\begin{pmatrix} \bar{f}_1 & \bar{f}_2 \end{pmatrix}_L \begin{pmatrix} \phi^+ \\ \phi^0 \end{pmatrix} f_R + \bar{f}_R \begin{pmatrix} \phi^{+*} & \phi^{0*} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} f_1 \\ f_2 \end{pmatrix}_L \right] \quad (1.85)$$

979 where g_f is a corresponding Yukawa coupling, f_1 and f_2 have been used to denote components
980 of the left-handed doublet and f_R the corresponding right-handed singlet.

After spontaneous symmetry breaking, with the gauge as described above to remove the Goldstone fields, the Higgs doublet becomes

$$\phi(x) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ v + h(x) \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.86)$$

giving rise to terms such as

$$-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}g_f v(\bar{f}_{2L}\bar{f}_R + \bar{f}_R f_{2L}) - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}g_f h(\bar{f}_{2L}\bar{f}_R + \bar{f}_R f_{2L}) \quad (1.87)$$

where we have kept the subscript f_{2L} to emphasize that these terms *only* impact the lower component of the left-handed doublet because of the 0 in the upper component of the Higgs doublet. Leaving this aside for a second, we note that the first term has the form of the desired mass term above (identifying f_{2L} to f_L) while the second term describes the coupling of the fermion to the physical Higgs field. The corresponding Yukawa coupling may be chosen to be consistent with the observed fermion mass, namely

$$g_f = \sqrt{2} \frac{m_f}{v} \quad (1.88)$$

such that

$$\mathcal{L}_f = -m_f \bar{f}f - \frac{m_f}{v} \bar{f}fh. \quad (1.89)$$

981 Notably here, the fermion coupling to the Higgs boson scales with the mass of the fermion, a
982 fact that is extremely relevant for this thesis analysis.

As we said above, these terms *only* impact the lower component of the left-handed doublet. The inclusion of terms for the upper component is accomplished via the introduction of a Higgs conjugate doublet, defined as

$$\phi_c = -i\sigma_2\phi^* = \begin{pmatrix} -\phi^{0*} \\ \phi^- \end{pmatrix}. \quad (1.90)$$

983 The argument proceeds similarly to the above, with similar results for couplings and masses
984 of upper components.

985 **1.7 The Standard Model: A Summary**

After all of the above, we may write the Standard Model as a theory with a local $SU(3) \times SU(2)_L \times U(1)_Y$ gauge symmetry, described by the Lagrangian

$$\mathcal{L} = \sum_f \bar{f}i\gamma^\mu D_\mu f - \frac{1}{4} \sum_{gauges} F_{\mu\nu}F^{\mu\nu} + (D_\mu\phi)^\dagger(D^\mu\phi) - \mu^2\phi^\dagger\phi - \lambda(\phi^\dagger\phi)^2 \quad (1.91)$$

where $D_\mu = \partial_\mu + ig_W W_\mu^k t^k + ig' \frac{Y}{2} B_\mu + ig_S G_\mu^a t^a$, in addition to the Yukawa terms, which we write generally as

$$\mathcal{L}_{Yukawa} = - \sum_{f,\phi=\phi,-\phi_c} y_f (\bar{f}\phi f + (\bar{f}\phi f)^\dagger) \quad (1.92)$$

with the sum running over running over appropriate chiral fermion and Higgs doublets.

The $SU(2)_L \times U(1)_Y$ subgroup is spontaneously broken to a $U(1)$ symmetry, lending mass to the associated gauge bosons and fermions. Of relevance for this thesis is the resulting physical Higgs field, with a predicted trilinear self-interaction and associated coupling λv , related to the experimentally observed Higgs boson mass by $m_H = \sqrt{2\lambda v^2}$, as well as the fact that the strength of the Higgs coupling to fermions scales proportionally with the fermion mass.

The Standard Model has been monumentally successful, with many verified predictions and many cross checks. While we have spent much time in this chapter on the theoretical components of the Standard Model, we have not discussed the corresponding experimental discoveries in detail, though this thesis itself participates in an experimental cross check of the Standard Model.

As listed in Figure [6], there are 17 particles in the Standard Model, and the history of interplay between theoretical prediction and experimental discoveries surrounding each of these is paramount to the development of the field of particle physics, and of the way we understand the universe.

Indicative of the importance and strength of electromagnetism in the everyday world, the electron and photon were foundational discoveries that began the theoretical flurry which resulted in the Standard Model. While electric charge was observed by even the ancient Greeks (and, in fact, the word electric is derived from the Greek word for amber, which picks up a charge when rubbed with fur), the connection of this charge to a subatomic particle came later, with J.J. Thompson the first (in 1897) to definitively show the existence of electrons, using cathode ray tubes to demonstrate a particle with a mass much smaller than hydrogen and with a charge to mass ratio independent the of material used in the cathode.

1010 The discovery of the photon is much talked about in any introductory quantum mechanics
 1011 course via the dual wave/particle nature of light. The assumption in 1900 of Max Planck that
 1012 electromagnetic radiation could only be emitted or absorbed in discrete quantities (“quanta”)
 1013 resolved the ultraviolet catastrophe, a classical prediction that energy emitted by a black
 1014 body diverges for high frequencies. Soon after, in 1905, Einstein postulated that such quanta
 1015 corresponded to physical particles, explaining, for instance, the photoelectric effect.

1016 These two foundational particles led to the development of both atomic theory and
 1017 quantum mechanics. In 1936, Carl D. Anderson and Seth Neddermeyer, while studying
 1018 cosmic radiation, observed a particle that behaved similarly to an electron but had a shallower
 1019 curvature in a magnetic field (though a sharper curvature than protons). With an assumption
 1020 of the same electric charge, this difference is indicative of a particle with mass in between
 1021 that of an electron and a proton, and this was the first observation of the muon.

1022 In 1968, deep inelastic scattering experiments at SLAC, in which a beam of electrons is
 1023 fired at atomic nuclei to probe internal structure of protons and neutrons, confirmed the
 1024 existence of internal proton structure, the first observation of what would be identified as
 1025 quarks. The proton contains two up quarks and a down quark – however the existence of up
 1026 and down quarks, in conjunction with the observation of kaons and pions and the “eightfold
 1027 way” of Gell-Mann and Zweig, indirectly confirmed the existence of the strange quark.

1028 The charm quark was discovered via the observation of a charm anti-charm meson, called
 1029 J/ψ , by Burton Richter and Samuel Ting in 1974, with the dual name a consequence of
 1030 the shared, but independent, discovery. Richter’s group at SLAC made the discovery with
 1031 SPEAR, an electron-positron collider, whereas Ting’s group utilized fixed target collisions of
 1032 a proton beam. Both observed a new resonance near 3 GeV.

1033 SPEAR was additionally used for the discovery of the tau by Martin Lewis Perl in
 1034 experiments between 1974 and 1977, via the detection of anomalous events requiring the
 1035 production and decay of a new particle pair $\tau^+\tau^-$.

1036 In 1977, the bottom quark was discovered at Fermilab by Leon Lederman via the obser-
 1037 vation of a resonance near 9.5 GeV produced by fixed target proton beam collisions. This

1038 resonance, the Υ meson, consists of a bottom quark and an anti-bottom quark, and was
 1039 observed in the di-muon decay channel.

1040 The same resonance was important in the discovery of the gluon, this time in electron-
 1041 positron collisions, first by the PLUTO detector at DORIS (DESY) in 1978 and then by
 1042 the TASSO, MARK-J, JADE, and PLUTO experiments at PETRA (DESY) in 1979. The
 1043 1978 observation demonstrated excellent consistency with a three-gluon decay topology for
 1044 the $\Upsilon(9.46\text{ GeV})$ decay, but the mass of the $\Upsilon(9.46\text{ GeV})$ is not high enough to resolve three
 1045 distinct jets. Operating at $\sqrt{s} = 27.4\text{ GeV}$, the experiments in 1979 demonstrated a three jet
 1046 topology consistent (at these higher energies) with gluon bremsstrahlung, that is $e^+e^- \rightarrow q\bar{q}g$,
 1047 providing the first evidence for the existence of the gluon.

1048 At CERN in 1983, proton-antiproton collisions led to the discovery of the W and Z bosons
 1049 with the UA1 and UA2 experiments, for which Carlo Rubbia and Simon van der Meer received
 1050 the Nobel Prize in 1984.

1051 The top quark was discovered in 1995 at the Tevatron at Fermilab, a proton anti-proton
 1052 collider, by the CDF and DØ experiments, offering a center of mass energy of 1.8 TeV.

1053 The final piece of the puzzle was the Higgs boson, discovered by ATLAS and CMS at the
 1054 Large Hadron Collider in 2012. *TODO: add neutrinos and citations*

1055 The Standard Model, for all of its power, is notably not a complete theory of the universe
 1056 – there is no inclusion of gravity, for instance, though a consistent description may be provided
 1057 with the introduction of a spin-2 particle. Neutrino oscillations demonstrate that neutrinos
 1058 have mass, but right-handed neutrinos have not been observed, leading to questions about
 1059 whether there is a different mechanism to provide neutrinos with mass than that described
 1060 above. Cosmology tells us that dark matter exists, but there is no corresponding particle
 1061 within the Standard Model. This thesis therefore also participates in searches for physics
 1062 beyond the Standard Model. We will provide a sketch of the relevant theories in the following
 1063 chapter, though a detailed theoretical discussion is beyond the scope of this work.

1064

Chapter 2

1065

DI-HIGGS PHENOMENOLOGY AND PHYSICS BEYOND THE STANDARD MODEL

1066

1067

This thesis focuses on searches for di-Higgs production in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ final state. In this chapter, we will provide a brief overview of the practical theoretical information motivating such searches. Though the searches test for physics beyond the Standard Model, particularly in the search for resonances, the goal of the experimental results is to be somewhat agnostic to particular theoretical frameworks. An in depth treatment of such models is therefore beyond the scope of this thesis, though we will attempt to provide a grounding for the models that we consider.

1074

2.1 Intro to Di-Higgs

1075

Di-Higgs searches can be split into two major theoretical categories: *resonant searches*, in which a physical resonance is produced that subsequently decays into two Higgs bosons, and *non-resonant searches* in which no physical resonance is produced, but where the HH production cross section has a contribution from an exchange of a *virtual* or *off-shell* particle.

1079

The focus of this thesis is gluon initiated processes – in the case of di-Higgs this is termed gluon-gluon fusion (ggF). HH production may also occur via vector boson fusion [22]. However the cross section for such production is significantly smaller. Representative Feynman diagrams are shown for gluon-gluon fusion resonant production in Figure 2.1 and for non-resonant production in Figure 2.2.

1084

As shown in Chapter 1, the Higgs coupling to fermions scales with particle mass. As the top quark has a mass of 173 GeV, whereas the H has a mass of 125 GeV, such that $H \rightarrow t\bar{t}$ is kinematically disfavored, $H \rightarrow b\bar{b}$ is the dominant fermionic Higgs decay mode, and, in fact,

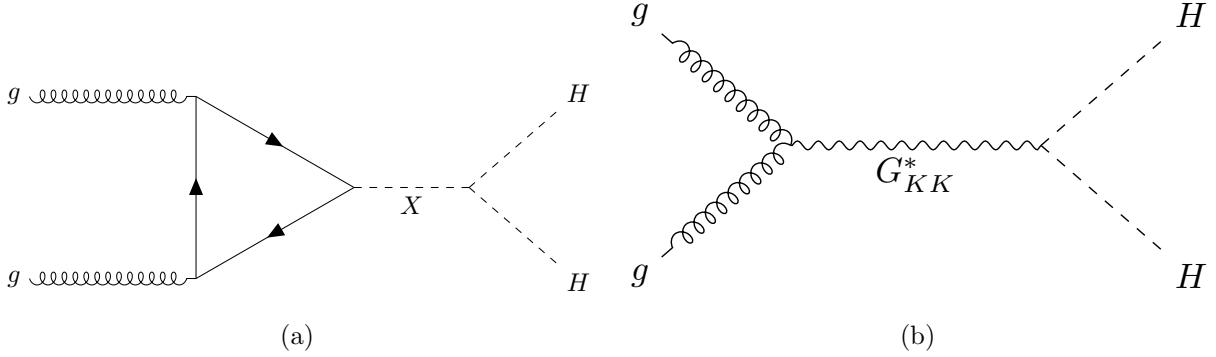


Figure 2.1: Representative diagrams for the gluon-gluon fusion production of spin-0 (X) and spin-2 (G_{KK}^*) resonances which decay to two Standard Model Higgs bosons. The spin-0 resonance considered for this thesis is a generic narrow width resonance which may be interpreted in the context of two Higgs doublet models [23], whereas the spin-2 resonance is considered as a Kaluza-Klein graviton within the bulk Randall-Sundrum (RS) model [24, 25].

the dominant overall decay mode, with a branching fraction of around 58 %. The dominant top quark Yukawa coupling to the H does play a role in H production, however – gluon-gluon fusion is dominated by processes including a top loop.

The single H properties translate to HH production, with $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ accounting for around 34 % of all HH decays. The H H branching fractions are shown in Figure 2.3.

2.2 Resonant HH Searches

Resonant di-Higgs production is predicted in a variety of extensions to the Standard Model. In particular, this thesis presents searches for both spin-0 and spin-2 resonances. The decay of spin-1 resonances to two identical spin-0 bosons is prohibited, as the final state must correspondingly be symmetric under particle exchange, but this process would require orbital angular momentum $\ell = 1$, and thus an anti-symmetric final state. Each model considered here is implemented in a particular theoretical context, but set up experimental results for generic searches.

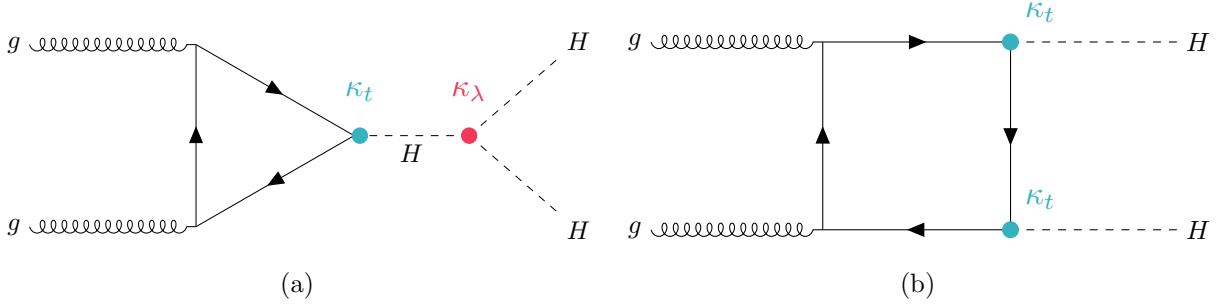


Figure 2.2: Dominant contributing diagrams for non-resonant gluon-gluon fusion production of HH . κ_λ and κ_t represent ratios of the Higgs self-coupling and coupling to top quarks respectively, relative to the values predicted by the Standard Model.

The spin-2 signal considered is implemented within the bulk Randall-Sundrum (RS) model [24, 25], which features spin-2 Kaluza-Klein gravitons, G_{KK}^* , that are produced via gluon-fusion and which may decay to a pair of Higgs bosons. The model predicts such gravitons as a consequence of warped extra dimensions, and is correspondingly parametrized by a value $c = k/\overline{M}_{\text{Pl}} = 1$, where k describes a curvature scale for the extra dimension and \overline{M}_{Pl} is the Planck mass. The model considered here has $c = 1.0$. However, this model was considered in the early Run 2 HH analyses [26], and was excluded across much of the relevant mass range.

The primary theoretical focus of this work is therefore the spin-0 result, which is implemented as a generic resonance with width below detector resolution. Scalar resonances are interesting, for instance, in the context of two Higgs doublet models [23], which posit the existence of a second Higgs doublet. This leads to the existence of five scalar particles in the Higgs sector – roughly, two complex doublets provide eight degrees of freedom, three of which are “eaten” by the electroweak bosons, leaving five degrees of freedom which may correspond to physical fields.

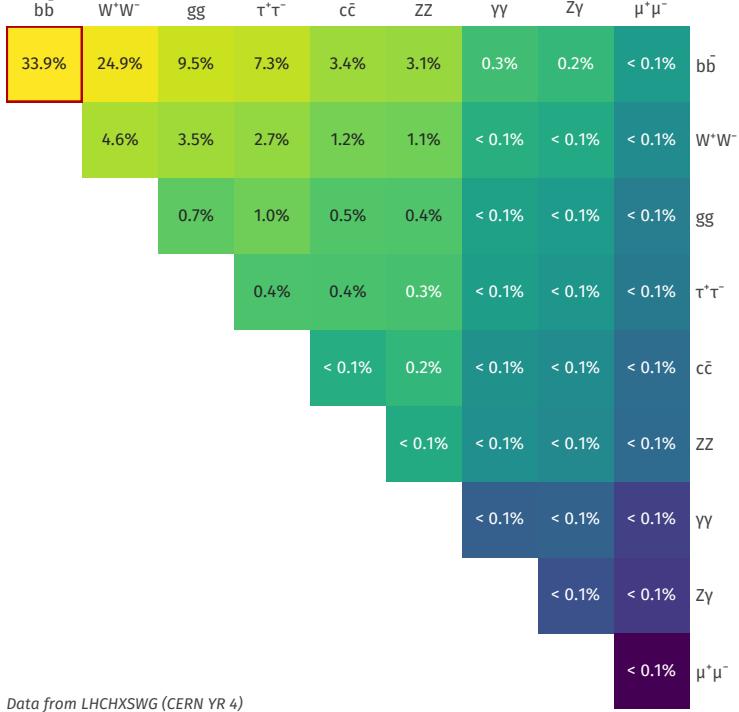


Figure 2.3: Illustration of dominant HH branching ratios. $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ is the most common decay mode, representing 34 % of all HH events produced at the LHC.

1115 2.3 Non-resonant HH Searches

Non-resonant HH production is predicted by the Standard Model via the trilinear coupling discussed above, as well as via production in a fermion loop. More explicitly, after electroweak symmetry breaking, we have

$$\mathcal{L}_{SM} \supset -\lambda v^2 h^2 - \lambda v h^3 - \frac{1}{4} \lambda h^4 \quad (2.1)$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2} m_H^2 - \lambda_{HHH}^{SM} v h^3 - \lambda_{HHHH}^{SM} h^4 \quad (2.2)$$

where $m_H = \sqrt{2\lambda v^2}$ so that

$$\lambda_{HHH}^{SM} = \frac{m_H^2}{2v^2}. \quad (2.3)$$

1116 The mass of the SM Higgs boson has been experimentally measured to be 125 GeV [27],
 1117 and the vacuum expectation value $v = 246$ GeV has a precise determination from the muon
 1118 lifetime [28]. This coupling is therefore precisely predicted in the Standard Model, such that
 1119 an observed deviation from this prediction would be a clear sign of new physics.

1120 The relevant diagrams for non-resonant HH production are shown in Figure 2.2. Notably,
 1121 the diagrams *interfere* with each other, which can be easily seen by counting the fermion
 1122 lines. A detailed theoretical discussion is provided by, e.g. [29].

1123 For the searches presented here, the quark couplings to the Higgs are considered to be
 1124 consistent with the Standard Model value, with measurements of the dominant top Yukawa
 1125 coupling left to more sensitive direct measurements, e.g. from $t\bar{t}$ final states [30]. Variations of
 1126 the trilinear coupling away from the Standard Model are considered, however. Such variations
 1127 are parametrized via

$$\kappa_\lambda = \frac{\lambda_{HHH}}{\lambda_{HHH}^{SM}} \quad (2.4)$$

1128 where λ_{HHH} is a varied coupling and λ_{HHH}^{SM} is the Standard Model prediction. As this
 1129 variation comes as a prefactor only with the *triangle* diagram, significant and interesting
 1130 effects are observed due to the interference. Examples of the impact of this tradeoff on the
 1131 di-Higgs invariant mass are shown in Figure 2.4. Generally speaking, the triangle diagram
 1132 contributes more at low mass, while the box diagram contributes more at high mass.

From a quick analysis of Figure 2.2, one may see that, at leading order, the box diagram, B has amplitude proportional to κ_t^2 , defined as the ratio of the top Yukawa coupling to the value predicted by the Standard Model, whereas the triangle diagram, T has amplitude proportional to $\kappa_t \kappa_\lambda$. Therefore, the cross section is proportional to

$$\sigma(\kappa_t, \kappa_\lambda) = |A(\kappa_t, \kappa_\lambda)|^2 \quad (2.5)$$

$$\sim |\kappa_t^2 B + \kappa_t \kappa_\lambda T|^2 \quad (2.6)$$

$$= \kappa_t^4 |B|^2 + \kappa_t^3 \kappa_\lambda (BT + TB) + \kappa_t^2 \kappa_\lambda^2 |T|^2, \quad (2.7)$$

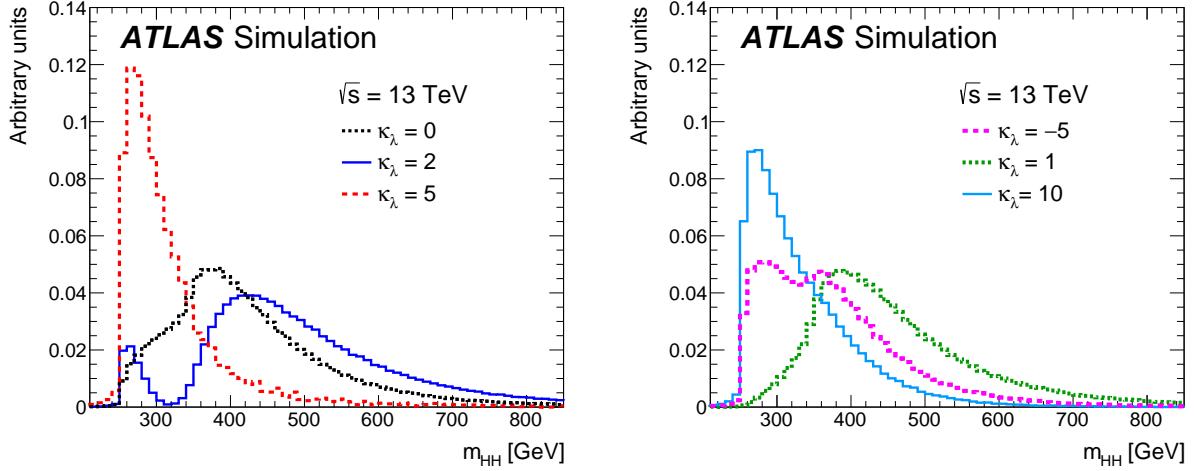


Figure 2.4: Monte Carlo generator level m_{HH} distributions for various values of κ_λ , demonstrating the impact of the interference between the two diagrams of Figure 2.2 on the resulting m_{HH} distribution. For $\kappa_\lambda = 0$ there is no triangle diagram contribution, demonstrating the shape of the box diagram contribution, whereas for $\kappa_\lambda = 10$, the triangle diagram dominates, with a strong low mass peak. The interplay between the two is quite evident for other values, resulting in, e.g., the double peaked structure present for $\kappa_\lambda = 2$ (near maximal destructive interference) and $\kappa_\lambda = -5$. At $\kappa_\lambda = 5$, the interference leads to a deficit at high m_{HH} , resulting in a narrower distribution (and thus a more pronounced low mass peak) than the $\kappa_\lambda = 10$ case. [26]

1133 and thus non-resonant HH production cross section may be parametrized as a second order
 1134 polynomial in κ_λ .

1135 For positive values of κ_λ , due to the relative minus sign between the triangle and box
 1136 diagrams, the interference between the two diagrams is *destructive*, with a maximum in-
 1137 terference near $\kappa_\lambda = 2.3$, corresponding to the minimum cross section prediction. One
 1138 may note that the Standard Model value of $\kappa_\lambda = 1$ is not far away from this minimum –
 1139 correspondingly the Standard Model cross section for HH production is quite small, namely

1140 31.05 fb at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV for production via gluon-gluon fusion [31–38] compared to, e.g.
 1141 single Higgs production, with a gluon-gluon fusion production cross section of 46.86 pb at
 1142 $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV [39] roughly 1500 times larger! For negative values of κ_λ , the interference is
 1143 constructive.

1144 ATLAS projections [40] of $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$, $b\bar{b}\gamma\gamma$, and $b\bar{b}\tau^+\tau^-$ predict an expected signal strength
 1145 for Standard Model HH of 3.5σ with no systematic uncertainties and 3.0σ with systematic
 1146 uncertainties using the 3000 fb^{-1} of data from the HL-LHC (around $20\times$ the full Run 2
 1147 dataset considered in this thesis), constituting an *observation* of HH . As the cross section
 1148 for Standard Model HHH production, corresponding to the quartic Higgs interaction, is
 1149 much smaller (around 0.1 fb at $\sqrt{s} = 14$ TeV [41]), observation of triple Higgs production is
 1150 even farther in the future, and so is not considered here. However this may be interesting for
 1151 future work in a variety of Beyond the Standard Model scenarios (e.g. [42–44]).

1152

Chapter 3

1153

EXPERIMENTAL APPARATUS

1154

What machines must we build to examine the smallest pieces of the universe? The famous equation $E = m$ provides that to create massive particles, we need to provide enough energy. In order to give kinematic phase space to the types of processes that are examined in this thesis (and many others besides), a system must be created in which there is enough energy to (at bare minimum), overcome kinematic thresholds: if you want to search for HH decays, you should have at least 250 GeV ($= 2 \times m_H$) to work with. It is not enough to simply induce such processes, however. These processes need to be captured in some way, emitted energy and particles must be characterized and identified, and in the end all of this information must be put into a useful and useable form such that selections can be made, statistics can be run, and a meaningful statement can be made about the universe. In this chapter, we describe the machines behind the physics, namely the Large Hadron Collider and the ATLAS experiment.

1165

3.1 The Large Hadron Collider

1166

The Large Hadron Collider is a particle accelerator near Geneva, Switzerland. In broad scope, it is a ring with a 27 kilometer circumference. Hadrons (usually protons or heavy ions) move in two counter-circulating beams, which are made to collide at four collision points at various points on the ring. These four collision points correspond to the four detectors placed around the ring: two “general purpose” experiments: ATLAS and CMS; LHCb, focused primarily on flavor physics; and ALICE, focused primarily on heavy ions.

1172

The focus of this thesis is proton-proton collisions at center of mass energy $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV. The process to achieve such collisions proceeds as follows: first, an electric field strips hydrogen of its electrons, creating protons. A linear accelerator, LINAC 2, accelerates protons to

1175 50 MeV. The resulting beam is injected into the Proton Synchrotron Booster (PSB), which
1176 pushes the protons to 1.4 GeV, and then the Proton Synchrotron, which brings the beam to
1177 25 GeV.

1178 Protons are then transferred to the Super Proton Synchrotron (SPS), which ramps up
1179 the energy to 450 GeV. Finally, the protons enter the LHC itself, bringing the beam up to
1180 6.5 TeV [45].

1181 While there is, of course, much that goes into the Large Hadron Collider development and
1182 operation, perhaps two of the most fundamental ideas are (1) how are the beams directed
1183 and manipulated and (2) what do we mean when we say “protons are accelerated”. These
1184 questions both are directly answered by pieces of hardware, namely (1) magnets and (2)
1185 radiofrequency (RF) cavities.

1186 One of fundamental components of the LHC is a large set of superconducting niobium-
1187 titanium magnets. These are cooled by liquid helium to achieve superconducting temperatures,
1188 and there are several types with very specific purposes. The obvious first question with a
1189 circular accelerator is how to keep the particle beam moving around in that circle. This job
1190 is done via a set of dipole magnets placed around the *beam pipes*: the tubes containing the
1191 beam. These are designed such that the magnetic field in the center of the beam pipe runs
1192 perpendicular to the velocity of the charged particles, providing the necessary centripetal
1193 force for the synchrotron motion.

1194 A proton beam is not made of a single proton, however, but of many protons, grouped
1195 into a series of *bunches*. As all of these are positively charged, if unchecked, these bunches
1196 would become diffuse and break apart. What we want is a stable beam with tightly clustered
1197 protons to maximize the chance of a high energy collision. Such clustering is done via a series
1198 of quadropole magnets, with field distributed as in *TODO: grab image from General Exam*.
1199 Alternating sets of quadropoles provide the necessary forces for a tight, stable beam. While
1200 these are the two major components of the LHC magnet system, it is not the full story –
1201 higher order magnets are used to correct for small imperfections in the beam.

1202 Magnetic fields do no work, however, so the magnet system is unable to do the job of the

actual acceleration. This is accomplished via a set of radiofrequency (RF) cavities. Within these cavities, an electric field is made to oscillate (switch direction) at a precise rate. This oscillation creates RF *buckets*, with bunches corresponding to groups of protons that fill a given bucket. The timing is such that protons will always experience an accelerating voltage, corresponding to the 25 ns bunch spacing used at the LHC.

A nice property of this bucket/bunch configuration is that there is some self-correction – there is some finite spread in the grouping of particles. If a particle arrives too early, it will experience some decelerating voltage; if too late, it will experience a higher accelerating voltage.

3.1.1 The LHC Schedule

The physics program at the Large Hadron Collider is split into a variety of data taking periods called *runs*. These runs correspond to various detector/accelerator configurations, and are interspersed with *long shutdowns* – periods used for detector/accelerator upgrades in preparation for the next run. The LHC timeline is as follows

1. Run 1 (2010–2013): First run of the LHC, operating at center of mass energy $\sqrt{s} = 7 \text{ TeV}$, increased to 8 TeV in 2012. ATLAS recorded 4.57 fb^{-1} and 20.3 fb^{-1} of data usable for physics at $\sqrt{s} = 7 \text{ TeV}$ and 8 TeV respectively.
2. Long Shutdown 1 (LS1; 2013–2015): Upgrades to accelerator complex, magnet system, to allow for increase in energy. Design energy was $\sqrt{s} = 14 \text{ TeV}$, delays in “training” of superconducting magnets led to decrease to $\sqrt{s} = 13 \text{ TeV}$.
3. Run 2 (2015–2018): Second run of the LHC, operating at center of mass energy $\sqrt{s} = 13 \text{ TeV}$. Data from this run is used in this thesis, with 139 fb^{-1} of data available for physics from the ATLAS experiment.
4. Long Shutdown 2 (LS2; 2019–2021): Upgrades to ATLAS muon spectrometer (New

1227 Small Wheel), liquid argon calorimeter; upgrades in preparation for the High Luminosity
1228 LHC (HL-LHC).

1229 5. Run 3 (2021–2023?): Third run of the LHC, target center of mass energy $\sqrt{s} =$
1230 $13 - 14 \text{ TeV}$, total target luminosity 300 fb^{-1} .

1231 6. Long Shutdown 3 (LS3; 2024?–2026?): Further upgrades for the HL-LHC.

1232 7. Run 4, 5, ... (2026? onward): High Luminosity LHC – goal is to achieve instantaneous
1233 luminosities by a factor of five, massively enlarging available statistics for physics.
1234 Projected 3000 to 4000 fb^{-1} , > 20 times the full Run 2 ATLAS dataset.

1235 3.2 The ATLAS Experiment

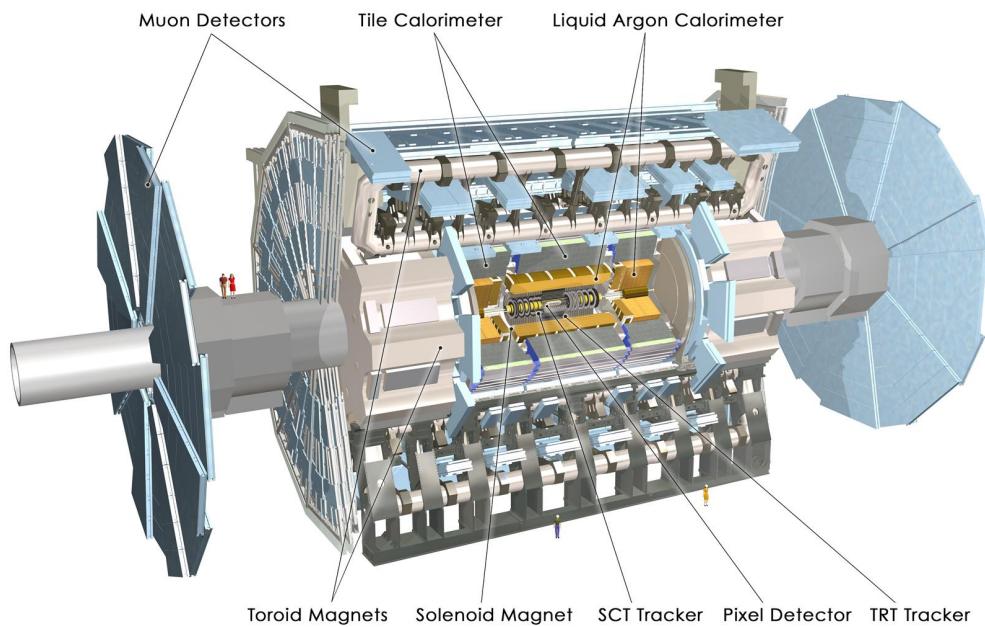


Figure 3.1: Diagram of the ATLAS detector [46]

1236 This thesis focuses on searches done with the ATLAS experiment. As mentioned, this is one

1237 of two “general purpose” experiments at the LHC, by which we mean there is a very large and
 1238 broad variety of physics done within the experimental collaboration. This broad physics focus
 1239 has a direct relation to the design of the ATLAS detector [47], pictured in Figure 3.1, which
 1240 is composed of a sophisticated set of subsystems designed to fully characterize the physics of
 1241 a given high energy particle collision. It consists of an inner tracking detector surrounded
 1242 by a thin superconducting solenoid, electromagnetic and hadronic calorimeters, and a muon
 1243 spectrometer incorporating three large superconducting toroidal magnets. The ATLAS
 1244 detector covers nearly the entire solid angle around the collision point, fully characterizing
 1245 the “visible” components of a collision and allowing for indirect sensitivity to particles that
 1246 do not interact with the detector (e.g. neutrinos) via “missing” energy (roughly momentum
 1247 balance). We will go through the design and physics contribution of each of the detector
 1248 components in the following. A schematic of how various particles interact with the detector
 1249 is shown in Figure 3.2.

1250 3.2.1 ATLAS Coordinate System

1251 Of relevance for the following discussion, as well as for the analysis presented in Chapters
 1252 6 through 10, is the ATLAS coordinate system. ATLAS uses a right-handed coordinate
 1253 system with its origin at the nominal interaction point (IP) in the center of the detector and
 1254 the z -axis along the beam pipe. The x -axis points from the IP to the center of the LHC
 1255 ring, and the y -axis points upwards. Cylindrical coordinates (r, ϕ) are used in the transverse
 1256 plane, ϕ being the azimuthal angle around the z -axis. The pseudorapidity is defined in
 1257 terms of the polar angle θ as $\eta = -\ln \tan(\theta/2)$. Angular distance is measured in units of
 1258 $\Delta R \equiv \sqrt{(\Delta\eta)^2 + (\Delta\phi)^2}$. These coordinates are shown in Figure 3.3.

1259 3.2.2 Inner Detector

1260 The purpose of the inner detector is the reconstruction of the trajectory of charged particles,
 1261 called *tracking*. This is accomplished primarily through the collection of electrons displaced
 1262 when a charged particle passes through a tracking detector. By setting up multiple layers of

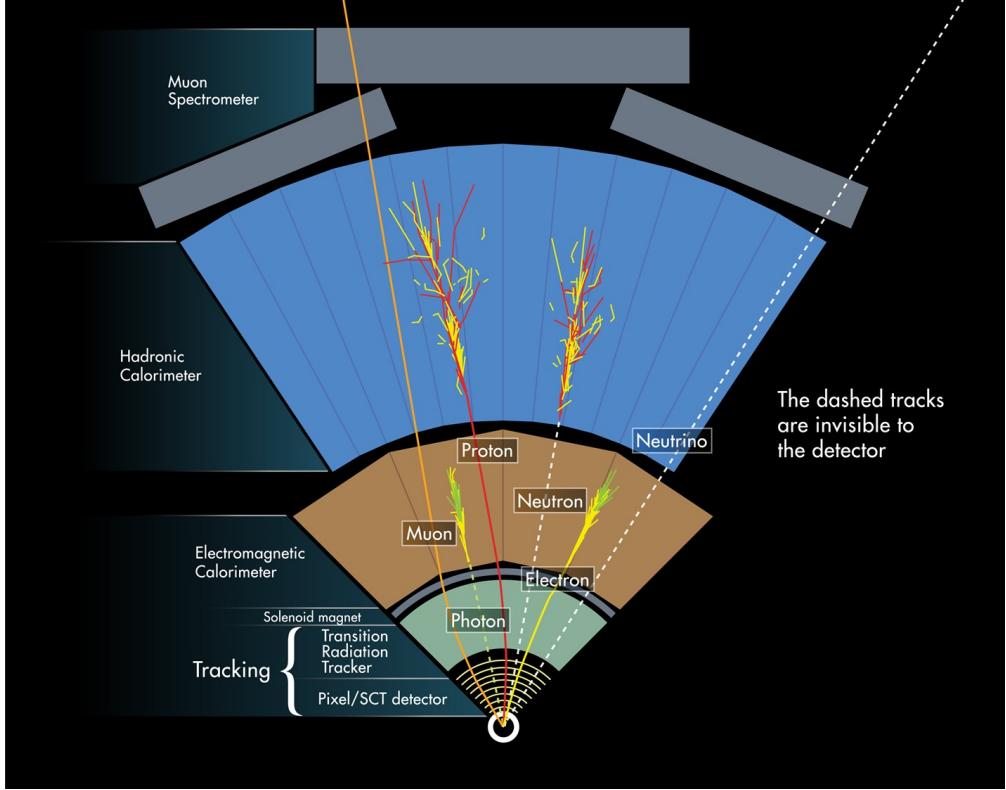


Figure 3.2: Cross section of the ATLAS detector showing how particles interact with various detector components [48]

such detectors, such that a given particle leaves a signature, known as a “hit”, in each layer, the trajectory of the particle may be inferred via “connecting the dots” between these hits.

The raw trajectory of a particle only provides positional information. However, the trajectory of a charged particle in a known magnetic field additionally provides information on particle momentum and charge via the curvature of the corresponding track (cf. $\vec{F} = q\vec{v} \times \vec{B}$). The inner detector system is therefore surrounded by a solenoid magnet, providing a 2 T magnetic field along the z -axis (yielding curvature in the transverse $x - y$ plane).

The inner detector provides charged particle tracking in the range $|\eta| < 2.5$ via a series of detector layers. The innermost of these is the high-granularity silicon pixel detector which typically provides four measurements per track, with the first hit in the insertable B-layer

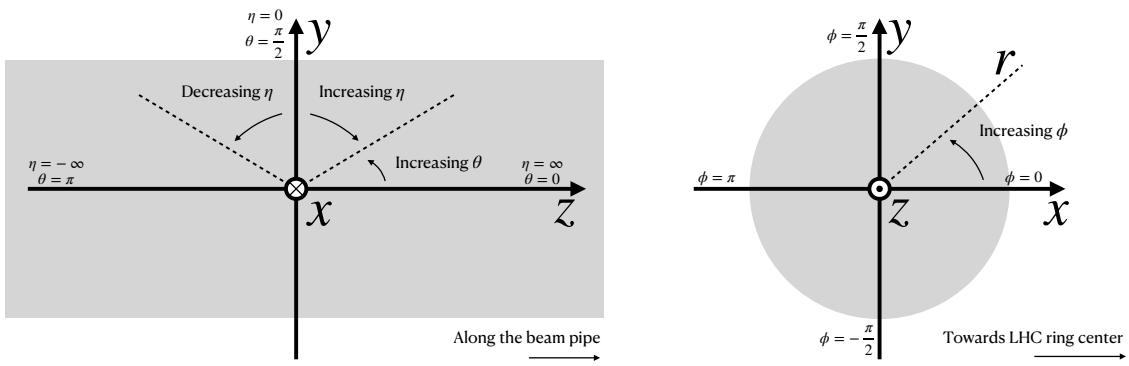


Figure 3.3: 2D projections of the ATLAS coordinate system

1273 (IBL) installed before Run 2 [49, 50]. This is very close to the interaction point with a
 1274 high degree of positional information, and is therefore very important for e.g. b -tagging (see
 1275 Chapter 5). It is followed by the silicon microstrip tracker (SCT), which usually provides
 1276 eight measurements per track. This is lower granularity, but similar in concept to the pixel
 1277 detector.

1278 Both of these silicon detectors are complemented by the transition radiation tracker
 1279 (TRT), which extends the radial track reconstruction within the range $|\eta| < 2.0$. This is
 1280 a different design, composed of *drift tubes*, i.e. straws filled with Xenon gas with a wire
 1281 in the center, but similarly collects electrons displaced by ionizing particles. In addition,
 1282 the TRT includes materials with widely varying indices of refraction, which leads to the
 1283 production of transition radiation, namely radiation produced by a charged particle passing
 1284 through an inhomogeneous medium. The energy loss on such a transition is proportional
 1285 to the Lorentz factor $\gamma = E/m$ – correspondingly, lighter particles (e.g. electrons) tend to
 1286 lose more energy and emit more photons compared to heavier particles (e.g. pions). In the
 1287 detector, this corresponds to a larger fraction of hits (typically 30 in total) above a given

1288 high energy-deposit threshold for electrons, providing particle identification information.

1289 *3.2.3 Calorimeter*

1290 Surrounding the inner detector in ATLAS is the calorimeter. The principle of the calorimeter
1291 is to completely absorb the energy of a produced particle in order to measure it. However,
1292 a pure block of absorber does not provide much information about the particle interaction
1293 with the material. The ATLAS calorimeter therefore has a *sampling calorimeter* structure,
1294 namely, layers of absorber interspersed with layers of sensitive material, giving the calorimeter
1295 “stopping power” while allowing detailed measurement of the resulting particle shower and
1296 corresponding deposited energy.

1297 The ATLAS calorimetersystem covers the pseudorapidity range $|\eta| < 4.9$, and is primarily
1298 composed of two components, an electromagnetic calorimeter, designed to measure particles
1299 which primarily interact via electromagnetism (e.g. photons and electrons), and a hadronic
1300 calorimeter, designed to measure particles which interact via the strong force (e.g. pions,
1301 other hadrons). We will return to the differences between these in a moment.

1302 In ATLAS, the electromagnetic calorimeter covers the region of $|\eta| < 3.2$, and uses
1303 lead for the absorbers and liquid-argon for the sensitive material. It is high granularity
1304 and, geometrically, has two components: the “barrel”, which covers the cylindrical body of
1305 the detector volume and the “endcap”, covering the ends. An additional thin liquid-argon
1306 presampler covers $|\eta| < 1.8$ to correct for energy loss in material upstream of the calorimeters.

1307 The hadronic calorimeter is composed of alternating steel and plastic scintillator tiles,
1308 segmented into three barrel structures within $|\eta| < 1.7$, in addition to two copper/liquid-argon
1309 endcap calorimeters.

1310 The solid angle coverage is completed with forward copper/liquid-argon and tungsten/liquid-
1311 argon calorimeter modules optimized for electromagnetic and hadronic energy measurements
1312 respectively.

1313 *3.2.4 Muon Spectrometer*

1314 While muons interact electromagnetically, they are around 200 times heavier than electrons
 1315 ($m_\mu = 106 \text{ MeV}$, while $m_e = 0.510 \text{ MeV}$). Therefore, electromagnetic interactions with
 1316 absorbers in the calorimeter are not sufficient to stop them, and, as they do not interact
 1317 via the strong force, hard scattering with nuclei is rare. A dedicated system for muon
 1318 measurements is therefore required.

1319 The muon spectrometer (MS) is the outermost layer of ATLAS and is designed for this
 1320 purpose. It is composed of three parts: a set of triggering chambers, which detect if there is
 1321 a muon and provide a coordinate measurement, in conjunction with high-precision tracking
 1322 chambers, which measure the deflection of muons in a magnetic field to measure muon
 1323 momentum, similar to the inner detector solenoid. The magnetic field is generated by the
 1324 superconducting air-core toroidal magnets, with a field integral between 2.0 and 6.0 T m
 1325 across most of the detector. The toroid magnetic field runs roughly in a circle in the $x - y$
 1326 plane around the beam line, leading to muon curvature along the z-axis.

1327 The precision tracking system covers the region $|\eta| < 2.7$ via three layers of monitored
 1328 drift tubes, and is complemented by cathode-strip chambers in the forward region, where the
 1329 background is highest. The muon trigger system covers the range $|\eta| < 2.4$ with resistive-plate
 1330 chambers in the barrel, and thin-gap chambers in the endcap regions.

1331 *3.2.5 Triggering*

1332 During a typical run of the LHC, there are roughly 1 billion collisions in ATLAS per second
 1333 (1 GHz), corresponding to a 40 MHz bunch crossing rate [51]. Saving the information from
 1334 all of them is not only unnecessary, but infeasible. The ATLAS trigger system provides a
 1335 sophisticated set of selections to filter the collision data and only keep those collision events
 1336 useful for downstream analysis.

1337 These events are selected by the first-level trigger system, which is implemented in custom
 1338 hardware, and accepts events at a rate below 100 kHz. Selections are then made by algorithms

1339 implemented in software in the high-level trigger [52], reducing this further, and, in the end,
1340 events are recorded to disk at much more manageable rate of about 1 kHz.

1341 An extensive set of ATLAS software [53] is open source, including the software used for
1342 real and simulated data reconstruction and analysis and that used in the trigger and data
1343 acquisition systems of the experiment.

1344 *3.2.6 Particle Showers and the Calorimeter*

1345 The design of the ATLAS detector is directly tied to the physics it is trying to detect. Of these,
1346 possibly the most non-trivial distinction is in the calorimeter design. It is therefore useful to
1347 discuss in more detail the various properties of electromagnetic and hadronic interactions
1348 with material, and how these correspond to the particle showers measured by the detector
1349 described above.

1350 Electromagnetic showers in ATLAS predominantly occur via bremsstrahlung, or “braking
1351 radiation”, and electron-positron pair production. This proceeds roughly as follows: an
1352 electron entering a material is deflected by the electromagnetic field of a heavy nucleus. This
1353 results in the radiation of a photon. That photon produces an electron-positron pair, and
1354 the process repeats, resulting in a shower structure. At each step, characterized by *radiation*
1355 *length*, X_0 , the number of particles approximately doubles and the average particle energy
1356 decreases by approximately a factor of two. *TODO: Include nice Thomson image*

Note that bremsstrahlung and pair production only dominate in specific energy regimes, with other processes taking over depending on particle energy. For electrons, bremsstrahlung only dominates for higher energies, as low energy electrons will form ions with the atoms of the material. The point where the rates for the two processes are equal is called the *critical energy*, and is roughly

$$E_c \approx \frac{800 \text{ MeV}}{Z} \quad (3.1)$$

1357 where Z is the nuclear charge. From a similar analysis of rates, we may see that the
1358 bremsstrahlung rate is inversely proportional to the square of the mass of the particle. This

₁₃₅₉ explains why muons do not shower in a similar way, as the rate of bremsstrahlung is suppressed
₁₃₆₀ by $(m_e/m_\mu)^2$ relative to electrons.

For lead, the absorber used for the ATLAS electromagnetic calorimeter, which has $Z = 82$, this critical energy is therefore around 10 MeV. Electrons resulting from LHC collisions are of a 1.3×10^3 GeV scale. With the approximation of a reduction in particle energy by a factor of two every radiation length, the number of radiation lengths before the critical energy is reached is

$$x = \frac{\ln(E/E_c)}{\ln 2} \quad (3.2)$$

₁₃₆₁ such that for a 100 GeV shower in lead, $x \sim 13$. The radiation length for lead is around
₁₃₆₂ 0.56 cm, such that an electromagnetic shower could be expected to be captured within 10 cm
₁₃₆₃ of lead.

₁₃₆₄ Electromagnetic showers are therefore characterized by depositing much of their energy
₁₃₆₅ within a small region of space. As we show below (Chapter 4) though electromagnetic
₁₃₆₆ showering is not deterministic, the large number of particles and the restricted set of processes
₁₃₆₇ involved means that the shower development as a whole is very similar between individual
₁₃₆₈ electromagnetic showers of the same energy.

₁₃₆₉ For completeness, note as well that pair production dominates for photons of energy greater
₁₃₇₀ than around 10 MeV, whereas for lower energies (below around 1 MeV), the photoelectric
₁₃₇₁ effect, namely atomic photon absorption and electron emission, dominates.

₁₃₇₂ Hadronic showers are distinguished by the fact that they interact strongly with atomic
₁₃₇₃ nuclei. They are correspondingly more complex because (1) they involve a wider variety
₁₃₇₄ of processes than electromagnetic showers, and (2) these processes have a wide variety of
₁₃₇₅ associated length scales. Because these are heavier than electrons (e.g. protons and charged
₁₃₇₆ pions) bremsstrahlung is suppressed, but ionization interactions with the electrons will cause
₁₃₇₇ these particles to lose energy as they pass through the material. Hadronic showering occurs
₁₃₇₈ on interaction with atomic nuclei. This may lead to production of, e.g. both charged (π^\pm)
₁₃₇₉ and neutral (π^0) pions. The π^0 lifetime is much much shorter than that of the charged pions
₁₃₈₀ (around a factor of 10^8), and immediately decays to two photons, starting an electromagnetic

shower, as described above. The longer lived π^\pm travel further in the detector before experiencing another strong interaction with more particles produced, also with varying lifetimes and decay properties.

It is therefore immediately apparent that hadronic showers are more complex than electromagnetic ones (electromagnetic showers can be a subset of the hadronic!), and therefore much more variable from shower to shower. The length scales involved are also significantly larger due to the reliance on nuclear interactions, characterized by length λ_I , which is around 17 cm for iron (used in the ATLAS hadronic calorimeter). This motivates the calorimeter design, and results in the properties demonstrated in Figure 3.2.

1390

Chapter 4

1391

SIMULATION

1392 Simulated physics samples are a core piece of the physics output of the Large Hadron
 1393 Collider, providing a map from a physics theory into what is observed in our detector. This
 1394 is crucial for searches for new physics, where simulation is necessary to describe what a given
 1395 signal model looks like, but also extremely valuable for describing the physics of the Standard
 1396 Model, providing detailed predictions of background processes for use in everything from
 1397 designing simple cuts to training multivariate discriminators. Broadly, simulation can be split
 1398 into two stages: *event generation*, in which physics theory is used to generate a description of
 1399 particles present after a proton-proton collision, and *detector simulation*, which passes this
 1400 particle description through a simulation of the detector material, providing a view of the
 1401 physics event as it would be seen in ATLAS data. Such simulation is often called Monte Carlo
 1402 in reference to the underlying mathematical framework, which relies on random sampling.

1403 **4.1 Event Generation**

1404 A variety of tools are used to simulate various aspects of event generation. One such aspect
 1405 is generation of the “hard scatter” event, i.e., two protons collide and some desired physics
 1406 process happens. In practice, this is not quite as simple as two quarks or gluons interacting.
 1407 Protons are composed of three “valence” quarks with various momenta interacting with each
 1408 other via exchange of gluons, but also a sea of virtual gluons which may decay into other
 1409 quarks. A hard scatter event is therefore characterized by the corresponding particle level
 1410 diagrams, but additionally by a set of *parton distribution functions* (PDFs), which describe
 1411 the probability to find constituent quarks or gluons at carrying various momenta at a given
 1412 energy scale (often written Q^2). Such PDFs are measured experimentally *TODO: cite* and

1413 the selection of a “PDF set” and a given physics process characterizes the hard scatter.
 1414 Depending on the model being considered and the particular theoretical constraints, processes
 1415 are often simulated at either leading (LO) or next to leading order (NLO), corresponding to
 1416 the order of the perturbative expansion (i.e. tree level or 1 loop diagrams). Various additional
 1417 tools are developed for such NLO calculations, including POWHEG Box v2 [54–56], which is
 1418 used for this thesis. MADGRAPH [57] is used in this thesis for leading order simulation.

1419 The hard scatter is not the only component of a given collider event, however. Incoming
 1420 and outgoing particles are themselves very energetic and may radiate particles along their
 1421 trajectory. In particular, gluons, which have a self-interaction term as described in Chapter 1,
 1422 may be radiated, which subsequently themselves radiate gluons or decay to quarks which can
 1423 also radiate gluons, in a whole mess of QCD that both contributes to the particle content
 1424 of a collider event and is not directly described by the hard scatter. This cascade, called a
 1425 *parton shower*, has a dedicated set of simulation tools. For this thesis, HERWIG 7 [58][59] and
 1426 PYTHIA 8 [60] are used, which interface with tools such as MADGRAPH for simulation.

1427 Due to color confinement (Chapter 1), quarks and gluons cannot be observed free particles,
 1428 but rather undergo a process called hadronization, in which they are grouped into colorless
 1429 hadrons (e.g. *mesons*, consisting of one quark and one anti-quark). In simulation, this is also
 1430 handled with tools such as HERWIG 7 or PYTHIA 8.

1431 The physics of b -quarks is quite important for a variety of searches for new physics and
 1432 measurements of the Standard Model, including this thesis work. Correspondingly, the decay
 1433 of “heavy flavor” particles (e.g. B and D mesons, containing b and c quarks respectively)
 1434 has been very well studied, and a dedicated simulation tool, EVTGEN [61], is used for such
 1435 processes.

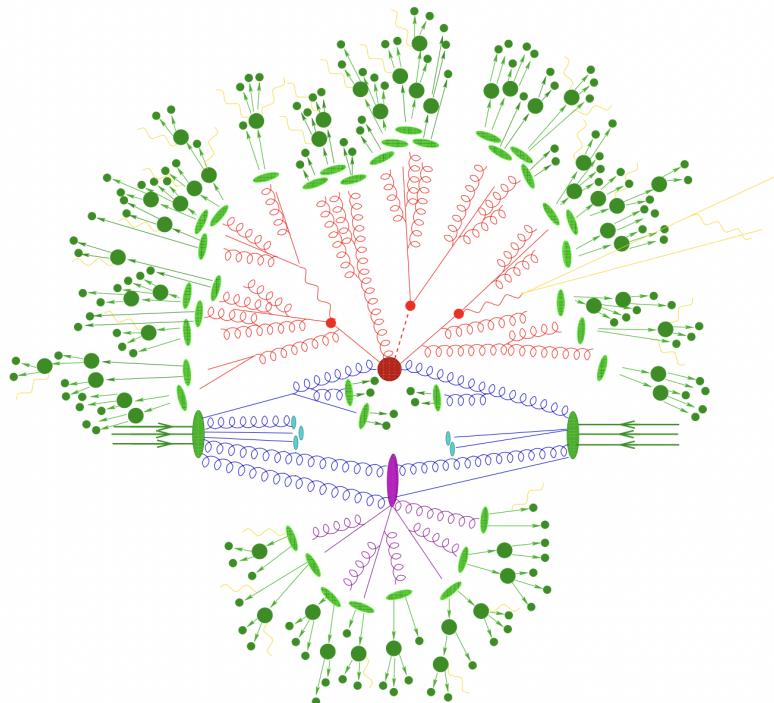


Figure 4.1: Schematic diagram of the Monte Carlo simulation of a hadron-hadron collision. The incoming hadrons are the green blobs with the arrows on the left and right, with the red blob in the center representing the hard scatter event, and the purple representing a secondary hard scatter. Radiation from both incoming and outgoing particles is shown, and the light green blobs represent hadronization, with the outermost dark green circles corresponding to the final state hadrons. Yellow lines are radiated photons. [62]

1436 **4.2 Detector Simulation**

1437 Event generation provides a full and exact description of the particle content of a given
1438 collider event. This description is useful, but is an artifact of the simulation – for real physics
1439 events, we must rely on the information collected by sophisticated detectors (Chapter 3) to
1440 make statements about the physics content of collider events. The simulation of how particles
1441 interact with the physical detector and of the corresponding information that is collected is
1442 therefore a necessary step of physics simulation at the LHC. The design and components of
1443 the ATLAS detector are described in Chapter 3. Simulation of this detector quickly becomes
1444 complicated – there are a variety of different materials and sub-detectors, each with particular
1445 configurations and resolutions. Interactions of particles with the detector materials can cause
1446 showering, and such showers must be simulated and characterized.

1447 In ATLAS, the GEANT4 [63] simulation toolkit is used for detailed simulation of the
1448 ATLAS detector, often referred to as *full simulation*. The method can be thought of as
1449 proceeding step by step as a particle moves through the detector, simulating the interaction
1450 of the material at each stage, and following each branch of each resulting shower with a
1451 similarly detailed step by step simulation.

1452 This type of simulation is very computationally intensive, especially in the calorimeter,
1453 which has a high density of material, leading to an extremely large set of material interactions
1454 to simulate. There is correspondingly a large effort within ATLAS to develop techniques to
1455 decrease the computational load – these techniques will be of increasing importance for Run
1456 3 and the HL-LHC, which will have increased computational need due to the high complexity
1457 and large volume of collected physics events, along with the corresponding set of simulated
1458 physics events [64]. The divergence of the baseline computing model from the projected
1459 computing budget is shown in Figure 4.2.

1460 The fast simulation used for this thesis, AtlFast-II [66], is one such technique, which uses
1461 a parametrized simulation of the calorimeter, called FastCaloSim, in conjunction with full
1462 simulation of the inner detector, to achieve an order of magnitude speed up in simulation

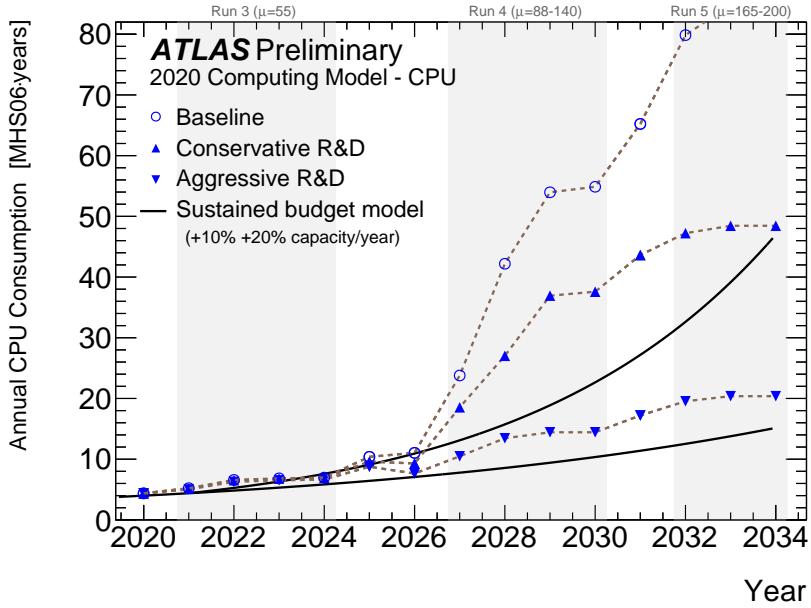


Figure 4.2: The projected ATLAS computational requirements for Run 3 and the HL-LHC relative to the projected computing budget. Aggressive R&D is required to keep resources within budget [65].

time. This parametrized simulation uses a simplified detector geometry, in conjunction with a simulation of particle shower development based on statistical sampling of distributions from fully simulated events, to massively speed up simulation time and computational load.

Such a speed up comes at a bit of a cost in performance. In particular, the modeling of jet substructure (see Chapter 5) historically has been an issue for FastCaloSim. The ATLAS authorship qualification work supporting this thesis is an effort to improve such modeling, and is part of a suite of updates being considered for a new fast simulation targeting Run 3. We briefly describe this work in the following.

¹⁴⁷¹ **4.3 Correlated Fluctuations in FastCaloSim**

¹⁴⁷² A variety of developments have been made to FastCaloSim, improving on the version used for
¹⁴⁷³ AtlFast-II. This new fast calorimeter simulation [67] is largely based on two components: one
¹⁴⁷⁴ which describes the *total energy* deposited in each calorimeter layer as a shower moves from
¹⁴⁷⁵ the interaction point outward, and one which describes the *shape*, i.e., the pattern of energy
¹⁴⁷⁶ deposits, of a shower in each respective calorimeter layer. Both methods are parametrizations
¹⁴⁷⁷ of the full simulation, and therefore are considered to be performing well if they are able
¹⁴⁷⁸ to reproduce corresponding full simulation distributions. Of course, directly sampling from
¹⁴⁷⁹ a library of showers would identically reproduce such distributions – however a statistical
¹⁴⁸⁰ sampling of various shower *properties* provides much more generality in the simulation.

¹⁴⁸¹ For the simulation of total energy in each given layer, the primary challenge is that such
¹⁴⁸² energy deposits are highly correlated. The new FastCaloSim thus relies on a technique called
¹⁴⁸³ Principal Component Analysis (PCA) [68] to de-correlate the layers, aiding parametrization.

¹⁴⁸⁴ The PCA chain transforms N energy inputs into N Gaussians and projects these Gaussians
¹⁴⁸⁵ onto the eigenvectors of the corresponding covariance matrix. This results in N de-correlated
¹⁴⁸⁶ components, as the eigenvectors are orthogonal. The component of the PCA decomposition
¹⁴⁸⁷ with the largest corresponding eigenvalue is then used to define bins, in which showers
¹⁴⁸⁸ demonstrate similar patterns of energy deposition across the calorimeter layers. To further
¹⁴⁸⁹ de-correlate the inputs, the PCA chain is repeated on the showers within each such bin. This
¹⁴⁹⁰ full process is reversed for the particle simulation. A full description of the method can be
¹⁴⁹¹ found in [67].

¹⁴⁹² Modeling of the lateral shower shape makes use of 2D histograms filled with GEANT4
¹⁴⁹³ hit energies in each layer and PCA bin. Binned in polar $\alpha - R$ coordinates in a local plane
¹⁴⁹⁴ tangential to the surface of the calorimeter system, these histograms represent the spatial
¹⁴⁹⁵ distribution of energy deposits for a given particle shower. Such histograms are constructed
¹⁴⁹⁶ for a number of GEANT4 events, and the histograms for each event are normalized to total
¹⁴⁹⁷ energy deposited in the given layer. The average of these histograms is then taken (what is

1498 called here the “average shape”).

1499 In simulation, these average shape histograms are used as probability distributions, from
 1500 which a finite number of equal energy hits are drawn. This finite drawing of hits induces
 1501 a statistical fluctuation about the average shape which is tuned to match the expected
 1502 calorimeter sampling uncertainty.

1503 As an example, the intrinsic resolution of the ATLAS Liquid Argon calorimeter has a
 1504 sampling term of $\sigma_{\text{samp}} \approx 10\%/\sqrt{E}$ [69]. The number of hits to be drawn for each layer, $N_{\text{hits}}^{\text{layer}}$,
 1505 is thus taken from a Poisson distribution with mean $1/\sigma_{\text{samp}}^2$, where the energy assigned to
 1506 each hit is then just $E_{\text{hit}} = \frac{E_{\text{layer}}}{N_{\text{hits}}^{\text{layer}}}$. This induces a fluctuation of the order of $10\%/\sqrt{E_{\text{bin}}}$ for
 1507 each bin in the average shape.

1508 Figure 4.3 shows a comparison of energy and weta2 [70], defined as the energy weighted
 1509 lateral width of a shower in the second electromagnetic calorimeter layer, for 16 GeV photons
 1510 simulated with the new FastCaloSim and with full GEANT4 simulation. The agreement is
 1511 quite good, with FastCaloSim matching the GEANT4 mean to within 0.3 and 0.03 percent
 respectively. Similar results are seen for other photon energies and η points.

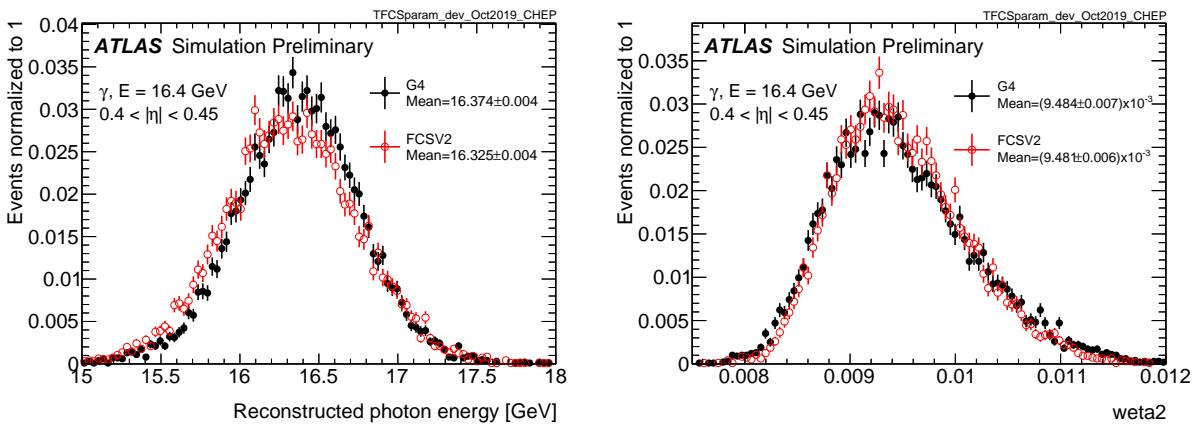


Figure 4.3: Energy and variable weta2, defined as the energy weighted lateral width of a shower in the second electromagnetic calorimeter layer, for 16 GeV photons with full simulation (G4) and FastCaloSimV2 (FCSV2) [67].

1513 4.3.1 *Fluctuation Modeling*

1514 Figure 4.4 shows the ratio of calorimeter cell energies for single GEANT4 photon and pion
 1515 events to the corresponding cell energies in their respective average shapes. While the photon
 1516 event is quite close to the corresponding average, the pion event shows a deviation from the
 1517 average which is much larger and has a non-trivial structure, reflecting the different natures
 1518 of electromagnetic and hadronic showering.

1519 While the shape parametrization described above is thus sufficient for describing electro-
 1520 magnetic showers, we will demonstrate below that it is not sufficient for describing hadronic
 1521 showers (Figures 4.7 and 4.8). We therefore present and validate methods to improve this
 1522 hadronic shower modeling. Such methods have been presented as well in [1].

1523 Two methods for modeling deviations from the average shape have been studied: (1)
 1524 a neural network based approach using a Variational Autoencoder (VAE) [71] and (2) a
 1525 map through cumulative distributions to an n -dimensional Gaussian. With both methods,
 1526 the shape simulation then proceeds as described in Section 4.3, with the drawing of hits
 1527 according to the average shape. However, these hits no longer have equal energy, but have
 1528 weights applied to increase or decrease their energy depending on their spatial position.
 1529 This application of weights is designed to mimic a realistic shower structure and to encode
 1530 correlations between energy deposits.

1531 Both methods are trained on ratios of energy in binned units called voxels. This voxelization
 1532 is performed in the same polar $\alpha - R$ coordinates as the average shape, with a 5 mm core in
 1533 R and 20 mm binning thereafter. There are a total of 8 α bins from 0 to 2π and 8 additional
 1534 R bins from 5 mm to 165 mm. The 5 mm core is filled with the average value of core voxels
 1535 across the 8 α bins when creating the parametrization. However, during simulation, each of
 1536 these 8 core bins is treated independently. The outputs of both methods mimic these energy
 1537 ratios and are used in the shape simulation as the weights described above. In contrast to
 1538 an approach based on, e.g., calorimeter cells, using voxels allows for flexibility in tuning the
 1539 binning used in creating the parametrization. Further, due to their relatively large size, using

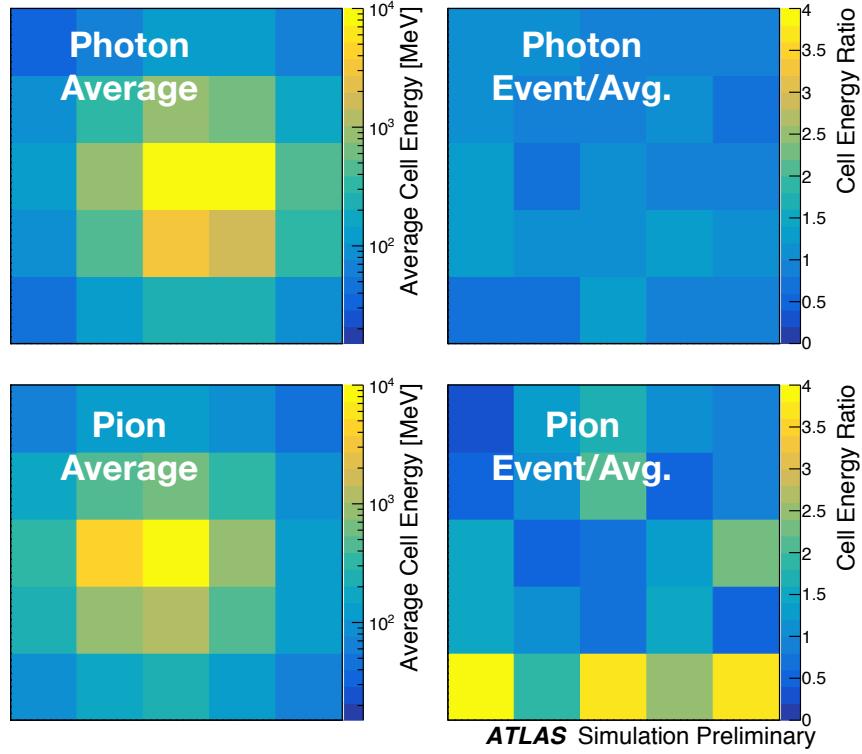


Figure 4.4: Example of photon and pion average shapes in 5×5 calorimeter cells. The left column shows the average shape over a sample of 10000 events, while the right column shows the energy ratio, in each cell, of single GEANT4 events with respect to this average. The photon ratios are all close to 1, while the pion ratios show significant deviation from the average.

1540 calorimeter cells is subject to “edge effects”, where the splitting of energy between cells has a
 1541 non-trivial effect on the observed energy ratio. The binning used here is of the order of half
 1542 of a cell size, mitigating this effect.

1543 The Gaussian method operates by using cumulative distributions to map GEANT4 energy
 1544 ratios to a multidimensional Gaussian distribution. New events are generated by randomly
 1545 sampling from this Gaussian distribution.

1546 For the VAE method, a system of two linked neural networks is trained to generate events.

1547 The first “encoder” neural network maps input GEANT4 energy ratios to a lower dimensional
 1548 latent space. A second “decoder” neural network then samples from that latent space and
 1549 tries to reproduce the inputs. In simulation, events are generated by taking random samples
 1550 from the latent space and passing them through the trained decoder.

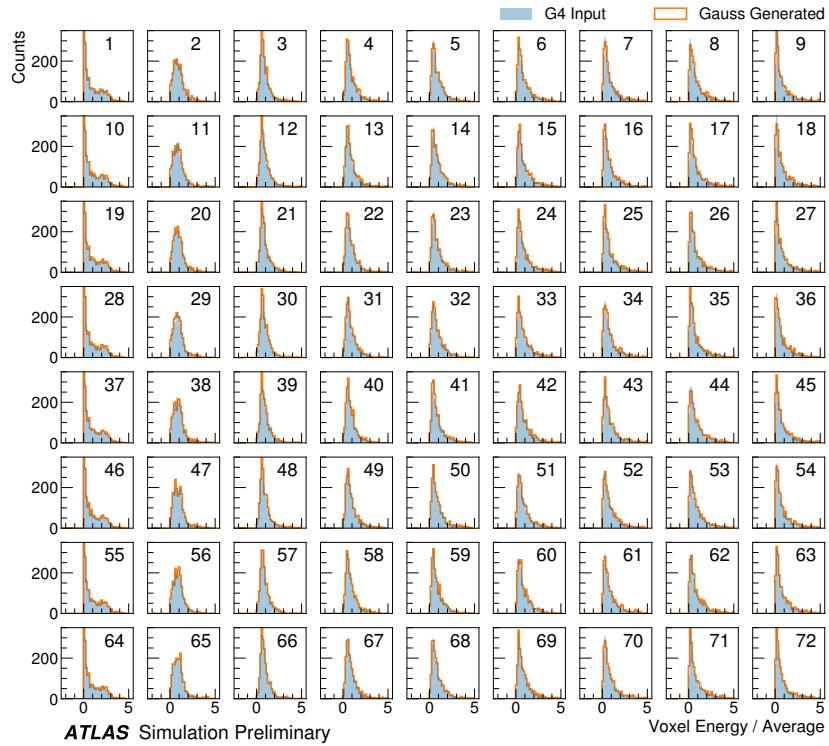


Figure 4.5: Distribution of the ratio of voxel energy in single events to the corresponding voxel energy in the average shape, with GEANT4 events in blue and Gaussian model events in orange, for 65 GeV central pions in EMB2. Moving top to bottom corresponds to increasing α , left to right corresponds to increasing R , with core voxels numbered 1, 10, 19, Agreement is quite good across all voxels. Results are similar for the VAE method.

1551 Figure 4.5 shows the distributions of input GEANT4 and Gaussian method generated
 1552 energy ratios in the grid of voxels. Figure 4.6 shows the correlation coefficient between the
 1553 center voxel from $\alpha = 0$ to $2\pi/8$ for input GEANT4 and the Gaussian and VAE fluctuation

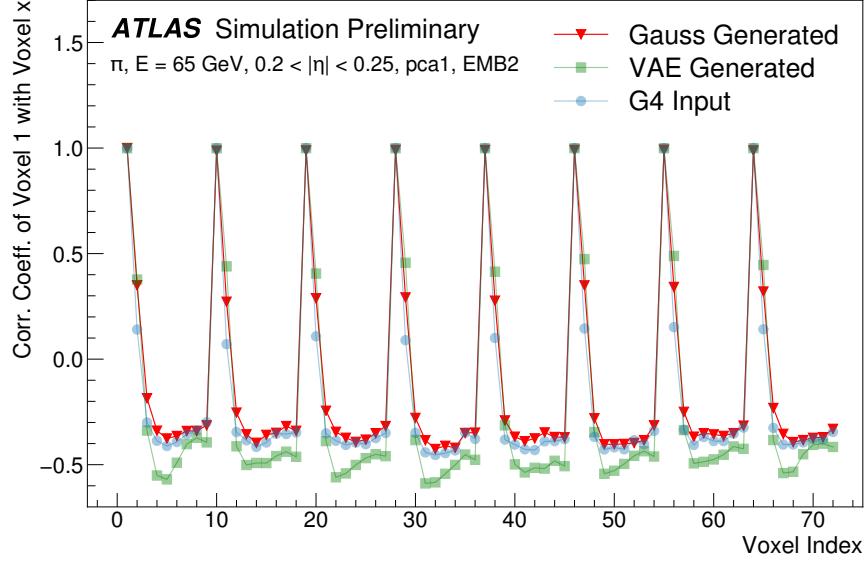


Figure 4.6: Correlation coefficient of ratios of voxel energy in single events to the corresponding voxel energy in the average shape, examined between the core bin from $\alpha = 0$ to $2\pi/8$ and each of the other voxels. The periodic structure represents the binning in α , and the increasing numbers in each of these periods correspond to increasing R , where the eight points with correlation coefficient 1 are the eight core bins. Both the Gaussian and VAE generated toy events are able to reproduce the major correlation structures for 65 GeV central pions in EMB2.

1554 methods. Agreement is good throughout.

1555 Validation of the Gaussian and VAE fluctuation methods was performed within FastCaloSimV2.
 1556 Figure 4.7 shows the energy ratio of cells for a given simulation to the corresponding cells in
 1557 the average shape as a function of the distance from the shower center. The mean for all
 1558 simulation methods is expected to be around 1, with deviation from the average (the RMS
 1559 fluctuation) shown by the error bars. The Gaussian method RMS (red) and VAE method
 1560 RMS (green) both match the GEANT4 RMS (yellow) better than the case without correlated
 1561 fluctuations (blue) for a variety of energies, η points, and layers, often reproducing 80 – 100 %

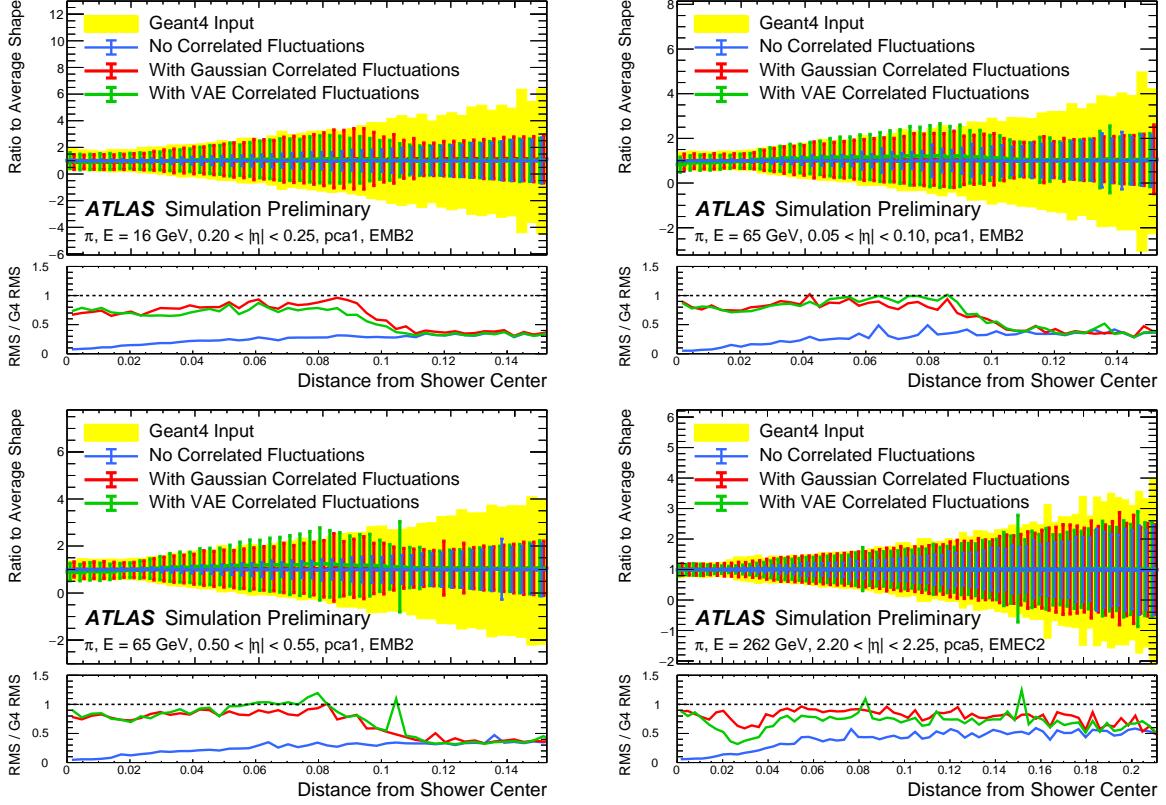


Figure 4.7: Comparison of the RMS fluctuations about the average shape with the Gaussian fluctuation model (red), the VAE fluctuation model (green), and without correlated fluctuations (blue) for a range of pion energies, η points, and layers.

1562 of the GEANT4 RMS magnitude, compared to the 5 – 30 % observed in the no correlated
1563 fluctuations case.

1564 Figure 4.8 shows the result of a simulation with full ATLAS reconstruction for 65 GeV
1565 central pions with the Gaussian fluctuation model. Here a *cluster* [72] is defined as a three-
1566 dimensional spatial grouping of calorimeter cells which are summed based on the input signals
1567 relative to their neighboring cells. The multiplicity, shape, and spatial distribution of such
1568 clusters provides a powerful insight on the structure of energy deposits in the calorimeter,
1569 and good performance in cluster variables is a promising step towards good performance

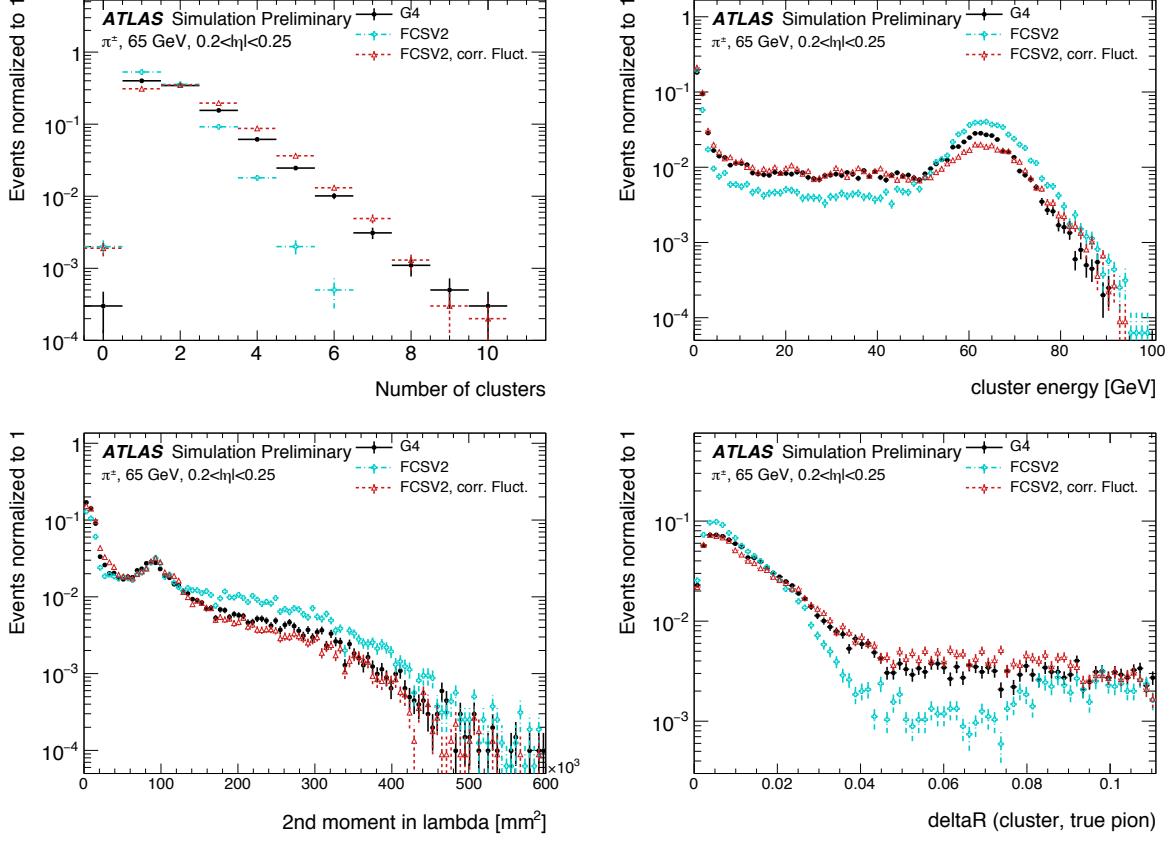


Figure 4.8: Comparison of the Gaussian fluctuation model to the default FCSV2 version and to G4 simulation, using pions of 65 GeV energy and $0.2 < |\eta| < 0.25$. Variables shown relate to calorimeter clusters, three-dimensional spatial groupings of cells [72] which provide powerful insight on the structure of energy deposits in the calorimeter. Variables considered include number and energy of clusters, the 2nd moment in lambda, ($\langle \lambda^2 \rangle$), which describes the square of the longitudinal extension of a cluster, where λ is the distance of a cell from the shower center along the shower axis, and a cluster moment is defined as $\langle x^n \rangle = \frac{\sum E_i x_i}{\sum E_i}$, and the distance ΔR , between the cluster and the true pion. With the correlated fluctuations, variables demonstrate improved modeling relative to default FastCaloSimV2.

1570 in the modeling of jet substructure, as these clusters may themselves be summed to form
 1571 jets (see Chapter 5). The simulation with the Gaussian fluctuation model demonstrates
 1572 improved modeling of several of these cluster variables relative to baseline FastCaloSimV2,
 1573 reproducing the distributions of events simulated with GEANT4. These include number and
 1574 energy of clusters, the 2nd moment in lambda, ($\langle \lambda^2 \rangle$), which describes the square of the
 1575 longitudinal extension of a cluster, where λ is the distance of a cell from the shower center
 1576 along the shower axis, and a cluster moment is defined as $\langle x^n \rangle = \frac{\sum E_i x_i}{\sum E_i}$, and the distance
 1577 ΔR , between the cluster and the true pion.

1578 The new fast calorimeter simulation is a crucial part of the future of simulation for the
 1579 ATLAS Experiment at the LHC. The per event simulation time of the full detector with
 1580 GEANT4, calculated over 100 $t\bar{t}$ events, is 228.9 s. Using FastCaloSim for the calorimeter
 1581 simulation reduces this to 26.6 s, of which FastCaloSim itself is only 0.015 s, with the majority
 1582 of the remaining simulation time due to GEANT4. Good physics modeling is achieved, and
 1583 the correlated fluctuations method shows good proof of concept improvement for the modeling
 1584 of hadronic showers.

1585 **4.4 Outlook**

1586 There has been significant effort in the community to develop a set of fast simulation tools,
 1587 with the use of machine learning methods at the forefront of such approaches (e.g. [73], [74]).
 1588 Most fast simulation approaches generally are based on parametrizations of fully simulated
 1589 events, but fall into two paradigms - a “by hand” simulation, which focuses on the modeling
 1590 of individual detector effects, or a fully parametrized simulation, in which a generative model
 1591 (e.g. a Generative Adversarial Network or Variational Autoencoder) is trained to directly
 1592 reproduce the input events. Both approaches can be extremely powerful, but each suffer from
 1593 certain drawbacks. The “by hand” approach offers the advantage of direct encoding of expert
 1594 knowledge – if an effect needs to be modeled, a new parametrization is introduced. However,
 1595 by the same token, it requires dedicated parametrizations for each effect. Fully parametrizing
 1596 the simulation with a generative model offloads this burden onto the network itself. However,

1597 by doing so, the ability to use expert knowledge is diminished – the network is required to
1598 learn all relevant effects.

1599 The method presented here represents an effort to step towards a hybrid between these two
1600 approaches, leveraging the power of machine learning techniques for individual parametriza-
1601 tions within the by hand framework. Such hybrid solutions have the potential to be extremely
1602 powerful, and further work on the development of these solutions is an interesting direction
1603 of future study.

1604

Chapter 5

1605

RECONSTRUCTION

1606 Chapter 3 discusses how a proton-proton collision may be captured by a physical detector
 1607 and turned into data that may be stored and analyzed. Chapter 4 discusses the simulation
 1608 of this same process. At this most basic level, however, the ATLAS detector is only a
 1609 machine for turning particles into a set of electrical signals, albeit in a very sophisticated,
 1610 physics motivated way. This chapter discusses the step of turning these electrical signals into
 1611 objects which may be identified with the underlying physics processes, and therefore used to
 1612 make statements about what occurred within a given collision event. This process is termed
 1613 *reconstruction*, and we will focus particularly on jets and flavor tagging, as the most relevant
 1614 pieces for this thesis work.

1615 **5.1 Jets**

1616 As discussed in Chapters 3 and 4, the production of particles with color charge from a
 1617 proton-proton interaction is complicated both by parton showering and by confinement: a
 1618 quark produced from a hard scatter is not seen as a quark, but rather, as a spray of particles
 1619 with a variety of hadrons in the final state, which subsequently shower upon interaction with
 1620 the calorimeter in a complicated way.

1621 For hard scatter electrons, photons, or muons on the other hand, the picture is much
 1622 clearer: there is no parton showering, and each has a distinct signature in the detector:
 1623 photons have no tracks and a very localized calorimeter shower, electrons are associated
 1624 with tracks and are similarly localized in the calorimeter, and muons are associated with
 1625 tracks, pass through the calorimeter due to their large mass, and leave signatures in the muon
 1626 spectrometer.

1627 Jets are a tool to deal with the messiness of quarks and gluons. The basic concept is to
 1628 group the multitude of particles produced by hadronization into a single object. Such an
 1629 object then has associated properties, including a four-vector, which may be identified with
 1630 the corresponding initial state particle. In practice a variety of information from the ATLAS
 1631 detector is used for such a reconstruction. The analysis considered in this thesis uses particle
 1632 flow jets [75], which combines information from both the tracker and the calorimeter, where
 1633 the combined objects may be identified with underlying particles. However, jets built from
 1634 clusters of calorimeter cells [76] as well as from charged particle tracks [77] have also been
 1635 used very effectively.

1636 A variety of algorithms are used to associate detector level objects to a given jet. The
 1637 most commonly used in ATLAS is the anti- k_T algorithm [78], which is a successor to the
 1638 k_T algorithm, among others [79], and develops as follows. Both algorithms are sequential
 1639 recombination algorithms, which begin with the smallest distance, d_{ij} between considered
 1640 objects (e.g. particles or intermediate groupings of particles). If d_{ij} is less than a parameter
 1641 d_{iB} (B for “beam”) object i is combined with object j , the distance d_{ij} is recomputed, and
 1642 the process repeats. This proceeds until $d_{ij} \geq d_{iB}$, at which point the jet is “complete” and
 1643 removed from the list of considered objects.

The definitional difference between k_T and anti- k_T is these distance parameters. In general
 form, these are defined as

$$d_{ij} = \min(p_{Ti}^{2p}, p_{Tj}^{2p}) \frac{\Delta R_{ij}^2}{R^2} \quad (5.1)$$

$$d_{iB} = p_{Ti}^{2p} \quad (5.2)$$

1644 where p_{Ti} is the transverse momentum of object i , ΔR_{ij} is the angular distance between
 1645 objects i and j , R is a radius parameter, and p controls the tradeoff between the p_T and
 1646 angular distance terms. For the k_T algorithm $p = 1$; for the anti- k_T algorithm, $p = -1$. This
 1647 is a simple change, but results in significantly different behavior.

The anti- k_T algorithm can be understood as follows: for a single high p_T particle (p_{T1})
 surrounded by a bunch of low p_T particles, the low p_T particles will be clustered with the

high p_T one if

$$d_{1j} = \frac{1}{p_{T1}^2} \frac{\Delta R_{1j}^2}{R^2} < \frac{1}{p_{T1}^2} \quad (5.3)$$

$$\implies \Delta R_{1j} < R. \quad (5.4)$$

1648 Therefore, a single high p_T particle (p_{T1}) surrounded by a bunch of low p_T particles results in
 1649 a perfectly conical jet. This shape may change with the presence of other high momentum
 1650 particles, but the key feature of the dynamics is that the jet shape is determined by high p_T
 1651 objects due to the $\frac{1}{p_T}$ nature of this definition. In contrast, the k_T algorithm results in jets
 1652 influenced by low momentum particles, which results in a less regular shape. This property,
 1653 of regular jet shapes determined by high momentum objects, as well as demonstrated good
 1654 practical performance, makes the anti- k_T algorithm the favored jet algorithm in ATLAS.

1655 Because jets are composed of multiple objects, a useful property of jets is jet *substructure*,
 1656 that is, acknowledging that jets are composite objects, analyzing the structure of a given
 1657 jet to infer physics information. This leads to the use of *subjets*; that is, after running jet
 1658 clustering, often to create a “large-R”, $R = 1.0$ anti- k_T jet, a smaller radius jet clustering
 1659 algorithm is run within the jet. Subjets are often chosen using the k_T algorithm, which again
 1660 is sensitive to lower momentum particles, with $R = 0.2$ or 0.3 . For the boosted version of this
 1661 thesis analysis, such a strategy is used, in which the subjets are *variable radius* and depend
 1662 on the momentum of the (proto)jet in question. Beyond this thesis work, substructure is
 1663 used in a large variety of analyses, with a set of associated variables and tools developed for
 1664 exploiting this structure *TODO: Cite some?*.

1665 5.2 Flavor Tagging

1666 For this this thesis, the physics process being considered is $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$. From the previous
 1667 section, we know that the standard practice is to identify these b quarks (or, rather, the
 1668 resulting B hadrons, due to confinement) with jets – in our case, these b -*jets* are $R=0.4$
 1669 anti- k_T particle flow jets (see Chapters 6 and 7). However, not all jets produced at the LHC
 1670 are from B hadrons; rather, there are a variety of different types of jets corresponding to

1671 different flavors of quarks. These are often classified as light jets (from u , d , or s quarks, or
 1672 gluons) or as other *heavy flavor* jets, e.g. c -jets, involving c quarks. Distinguishing between
 1673 these different categories is a very active area of work in ATLAS, termed *flavor tagging*, with
 1674 much focus on *b-tagging* in particular, that is, the identification of jets from B hadron decays.
 1675 We here briefly describe the techniques used for flavor tagging in ATLAS.

1676 What distinguishes a b -jet from any other jet? This question is fundamental to the
 1677 design of the various b -tagging algorithms, and has two major answers: (1) B hadrons have
 1678 long lifetimes, and (2) B hadrons have large masses. It is most illustrative to compare
 1679 the B hadron properties to a common light meson, e.g. π^0 , the neutral pion, with quark
 1680 content $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(u\bar{u} - d\bar{d})$. B hadrons have lifetimes around 1.5 ps, corresponding to a decay length
 1681 $c\tau \approx 0.45$ mm. In contrast, π^0 has a lifetime of 8.4×10^{-5} ps, which is around 20,000 times
 1682 shorter! Theoretically, this comes from CKM suppression of the b to c transition, which
 1683 dominates the B decay modes. Experimentally, this difference pops up as shown in Figure
 1684 5.1 – light flavor initiated jets decay almost immediately at the proton-proton interaction
 1685 point, whereas b -jets are distinguished by a displaced secondary vertex, corresponding to
 1686 the 5 mm decay length calculated above. This displaced vertex falls short of the detector
 1687 itself, but may be inferred from larger transverse (perpendicular to beam) and longitudinal
 1688 (parallel to beam) impact parameters of the resulting tracks, termed d_0 and z_0 respectively.

1689 Coming to the mass, B mesons have masses of around 5.2 GeV, whereas the π^0 mass
 1690 is around 0.134 GeV, (around 40 times lighter). This higher mass gives access to a larger
 1691 decay phase space, leading to a high multiplicity for b -jets (average of 5 charged particles per
 1692 decay).

1693 One final distinguishing feature of B hadrons is their *fragmentation function*, a function
 1694 describing the production of an observed final state. For B hadrons, this is particularly
 1695 “hard”, with the B hadrons themselves contributing to an average of around 75 % of the b -jet
 1696 energy. Thus, the identification of b -jets with B hadrons is, in some sense, descriptive.

1697 We have contrasted b -jets and light jets, demonstrating that there are several handles
 1698 available for making this distinction. c -jets are slightly more similar to b -jets, but the same

1699 handles still apply – c -hadron lifetimes are between 0.5 and 1 ps, a factor of 2 smaller than B
1700 hadrons. Their mass is around 1.9 GeV, 2 to 3 times smaller than B hadrons, and c -hadrons
1701 contribute to an average of around 55 % of c -jet energy. Therefore, while the gap is slightly
1702 smaller, a distinction may still be made.

1703 The ATLAS flavor tagging framework [81] relies on developing a suite of “low-level”
1704 taggers, which use a variety of information about tracks and vertices as inputs. The output
1705 of these lower level taggers are then fed into a higher level tagger, which aggregates these
1706 results into a high level discriminant. Each of these taggers is described below.

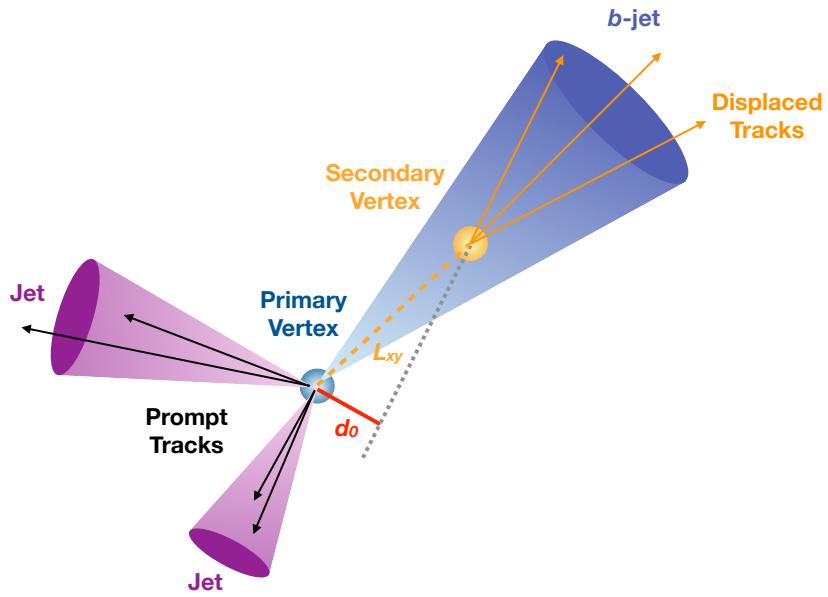


Figure 5.1: Illustration of an interaction producing two light jets and one b -jet in the transverse plane. While the light jets decay “promptly”, coinciding with the primary vertex of the proton-proton interaction, the longer lifetime of B hadrons leads to a secondary decay vertex, displaced from the primary vertex by length L_{xy} . This is typically a few mm, and therefore is not directly visible in the detector, but leads to a large transverse impact parameter, d_0 , for the resulting tracks. [80]

1707 5.2.1 IP2D/3D

1708 IP2D and IP3D are taggers based on the large track impact parameter (IP) nature of B
 1709 hadron decays. Both are based on histogram templates derived from Monte Carlo simulation,
 1710 which are used as probability density functions to construct log-likelihood discriminants.
 1711 IP2D incorporates just the transverse impact parameter information using 1D histogram
 1712 templates, whereas IP3D uses both transverse and longitudinal impact parameters in a 2D
 1713 template, which accounts for correlations. Importantly, these are *signed* impact parameters,
 1714 with sign based on the angle between the impact parameter and the considered jet – positive
 1715 impact parameters are consistent with a track extrapolation in front of the jet (angle between
 1716 impact parameter line and jet $< 90^\circ$), and therefore more consistent with tracks originating
 1717 from a displaced decay.

1718 Rather than using the impact parameters directly, an impact parameter *significance*
 1719 is used which incorporates an uncertainty on the impact parameter – tracks with a lower
 1720 uncertainty but the same impact parameter will contribute more in the calculation. This
 1721 signed significance is what is used to sample from the PDF templates, with the resulting
 1722 discriminants the sum of probability ratios between given jet hypotheses over tracks associated
 1723 to a given jet, namely $\sum_{i=1}^N \log \frac{p_b}{p_{light}}$ between b -jet and light jet hypotheses, where p_b and
 1724 p_{light} are the per-track probabilities. Similar discriminants are defined between b - and c -jets
 1725 and c and light jets. *TODO: show distributions?*

1726 5.2.2 SV1

1727 SV1 is an algorithm which aims to find a secondary vertex (SV) in a given jet. Operating
 1728 on all vertices associated with a considered jet, the algorithm discards tracks based on a
 1729 variety of cleaning requirements. It then proceeds to first construct all two-track vertices,
 1730 and then iterates over all the tracks involved in these two track vertices to try to fit a single
 1731 secondary vertex, which would then be identified with the secondary vertex from the b or c
 1732 hadron decay. This fit proceeds by evaluating a χ^2 for the association of a track and vertex,

1733 removing the track with the largest χ^2 , and iterating until the χ^2 is acceptable and the vertex
1734 has an invariant mass of less than 6 GeV (for consistency with b or c hadron decay).

1735 A variety of discriminating variables may then be constructed, including (1) invariant
1736 mass of the secondary vertex, (2) number of tracks associated with the secondary vertex, (3)
1737 number of two-track vertices, (4) energy fraction of the tracks associated to the secondary
1738 vertex (relative to all of the tracks associated to the jet), and various metrics associated with
1739 the secondary vertex position and decay length, including (5) transverse distance between the
1740 primary and secondary vertex, (6) distance between the primary and secondary vertex (7)
1741 distance between the primary and secondary vertex divided by its uncertainty, and (8) ΔR
1742 between the jet axis and the direction of the secondary vertex relative to the primary vertex.

1743 While all eight of these variables are used as inputs to the higher level taggers, the
1744 number of two-track vertices, the vertex mass, and the vertex energy fraction are additionally
1745 used with 3D histogram templates to evaluate flavor tagging performance by constructing
1746 log-likelihood discriminants, similar to the procedure for IP2D/3D.

1747 5.2.3 *JetFitter*

1748 Rather than focusing on a particular aspect of the B hadron or D hadron decay topology
1749 (e.g impact parameter or secondary vertex), the third low level tagger, JETFITTER [82],
1750 tries to reconstruct the full decay chain, including all involved vertices. This is structured
1751 around a Kalman filter formalism [83], and has the strong underlying assumption that all
1752 tracks which stem from B and D hadron decay must intersect a common flight path. This
1753 assumption provides significant constraints, allowing for the reconstruction of vertices from
1754 even a single track, reducing the number of degrees of freedom in the fit, and allowing the
1755 use of “downstream” information, e.g., compatibility of tracks with a $B \rightarrow D$ -like decay.
1756 The constructed topology, including primary vertex location and B -hadron flight path, is
1757 iteratively updated over tracks associated to a given jet, and a variety of discriminating
1758 variables related to the resulting topology and reconstructed decay are used as inputs to the
1759 high level taggers.

1760 *5.2.4 RNNIP*

1761 The IP2D and IP3D algorithms rely on per-track probabilities, and the final discriminating
 1762 variables (and inputs to the higher level taggers) are sums (products) over these independently
 1763 considered quantities. In practice, however, the tracks are not independent – this is merely a
 1764 simplifying assumption to allow for the use of a binned likelihood, as treatment of all of the
 1765 interdependencies in such a framework quickly becomes intractable. To address this issue, a
 1766 recurrent neural network-based algorithm, RNNIP [84], is used, which takes as input a variety
 1767 of per-track variables, including the signed impact parameter significances (as in IP3D) as
 1768 well as track momentum fraction relative to the jet and ΔR between the track and the jet.
 1769 RNNs are sequence-based, and vectors of input variables corresponding to tracks for a given
 1770 jet are ordered by magnitude of transverse impact parameter significance and then passed
 1771 to the network, which outputs class probabilities corresponding to b-jet, c-jet, light-jet, and
 1772 τ -jet hypotheses. Such a procedure allows the network to learn interdependencies between
 1773 tracks, improving performance.

1774 *5.2.5 MV2 and DL1*

1775 Outputs from the above taggers are combined into high level taggers to aggregate all of the
 1776 information and improve discriminating power relative to the respective individual taggers as,
 1777 as shown in Figure 5.2. These high level taggers are primarily in two forms: MV2, which
 1778 uses a Boosted Decision Tree (BDT) for this aggregation, and DL1, which uses a deep neural
 1779 network. For the baseline versions of these taggers, only inputs from IP2D, IP3D, SV1, and
 1780 JetFitter are used. The tagger used for this thesis analysis, DL1r, additionally incorporates
 1781 RNNIP, demonstrating improved performance over the baseline DL1, as shown in Figure 5.3.
 1782 All high level taggers also include jet p_T and $|\eta|$.

DL1 offers a variety of improvements over MV2. Rather than a single discriminant output, as with MV2, DL1 has a multidimensional output, corresponding to probabilities for a jet to be a *b*-jet, *c*-jet, or light jet. This allows the trained network to be used for both *b*- and *c*-jet

tagging. The final discriminant for b -tagging with DL1 correspondingly takes the form

$$D_{\text{DL1}} = \ln \left(\frac{p_b}{f_c \cdot p_c + (1 - f_c) \cdot p_{\text{light}}} \right) \quad (5.5)$$

where p_b , p_c , and p_{light} are the output b , c , and light jet probabilities, and f_c corresponds to an effective c -jet fraction, which may be tuned to optimize performance.

DL1 further includes an additional set of JETFITTER input variables relative to MV2 which correspond to c -tagging – notably properties of secondary and tertiary vertices, as would be seen in a $B \rightarrow D$ decay chain.

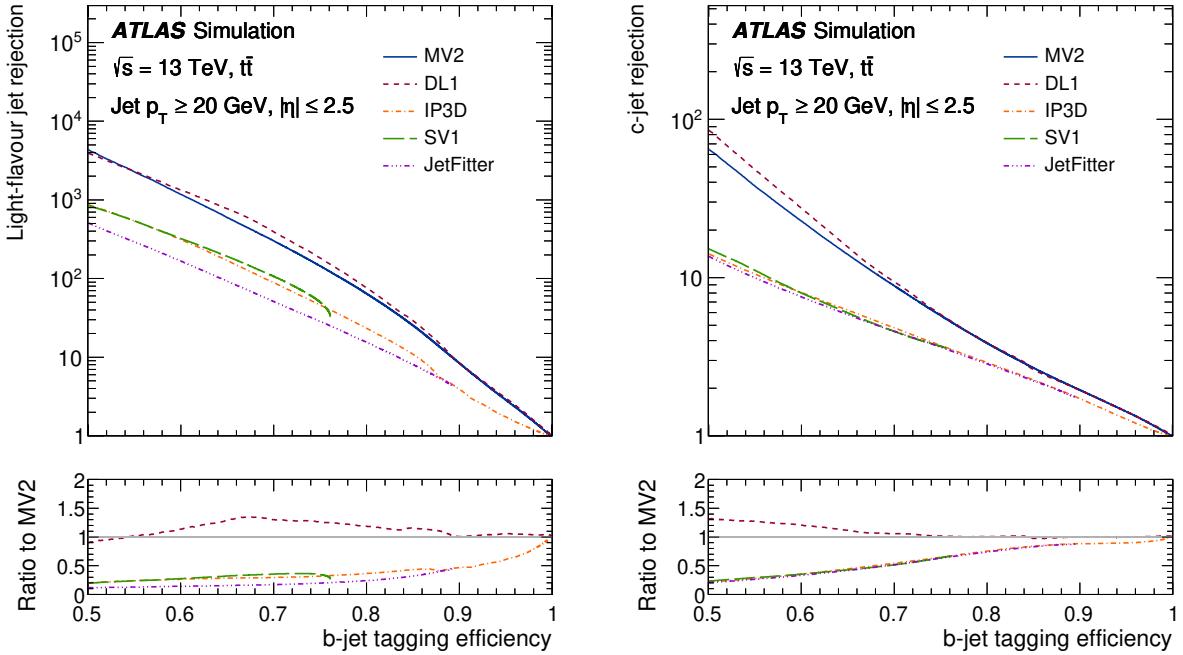


Figure 5.2: Performance of the various low and high level flavor tagging algorithms in $t\bar{t}$ simulation, demonstrating the tradeoff between b -jet efficiency and light and c -jet rejection. The high level taggers demonstrate significantly better performance than any of the individual low level taggers, with DL1 offering slight improvements over MV2 due to the inclusion of additional input variables.

Figure 5.2 shows a comparison of the performance of the various taggers. The b -tagging performance of DL1 and MV2 is found to be similar, with some improvements in light jet and c -jet rejection from the additional variables used in DL1. The performance of these high level taggers additionally is seen to be significantly better than any of the individual low level ones, even in regimes where only a single low level tagger is relevant (such as high b -tagging efficiencies, where SV1 and JETFITTER are limited by selections on tracks entering the respective algorithms).

The inclusion of RNNIP offers a significant improvement on top of baseline DL1, as shown in Figure 5.3, strongly motivating the choice of DL1r for this thesis.

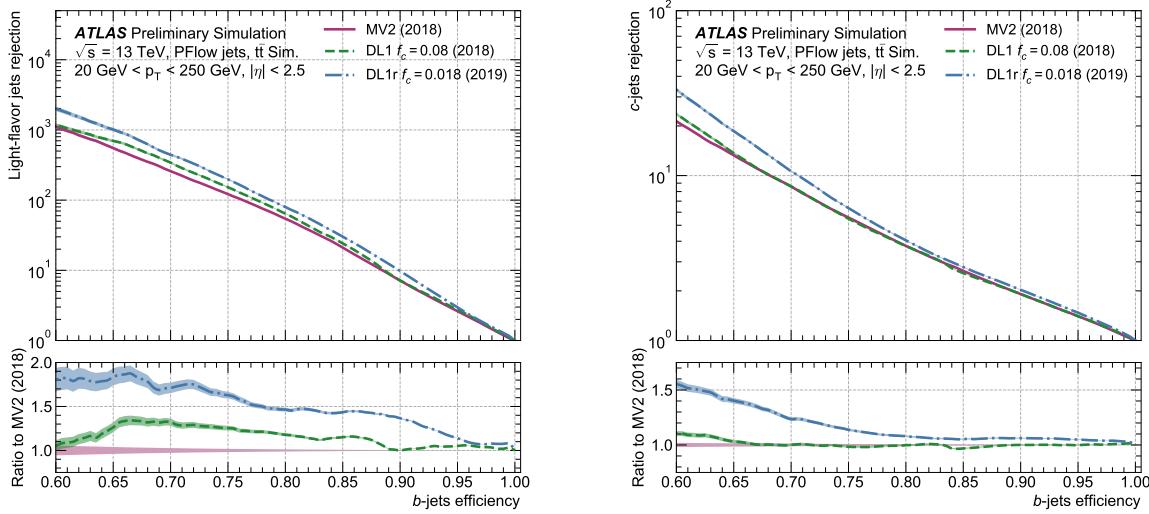


Figure 5.3: Performance of the MV2, DL1, and DL1r algorithms in $t\bar{t}$ simulation, demonstrating the tradeoff between b -jet efficiency and light and c -jet rejection. f_c controls the importance of c -jet rejection in the discriminating variable, and values shown have been optimized separately for each DL1 configuration. DL1r demonstrates a significant improvement in both light and c jet rejection over MV2 and DL1. [85]

1797 5.2.6 *Some Practical Notes*

1798 The b -tagging metrics presented in Figures 5.2 and 5.3 correspond to evaluating a tradeoff
1799 between b -jet efficiency and light jet and c -jet rejection. In this case, b -jet efficiency is defined
1800 such that, e.g. for a 77 % efficiency, 77 % of the real b -jets will be tagged as such. Somewhat
1801 counterintuitively, this means that a lower b -jet efficiency corresponds to a more aggressive
1802 (“tighter”) selection on the discriminating variable, while a higher b -jet efficiency corresponds
1803 to a less aggressive (“looser”) cut (100 % efficiency means no cut). Light and c jet efficiencies
1804 are defined similarly, with rejection defined as 1/ the corresponding efficiency.

1805 In ATLAS, the respective b -tagging efficiencies are used to define various b -tagging working
1806 points. The working point used for the nominal b -jet identification in this thesis is 77 % with
1807 DL1r. A loosened (less aggressive) selection at the 85 % working point is additionally used.
1808 See Chapter 7 for further details.

1809

Chapter 6

1810

SETTING UP THE $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ ANALYSIS

1811 The following chapters present two complementary searches for pair production of Higgs
 1812 bosons in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ final state. Such searches are separated based on the signal models being
 1813 considered: resonant production, in which a new spin-0 or spin-2 particle is produced and
 1814 decays to two Standard Model Higgs bosons, and non-resonant production, which is sensitive
 1815 to the value of the Higgs self-coupling λ_{HHH} . Further information on the theory behind both
 1816 channels can be found in Chapter 2.

1817 ATLAS has performed a variety of searches for both resonant and non-resonant HH in
 1818 complementary decay channels, notably for early Run 2 in the $b\bar{b} W^+ W^-$ [86], $b\bar{b}\tau^+\tau^-$ [87],
 1819 $W^+ W^- W^+ W^-$ [88], $b\bar{b}\gamma\gamma$ [89], and $W^+ W^- \gamma\gamma$ [90] final states, which were combined along
 1820 with $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ in [26]. ATLAS has also released a variety of full Run 2 results, including boosted
 1821 $b\bar{b}\tau^+\tau^-$ [91], VBF $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ [22], $b\bar{b}\ell\nu\ell\nu$ [92], and $b\bar{b}\gamma\gamma$ [93].

1822 CMS has also performed searches for production of Higgs boson pairs in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ final
 1823 state (among others) for early Run 2 [94] and full Run 2 [95]. A combination of CMS searches
 1824 in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$, $b\bar{b}\tau^+\tau^-$, $b\bar{b}\gamma\gamma$, and $b\bar{b}VV$ channels was performed for early Run 2 in [96].

1825 While the resonant and non-resonant searches presented here face many similar challenges
 1826 and proceed (in broad strokes) in a very similar manner, separate optimizations are performed
 1827 to maximize the respective sensitivities for these two very different sets of signal hypotheses.
 1828 More particularly, resonant signal hypotheses are (1) very peaked in values of the mass of the
 1829 HH candidate system near the value of the resonance mass considered and (2) considered
 1830 across a very broad range of signal mass hypotheses. The resonant searches are therefore split
 1831 into resolved and boosted topologies based on Lorentz boost of the decay products, with the
 1832 resolved channel as one of the primary focuses of this thesis. Further, several analysis design

1833 decisions are made to allow for sensitivity to a broad range of masses – in particular, though
 1834 sensitivity is limited at lower values of m_{HH} relative to other channels (see, e.g. Chapter 11)
 1835 due to the challenging background, retaining and properly reconstructing these low mass
 1836 events allows the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel to retain sensitivity as low as the kinematic threshold at
 1837 250 GeV.

1838 In contrast, non-resonant signal hypotheses are quite broad in m_{HH} , and have a much
 1839 more limited mass range, with Standard Model production peaking near 400 GeV, and the
 1840 majority of the analysis sensitivity able to be captured with a resolved topology. Even for
 1841 Beyond the Standard Model signal hypotheses, which may have more events at low m_{HH} ,
 1842 the non-resonant nature of the production allows the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel to retain sensitivity while
 1843 discarding much of the challenging low mass background. Such freedom allows for decisions
 1844 which focus on improved background modeling for the middle to upper HH mass regime,
 1845 resulting in improved modeling and smaller uncertainties than would be obtained with a
 1846 more generic approach.

1847 Both searches are presented in the following, with emphasis on particular motivations for,
 1848 and consequences of, the various design decisions involved for each respective set of signal
 1849 hypotheses. A comparison of representative signals for both the resonant and non-resonant
 1850 analyses is shown in Figure 6.1.

1851 The analyses improve upon previous work [2] in several notable ways. The resonant
 1852 search leverages a Boosted Decision Tree (BDT) based algorithm for the reconstruction of
 1853 the HH system from the jets considered for the analysis, offering an improved efficiency
 1854 of that reconstruction over a broad mass spectrum. The non-resonant adopts a different
 1855 approach, with a simplified algorithm based on the minimum angular distance (ΔR) between
 1856 jets in a reconstructed Higgs candidate. Such an approach very efficiently discards low mass
 1857 background events, resulting in an easier to estimate background with reduced systematic
 1858 uncertainties.

1859 A particular contribution of this thesis is the background estimation, which uses a novel,
 1860 neural network based approach to perform a data-driven estimation of the background, which

is dominated by QCD processes, for which a sufficient simulation is not available. This new approach offers improved modeling over previous methods, as well as the ability to model correlations between observables. While all aspects of the analysis of course contribute to the final result, the author of this thesis wishes to emphasize that the background estimate, with the corresponding uncertainties and all other associated decisions, really is the core of the $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ analysis – the development of this procedure, and all associated decisions, is similarly the core of this thesis work.

This analysis also benefits from improvements to ATLAS jet reconstruction and calibration, and flavor tagging [81]. In particular, this analysis benefits from the introduction of particle flow jets [75]. These make use of tracking information to supplement calorimeter energy deposits, improving the angular and transverse momentum resolution of jets by better measuring these quantities for charged particles in those jets.

The analysis also benefits from the new DL1r ATLAS flavor tagging algorithm. Whereas the flavor tagging algorithm used in the previous analysis (MV2) used a boosted decision tree (BDT) to combine the output of various low level algorithms, DL1r (and the baseline DL1 algorithm) uses a deep neural network to do this combination. In addition to the low level algorithms used as inputs to MV2, DL1 includes a variety of additional variables used for c -tagging. DL1r further incorporates RNNIP, a recurrent neural network designed to identify b -jets using the impact parameters, kinematics, and quality information of the tracks in the jets, while also taking into account the correlations between the track features.

The overall analysis sensitivity further benefits from a factor of ~ 4.6 increase in integrated luminosity.

6.1 Data and Monte Carlo Simulation

Both the resonant and non-resonant searches are performed on the full ATLAS Run 2 dataset, consisting of $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV proton-proton collision data taken from 2016 to 2018 inclusive. Data taken in 2015 is not used due to a lack of trigger jet matching information and b -jet

¹⁸⁸⁷ trigger scale factors¹. The integrated luminosity collected and usable in this analysis² was:

¹⁸⁸⁸ • 24.6 fb^{-1} in 2016

¹⁸⁸⁹ • 43.65 fb^{-1} in 2017

¹⁸⁹⁰ • 57.7 fb^{-1} in 2018

¹⁸⁹¹ This gives a total integrated luminosity of 126 fb^{-1} . This is lower than the 139 fb^{-1} ATLAS
¹⁸⁹² collected during Run 2 [98] due to the inefficiency described in footnote 2 as well as the
¹⁸⁹³ 3.2 fb^{-1} of 2015 data which is unused due to the trigger scale factor issue mentioned above.

¹⁸⁹⁴ In this analysis, Monte Carlo samples are used purely for modelling signal processes. The
¹⁸⁹⁵ background is strongly dominated by events produced by QCD multijet processes, which are
¹⁸⁹⁶ difficult to correctly model in simulation due to the complexity of the interactions involved
¹⁸⁹⁷ (including, e.g. non-perturbative effects), as well as the harsh requirement of four b -tagged
¹⁸⁹⁸ jets, which makes it difficult to collect sufficient Monte Carlo statistics. This necessitates the
¹⁸⁹⁹ use of a data-driven background modeling technique, which is described in Chapter 8.

¹⁹⁰⁰ The scalar resonance signal model is simulated at leading order in α_s using MADGRAPH
¹⁹⁰¹ [57]. Hadronization and parton showering are done using HERWIG 7 [58][59] with EVTGEN [61],
¹⁹⁰² and the nominal PDF is NNPDF 2.3 LO. In practice this is implemented as a two Higgs
¹⁹⁰³ doublet model where the new neutral scalar is produced through gluon fusion and required
¹⁹⁰⁴ to decay to a pair of SM Higgs bosons. The heavy scalar is assigned a width much smaller
¹⁹⁰⁵ than detector resolution, and the other 2HDM particles do not enter the calculation.

¹⁹⁰⁶ Scalar samples are produced at resonance masses between 251 and 900 GeV and the
¹⁹⁰⁷ detector simulation is done using AtlFast-II [66]. In addition the samples at 400 GeV and
¹⁹⁰⁸ 900 GeV are also fully simulated to verify that the use of AtlFast-II is acceptable. For higher

¹These trigger scale factors account for differences in the performance of the b -tagging algorithms between simulation and data, with the jet matching providing a correspondence between the jets in the trigger decision and the jets in the offline analysis

²approximately 9 fb^{-1} of data was collected but could not be used in this analysis due to an inefficiency in the b -jet triggers at the start of 2016 [97]

1909 masses, as well as for the boosted analysis, samples are produced between 1000 and 5000 GeV,
1910 and the detector is fully simulated. As discussed in Chapter 4, an outstanding issue with
1911 AtlFast-II is the modeling of jet substructure. While such variables are not used for the
1912 resolved analysis, the boosted analysis begins at 900 GeV, motivating the different detector
1913 simulation in these two regimes.

1914 The spin-2 resonance signal model is also simulated at LO in α_s using MADGRAPH.
1915 Hadronization and parton showering are done using PYTHIA 8 [60] with EVTGEN, and the
1916 nominal PDF is NNPDF 2.3 LO. In practice this is implemented as a Randall-Sundrum
1917 graviton with $c = 1.0$.

1918 Spin-2 resonance samples are produced at masses between 251 and 5000 GeV, and these
1919 samples are all produced with full detector simulation.

1920 For the non-resonant search, samples are produced at values of $\kappa_\lambda = 1.0$ and 10.0, and are
1921 simulated using POWHEG Box v2 generator [54–56] at next-to-leading order (NLO), with full
1922 NLO corrections with finite top mass, using the PDF4LHC [99] parton distribution function
1923 (PDF) set. Parton showers and hadronization are simulated with PYTHIA 8.

1924 6.2 Triggers

1925 To maximize analysis sensitivity, a combination of multi- b -jet triggers is used. Due to the use
1926 of events with two b -tagged jets in the background estimate, such triggers have a maximum
1927 requirement of two b -tagged jets. For the resonant analysis, a combination of triggers of
1928 various topologies is used, namely

- 1929 • 2 b + HT, which requires two b -tagged jets and a minimum value of H_T , defined to
1930 be the scalar sum of p_T across all jets in the event.
- 1931 • 2 b + 2j, which requires two b -tagged jets and two other jets matching some kinematic
1932 requirements
- 1933 • 2 b + 1j, which requires two b -tagged jets and one other jet matching some kinematic

1934 requirements

- 1935 • 1b, which requires one b -tagged jet

1936 Due to minimal contributions from some of these triggers for the Standard Model non-resonant
1937 signal, a simplified strategy relying entirely on $2b + 1j$ and $2b + 2j$ triggers is used for the
1938 non-resonant search.

1939 While the use of multiple triggers is beneficial for analysis sensitivity, it comes with some
1940 complications. Namely, a set of scale factors must be assigned to simulated events to account
1941 for differences in trigger efficiency between real and simulated events. Because these scale
1942 factors may differ between triggers, the use of multiple triggers becomes complicated: an event
1943 may pass more than one trigger, while trigger scale factors are only provided for individual
1944 triggers.

1945 To simplify this calculation, a set of hierarchical offline selections is applied, closely
1946 mimicking the trigger selection. Based on these selections, events are sorted into categories
1947 (*trigger buckets*), after which the decision of a *single trigger* is checked. Note that the set
1948 of events which enter the analysis via this trigger category selection must pass both the
1949 offline selection as well as the corresponding online trigger selection. Particularly for the
1950 $2b$ categories, this means that the explicit requirement of two b -tagged jets is left to the
1951 trigger decision itself, with the categorization designed around the other considered objects
1952 (non-tagged jets or H_T).

1953 The resonant search applies such categorization in the following way, with selections
1954 considered in order:

- 1955 1. If the leading jet is b -tagged with $p_T > 325 \text{ GeV}$, the event is in the $1b$ trigger category.
- 1956 2. Otherwise, if the leading jet is not b -tagged, but has $p_T > 168.75 \text{ GeV}$, the event is in
1957 the $2b + 1j$ trigger category.

¹⁹⁵⁸ 3. If neither of the first two selections pass, if the scalar sum of jet p_T s, $H_T > 900 \text{ GeV}$,
¹⁹⁵⁹ the event falls into the $2b + HT$ trigger category.

¹⁹⁶⁰ 4. Events that do not pass any of the above offline selections are in the $2b + 2j$ trigger
¹⁹⁶¹ category.

¹⁹⁶² Corresponding triggers are then checked in each category, and the final set of events consists
¹⁹⁶³ of those events that pass the trigger decision in their respective categories.

¹⁹⁶⁴ For the resonant search, the $2b + 1j$ and $2b + 2j$ triggers are the dominant categories,
¹⁹⁶⁵ containing roughly 26 % and 49 % of spin-2 events, evaluated on MC16d samples with
¹⁹⁶⁶ resonance masses between 300 and 1200 GeV. Notably, the $1b$ trigger efficiency is largest at
¹⁹⁶⁷ high ($> 1 \text{ TeV}$) resonance masses.

¹⁹⁶⁸ For the non-resonant search, it was noted that the $1b$ trigger has minimal contribution,
¹⁹⁶⁹ while the $2b + HT$ events are largely captured by the $2b + 2j$ trigger. Therefore, a simplified
¹⁹⁷⁰ scheme is considered, with selections:

¹⁹⁷¹ 1. If the 1st leading jet has $p_T > 170 \text{ GeV}$ and the 3rd leading jet has $p_T > 70 \text{ GeV}$, the
¹⁹⁷² event is in the $2b + 1j$ trigger category.

¹⁹⁷³ 2. Otherwise, the event is in the $2b + 2j$ trigger category.

¹⁹⁷⁴ The additional cut (on the 3rd leading jet) added here for the $2b + 1j$ category was found
¹⁹⁷⁵ to enhance the overall signal yield in the two bucket strategy relative to the single cut on
¹⁹⁷⁶ leading jet p_T used for the same category in the resonant strategy.

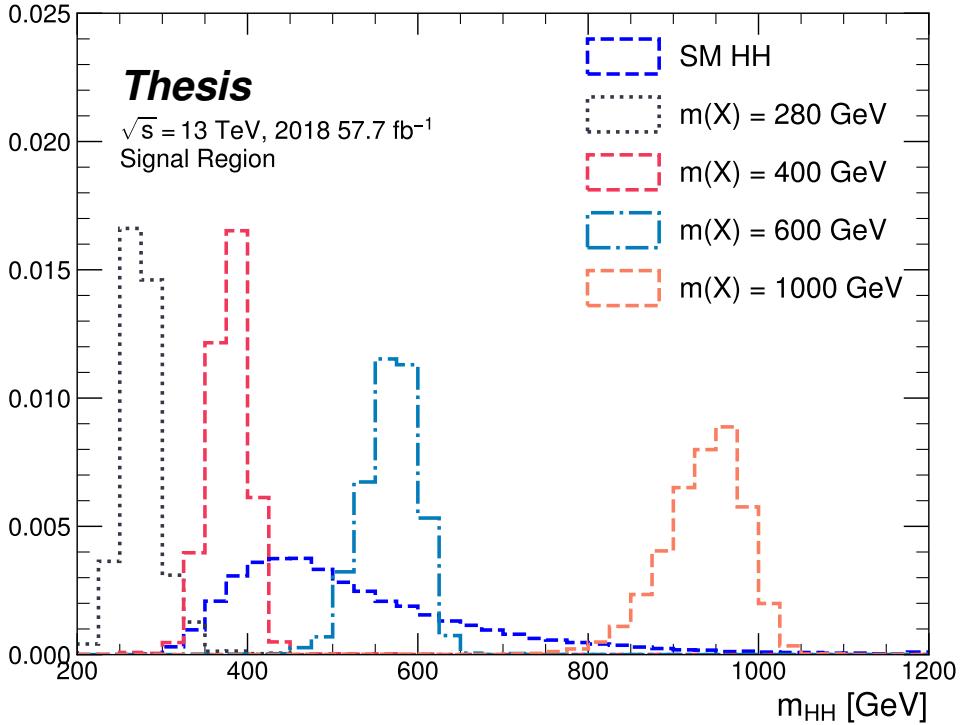


Figure 6.1: Example distributions in invariant mass of the reconstructed di-Higgs system for a variety of spin-0 resonances ($m(X)$) compared to the Standard Model non-resonant signal (SM HH). Both are presented in their respective signal regions, after all corresponding analysis selections. The resonant signals are sharply peaked at values near their respective resonance masses, whereas the non-resonant signal is much more broad. The different character of these different signals informs the analysis design.

1977

Chapter 7

1978

ANALYSIS SELECTION

1979 7.1 Analysis Selection

1980 After the trigger selections of Section 6.2, a variety of selections on the analysis objects are
 1981 made, with the goal of (1) reconstructing a HH -like topology and (2) suppressing contributions
 1982 from background processes.

1983 Both analyses begin with a common pre-selection, requiring at least four $R = 0.4$ anti- k_T
 1984 jets with $|\eta| < 2.5$ and $p_T > 40 \text{ GeV}$. The $|\eta| < 2.5$ requirement is necessary for b -tagging
 1985 due to the coverage of the ATLAS tracking detector (see Chapter 3), while the $p_T > 40 \text{ GeV}$
 1986 requirement is motivated by the trigger thresholds. A low p_T category, which would include
 1987 events failing the analysis selection due to this p_T cut, was considered for the non-resonant
 1988 search, but was found to contribute minimal sensitivity. At least two of the jets passing this
 1989 pre-selection are required to be b -tagged, and additional b -tagging requirements are made to
 1990 define the following regions:

- 1991 • “2 b Region”: require exactly two b -tagged jets, used for background estimation
- 1992 • “4 b Region”: require at least (but possibly more) four b -tagged jets, used as a signal
 1993 region for both resonant and non-resonant searches

1994 The non-resonant analysis additionally defines two 3 b regions:

- 1995 • “3 b +1 loose Region”: require exactly three b -tagged jets which pass the 77 % b-tagging
 1996 working point (nominal) and one additional jet that fails the 77 % b-tagging working
 1997 point but passes the *looser* 85 % b-tagging working point. Used as a signal region for
 1998 the non-resonant search.

- 1999 • “3 b +1 fail Region”: complement of 3 b +1 loose. Require exactly three b -tagged jets
 2000 which pass the 77 % b -tagging working point, but require that none of the remaining jets
 2001 pass the 85 % b -tagging working point. Used as a validation region for the non-resonant
 2002 search.

2003 After these requirements, four jets are chosen, ranked first by b -tagging requirement and then
 2004 by p_T (e.g. for the 2 b region, the jets chosen are the two b -tagged jets and the two highest p_T
 2005 non-tagged jets; for the 4 b region, the jets are the four highest p_T b -tagged jets). To match
 2006 the topology of a $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ event, these four jets are then *paired* into *Higgs candidates*: the
 2007 four jets are split into two sets of two, and each of these pairs is used to define a reconstructed
 2008 object that is a proxy for a Higgs in a HH event. The four-vectors of these reconstructed
 2009 objects may then be used for a variety of selections which check the consistency of the
 2010 reconstructed HH system with the expected HH signal kinematics. Kinematic quantities
 2011 corresponding to each Higgs candidate are denoted with subscripts $H1$ and $H2$ for leading
 2012 and subleading Higgs candidates respectively (e.g. m_{H1} and m_{H2} for the Higgs candidate
 2013 masses).

2014 For four jets there are three possible pairings of jets into Higgs candidates. For signal
 2015 events, a correct pairing can be identified (provided all necessary jets pass pre-selection) using
 2016 the truth information of the Monte Carlo simulation, and such information may be used to
 2017 design/select an appropriate pairing algorithm. This is only part of the story, however. The
 2018 vast majority of the events in data do *not* include a real HH decay (this is a search for a
 2019 reason!), either because the event originates from a background process (e.g. for 4 b events), or
 2020 because the selection is not designed to maximize the signal (e.g. 2 b events). As the pairing
 2021 is part of the selection, it must still be run on such events, such that various algorithms which
 2022 achieve similar performance in terms of pairing efficiency may have vastly different impacts in
 2023 terms of the shape of the background and the biases inherent in the background estimation
 2024 procedure. The interplay between these two facets of the pairing is an important part of the
 2025 choices made for this analysis.

A comparison of different shapes due to three different paring strategies is shown in Figure 7.1. The Boosted Decision Tree (BDT) pairing and min ΔR pairing are used for the analyses presented here, and are described in more detail below. The D_{HH} pairing was used for the early Run 2 searches [2], and is based on minimizing the quantity

$$D_{HH} = \frac{|m_{H1} - \frac{120}{110}m_{H2}|}{\sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{120}{110}\right)^2}}, \quad (7.1)$$

corresponding to the the distance of the reconstructed Higgs candidate masses from a line running from $(0, 0)$ to the center of the signal region, $(120 \text{ GeV}, 110 \text{ GeV})$ in leading and subleading Higgs candidate masses, (m_{H1}, m_{H2}) . Note that while this achieves good pairing efficiency with respect to truth across a broad HH mass range, it significantly sculpts the mass plane (as seen in Figure 7.1), motivating the new approaches considered here.

7.1.1 Resonant Pairing Strategy

For the resonant analysis, a Boosted Decision Tree (BDT) is used for the pairing. The boosted decision tree is given the total separation between the two jets in each of the two pairs (ΔR_1 and ΔR_2), the pseudo-rapidity separation between the two jets in each pair ($\Delta\eta_1$ and $\Delta\eta_2$), and the angular separation between the two jets in each pair in the $x - y$ plane ($\Delta\phi_1$ and $\Delta\phi_2$). The total separations (ΔR_s) are provided in addition to the components in order to avoid requiring the boosted decision tree to reconstruct these variables in order to use them. For these variables, pair 1 is the pair with the highest scalar sum of jet p_{TS} , and pair 2 the other pair.

The boosted decision tree is also parameterized on the di-Higgs mass (m_{HH}) by providing this as an additional feature. Since the boosted decision tree is trained on correct and incorrect pairings in signal events, there will be exactly one correct pairing and two incorrect pairings in the training set for each m_{HH} value present in that set. As a result, this variable cannot, in itself, distinguish a correct pairing from an incorrect pairing, and therefore the

2045 inclusion of this variable simply serves to parameterize the BDT on m_{HH} ¹.

2046 The boosted decision tree was trained on one quarter of the total AFII simulated scalar
 2047 MC statistics, using the Gradient-based One Side Sampling (GOSS) algorithm which allows
 2048 rapid training with very large datasets. A preselection was applied requiring events to have
 2049 four jets with a p_T of at least 35 GeV. Note that this is a looser requirement than the 40 GeV
 2050 used in the analysis selection, and is meant to increase the available statistics for events with
 2051 low m_{HH} and to ensure a better performance as a function of that variable. Events were also
 2052 required to have four distinct jets that could be geometrically matched (to within $\Delta R \leq 0.4$)
 2053 to the b -quarks. The events used to train the BDT were not included when the analysis was
 2054 run on these signal simulations. The boosted decision tree was constructed with the following
 2055 hyperparameters:

```
2056 min_data_in_leaf=50,  

2057 num_leaves=180,  

2058 learning_rate=0.01
```

2059 These hyperparameters were optimized using a Bayesian optimization procedure [100].
 2060 Three fold cross-validation was used to perform this optimization without the need for an
 2061 additional sample, while avoiding over-training on signal events.

2062 7.1.2 Non-resonant Pairing Strategy

2063 For the non-resonant analysis, a simpler pairing algorithm is used, which proceeds as follows:
 2064 in a given event, Higgs candidates for each possible pairing are sorted by the p_T of the vector
 2065 sum of constituent jets. The angular separation, ΔR is computed between jets in the each of
 2066 the leading Higgs candidates, and the pairing with the smallest separation (ΔR_{jj}) is selected.
 2067 This method will be referred to as $\min \Delta R$ in the following.

2068 The primary motivation for the use of this pairing in the non-resonant search is a *smooth*
 2069 *mass plane*: by efficiently discarding low mass events, $\min \Delta R$ removes the background peak

¹That is, the conditions placed on the other variables by the BDT vary with m_{HH} .

2070 present in the resonant search while maintaining good pairing efficiency for the Standard
 2071 Model non-resonant signal. This facilitates a background estimate with small kinematic bias
 2072 – the region in which the background estimate is derived is more similar to the signal region.

2073 Along with discarding low mass background, there is a corresponding loss of low mass
 2074 signal. This predominantly impacts points away from the Standard Model (see Figure 7.2),
 2075 but, because the $4b$ channel has the strongest contribution near the Standard Model and
 2076 because of the large low mass background present with other pairing methods, the impact on
 2077 analysis sensitivity is mitigated. The min ΔR pairing is thus adopted for the non-resonant
 2078 search.

2079 7.1.3 Pairing Efficiencies

2080 Though this is implicit in the above descriptions, an explicit examination of the pairing
 2081 efficiencies with respect to truth for the respective signal samples has been performed for both
 2082 min ΔR and the BDT pairing. Conceptually, for high invariant mass of the HH system, each
 2083 Higgs has a high p_T and the the b -jets corresponding to a given Higgs are more collimated.
 2084 In this case, angular information such as that exploited both directly by min ΔR and as
 2085 inputs in the BDT pairing may be expected to be a good discriminant for determining the
 2086 HH system. Indeed for resonance masses above 500 GeV, the pairing efficiency for both
 2087 algorithms is close to 100 %.

2088 For lower HH masses, the jets corresponding to a given Higgs are no longer as collimated,
 2089 such that min ΔR is no longer guaranteed to pick up the correct pairing (e.g. in a case when
 2090 the four jets involved are isotropic), and the pairing efficiency steadily gets worse as the HH
 2091 mass decreases. On resonant samples, e.g., the min ΔR efficiency drops below 80 % near
 2092 400 GeV. The additional information exploited by the BDT mitigates this somewhat, though
 2093 there is still a drop in efficiency at lower m_{HH} . Interestingly, the BDT pairing demonstrates
 2094 a rise in pairing efficiency near the threshold of 250 GeV, likely due to the limited kinematic
 2095 phase space for the HH system in this region.

2096 The examination of the pairing efficiency as a function of m_{HH} has a more direct cor-

2097 respondecne for resonant samples, but it of course applies to non-resonant samples as well,
2098 resulting in the behavior shown in Figure 7.2. Note that the above statement that $\min \Delta R$
2099 discards low mass events is a consequence of the reduced pairing efficiency at low mass – the
2100 pairing algorithm itself does not make any cuts, but the mis-reconstruction of low mass signal
2101 results in the reconstruction of Higgs candidates with masses away from 125 GeV, placing
2102 such events outside of the kinematic signal regions defined in Section 7.3.

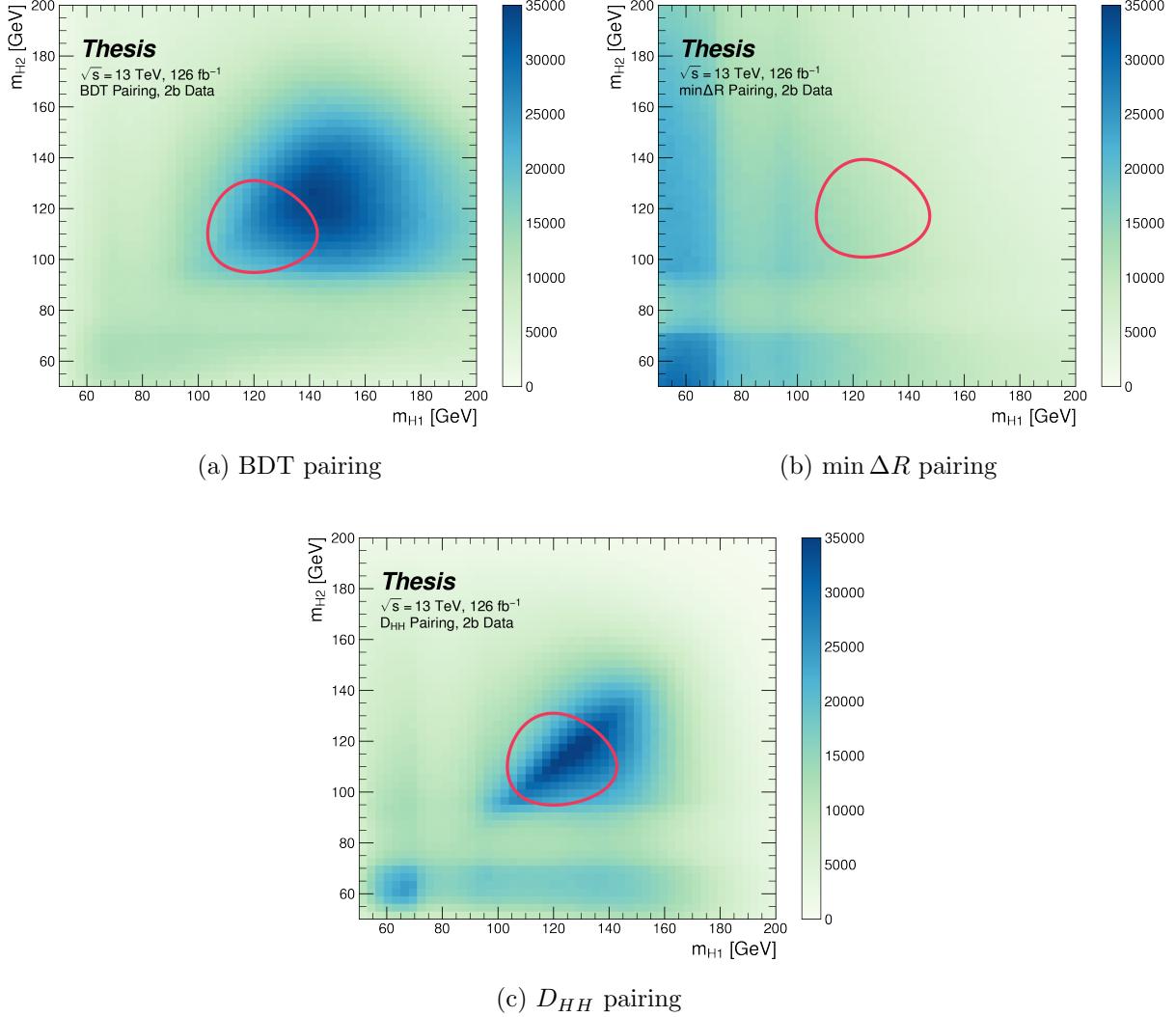


Figure 7.1: Comparison of m_{H1} vs m_{H2} planes for the full Run 2 2b dataset with different pairings, where m_{H1} and m_{H2} are the invariant masses of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates. As evidenced, this choice significantly impacts where events fall in this plane, and therefore which events fall into the various kinematic regions defined in this plane (see Section 7.3). The signal regions for the resonant/early Run 2 analysis are shown for reference for the BDT and D_{HH} pairings, while the the $\min \Delta R$ signal region shifted is shifted slightly up and to the right to match the non-resonant selection. Note that the band structure around 80 GeV in both m_{H1} and m_{H2} is introduced by the top veto described in Section 7.2.

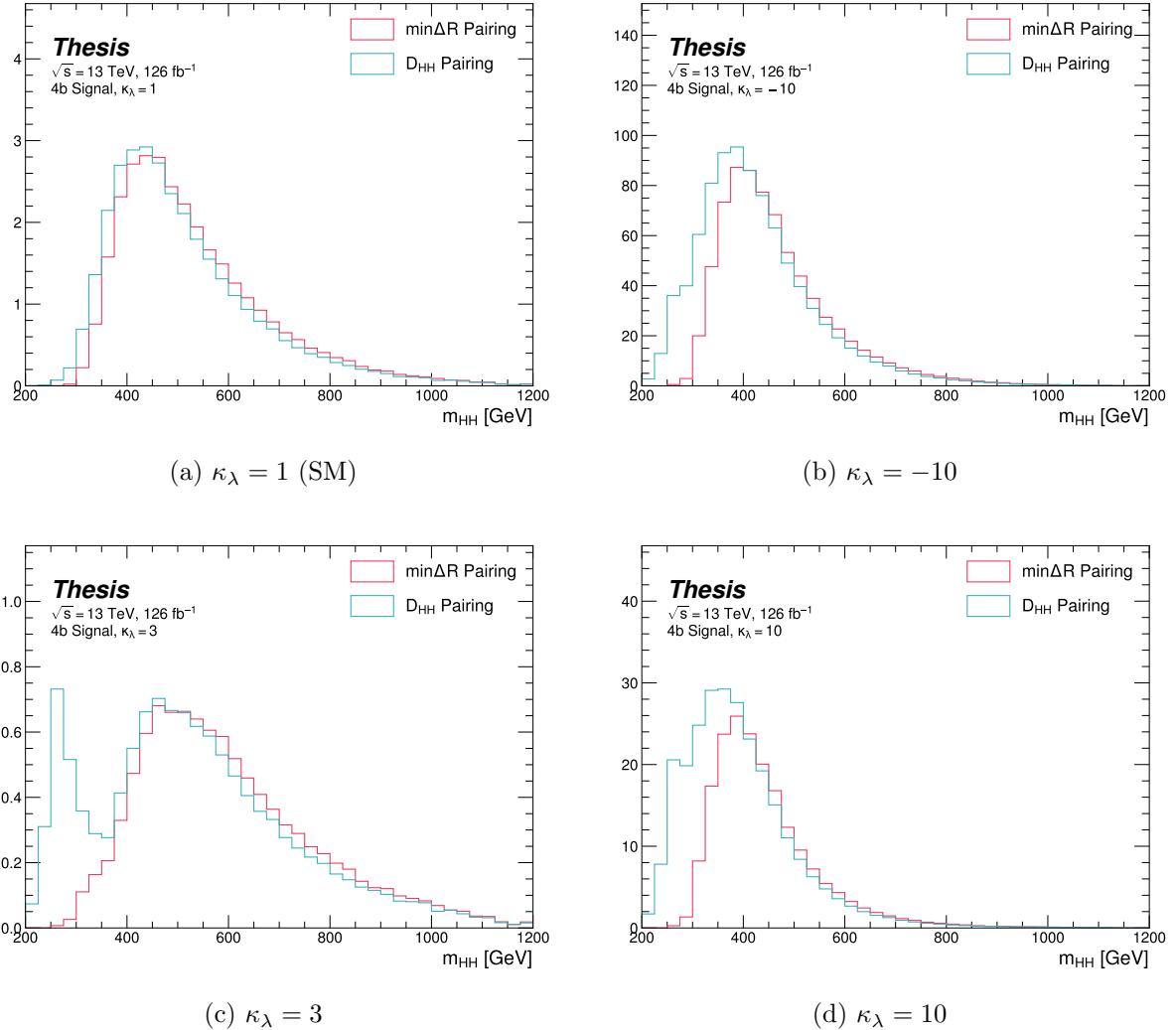


Figure 7.2: Comparison of signal distributions in the respective signal regions for the $\text{min } \Delta R$ and D_{HH} pairing for various values of the Higgs trilinear coupling. The distributions are quite similar at the Standard Model point, but for other variations, $\text{min } \Delta R$ does not pick up the low mass features.

2103 **7.2 Background Reduction and Top Veto**

2104 Choosing a pairing of the four b-tagged jets fully defines the di-Higgs candidate system used
2105 for each event in the remainder of the analysis chain. A requirement of $|\Delta\eta_{HH}| < 1.5$ on this
2106 di-Higgs candidate system mitigates QCD multijet background.

2107 In order to mitigate the hadronic $t\bar{t}$ background, a top veto is then applied, removing
2108 events consistent with a $t \rightarrow b(W \rightarrow q_1\bar{q}_2)$ decay.

2109 The jets in the event are separated into *HC jets* which are the four jets used to build the
2110 Higgs candidates, and *non-*HC jets**, the other jets (passing the p_T and $|\eta|$ requirements) in
2111 the event.

2112 W candidates are built by forming all possible pairs of all jets in each event. With n jets,
2113 there are $\binom{n}{2}$ such pairs. t candidates are then built by pairing each W candidate with each
2114 HC jet (for $4\binom{n}{2}$ combinations). Note that all jets in a t candidate must be distinct (i.e. a
2115 HC jet may not be used both on its own and in a W candidate).

With m_t denoting the invariant mass of the t candidate, and m_W the invariant mass of the W candidate, the quantity

$$X_{Wt} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{m_W - 80.4 \text{ GeV}}{0.1 \cdot m_W}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{m_t - 172.5 \text{ GeV}}{0.1 \cdot m_t}\right)^2} \quad (7.2)$$

2116 is constructed for each combination.

2117 Events are then vetoed if the minimum X_{Wt} over all combinations is less than 1.5.

2118 The same definitions and procedures are used for both the resonant and non-resonant
2119 analyses. However, for the non-resonant search, the top candidates considered for X_{Wt} have
2120 the additional requirement that the jet used for the b is b -tagged. While this is identical to
2121 the resonant analysis by definition for $4b$ events, it does change the set of events considered in
2122 lower tag regions, in particular for the $2b$ events considered in the derivation of the background
2123 estimate. Such a change is found to reduce the impact of background systematics, an effect
2124 that is thought to be due to the shifting of $2b$ events to higher values of X_{Wt} (due to this
2125 more stringent requirement), where, e.g, the Standard Model signal peaks.

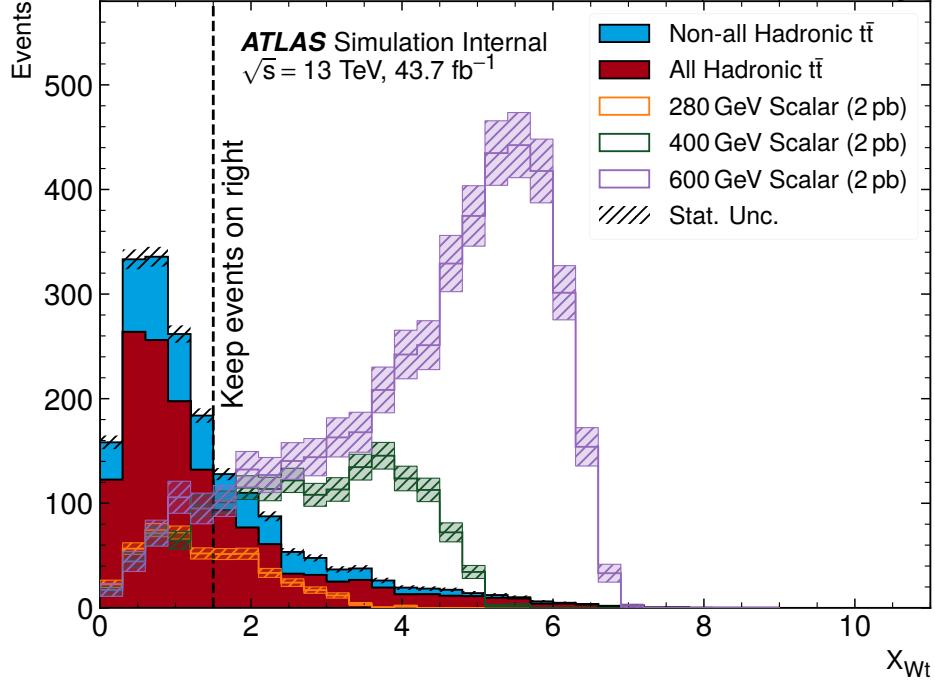


Figure 7.3: **Resonant search:** Illustration of the impact of the top veto on $t\bar{t}$ Monte Carlo for the resonant analysis, with representative scalar signals shown for reference. The cut value used is 1.5, shown in the dashed black, and events below this value are discarded. This top veto clearly removes the bulk of $t\bar{t}$ events, and the value of the cut is chosen to retain analysis sensitivity, particularly for low mass.

2126 The distribution of this variable is shown for $t\bar{t}$ Monte Carlo and representative signal
 2127 samples for the resonant and non-resonant 4 b signal regions in Figures 7.3 and 7.4 respectively,
 2128 with a line at the cut value of 1.5. Individual years are shown, but results are representative
 2129 across years. For the resonant analysis, the value of the cut is constrained by low mass
 2130 resonances, with the value of 1.5 chosen as a compromise between $t\bar{t}$ rejection and retaining
 2131 sensitivity for these signals. For the non-resonant, though e.g., the SM signal peaks at higher
 2132 values, a more aggressive cut on X_{Wt} was found to decrease analysis sensitivity, so the value
 2133 of 1.5 is kept.

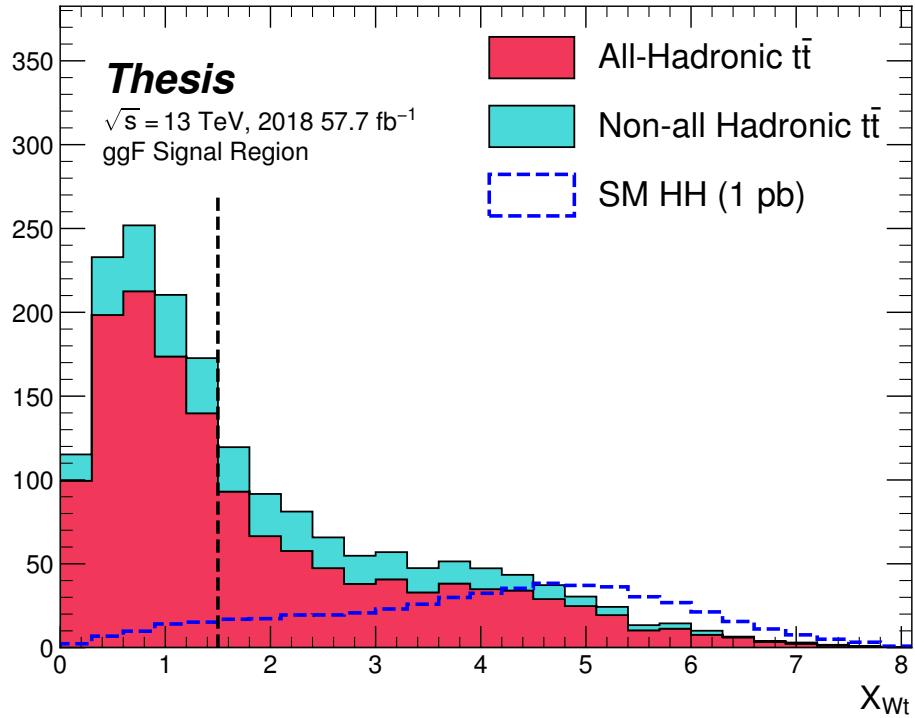


Figure 7.4: **Non-resonant search:** Illustration of the impact of the top veto on $t\bar{t}$ Monte Carlo for the non-resonant analysis, with the Standard Model signal shown for reference. The cut value used is 1.5, shown in the dashed black, and events below this value are discarded. This top veto clearly removes the bulk of $t\bar{t}$ events. While this plot may seem to motivate a more aggressive cut on X_{Wt} , increasing the value of the cut was found to reduce analysis sensitivity.

2134 **7.3 Kinematic Region Definition**

As has been mentioned, an important piece of the analysis is the plane defined by the two Higgs candidate masses (the *Higgs candidate mass plane*). After the selection described above, a signal region is defined by requiring $X_{HH} < 1.6$, where:

$$X_{HH} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{m(H_1) - c_1}{0.1 \cdot m(H_1)}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{m(H_2) - c_2}{0.1 \cdot m(H_2)}\right)^2} \quad (7.3)$$

2135 with $m(H_1)$, $m(H_2)$ the leading and subleading Higgs candidate masses, c_1 and c_2 correspond
2136 to the center of the signal region, and the denominator provides a Higgs candidate mass
2137 dependent resolution of 10 %. For consistency with the HH decay hypothesis, c_1 and c_2
2138 are nominally (125 GeV, 125 GeV). However, these are allowed to vary due to energy loss,
2139 with specific values chosen described below. The selection of these values is one of several
2140 significant differences between the regions defined for the resonant and non-resonant search.
2141 We describe both below.

2142 **7.3.1 Resonant Kinematic Regions**

2143 For the resonant analysis, the signal region is centered at (120 GeV, 110 GeV) to account for
2144 energy loss leading to the Higgs masses being under-reconstructed. Note that leading and
2145 subleading Higgs candidates are defined according to the *scalar sum* of constituent jet p_T .

For the background estimation, two regions are defined which are roughly concentric around the signal region: a *validation region* which consists of those events not in the signal region, but which do pass

$$\sqrt{(m(H_1) - 1.03 \times 120 \text{ GeV})^2 + (m(H_2) - 1.03 \times 110 \text{ GeV})^2} < 30 \text{ GeV} \quad (7.4)$$

and a *control region* which consists of those events not in the signal or validation regions, but which do pass

$$\sqrt{(m(H_1) - 1.05 \times 120 \text{ GeV})^2 + (m(H_2) - 1.05 \times 110 \text{ GeV})^2} < 45 \text{ GeV} \quad (7.5)$$

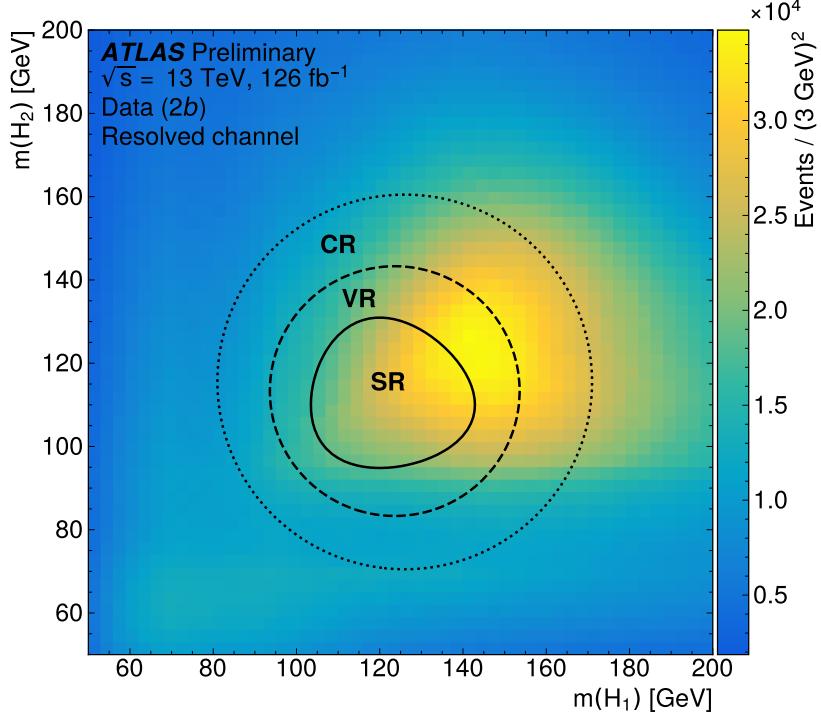


Figure 7.5: Regions used for the resonant search, shown on the $2b$ data mass plane. The outermost region (the “control region”) is used for derivation of the nominal background estimate. The innermost region is the signal region, where the signal extraction fit is performed. The region in between (the “validation region”) is used for the assessment of an uncertainty.

2146 For simplicity, the SR/VR/CR definitions from the early Run 2 paper [2] were chosen for
2147 the resonant analysis, and were found to be close to optimal. These regions are shown in
2148 Figure 7.5.

2149 7.3.2 Non-resonant Kinematic Regions

2150 For the non-resonant analysis the signal region is centered at $(124 \text{ GeV}, 117 \text{ GeV})$, corre-
2151 sponding to the means of *correctly paired* Standard Model signal events. The shape of the
2152 signal region (other than this change of center) was found to remain optimal.

2153 For the non-resonant search, leading and subleading Higgs candidates are defined according
 2154 to the *vector sum* of constituent jet p_T , more closely corresponding to the $1 \rightarrow 2$ decay
 2155 assumption behind the min ΔR pairing algorithm.

2156 Two areas for improvement were identified in the resonant analysis, which will be discussed
 2157 in more detail below: *signal contamination* of the validation region (which impacts the
 2158 uncertainty assessed due to extrapolation) and *large nuisance parameter pulls* for this
 2159 uncertainty, corresponding to a rough assumption that the validation region is closer to the
 2160 signal region in the mass plane, and so offers a better estimate of the signal region. Extensive
 2161 cross-checks were performed for the resonant search, which demonstrated minimal bias due
 2162 to the signal contamination and healthy behavior of the signal extraction fit, despite the
 2163 large pulls. However, these large pulls imply that the nominal estimate may be improved by
 2164 incorporating some of the information entering the definition of the extrapolation uncertainty.
 2165 Further, the resonant search benefits from a set of highly peaked signals, such that the
 2166 smooth nature of the background helps to mitigate signal contamination bias. With the
 2167 broad non-resonant signals, a bias due to signal contamination becomes more of a concern,
 2168 such that addressing this is highly motivated.

A redesign of the control and validation regions is therefore performed for the non-resonant analysis. The outer boundary defined by the shifted resonant control region:

$$\sqrt{(m(H_1) - 1.05 \times 124 \text{ GeV})^2 + (m(H_2) - 1.05 \times 117 \text{ GeV})^2} < 45 \text{ GeV} \quad (7.6)$$

2169 is kept, roughly corresponding to combining the regions used for the resonant analysis. In
 2170 order to assess the variation of the background estimate, two sets of regions are desired, so
 2171 this combined region is split into *quadrants*, that is, divided into four pieces along axes that
 2172 intersect with the signal region center. To avoid kinematic bias, quadrants on opposite sides
 2173 of the signal region are paired, with these pairs corresponding to the non-resonant control
 2174 and validation regions.

2175 The particular orientation of the regions is chosen such that region centers align with the
 2176 leading and subleading Higgs candidate masses, corresponding to a set of axes rotated at

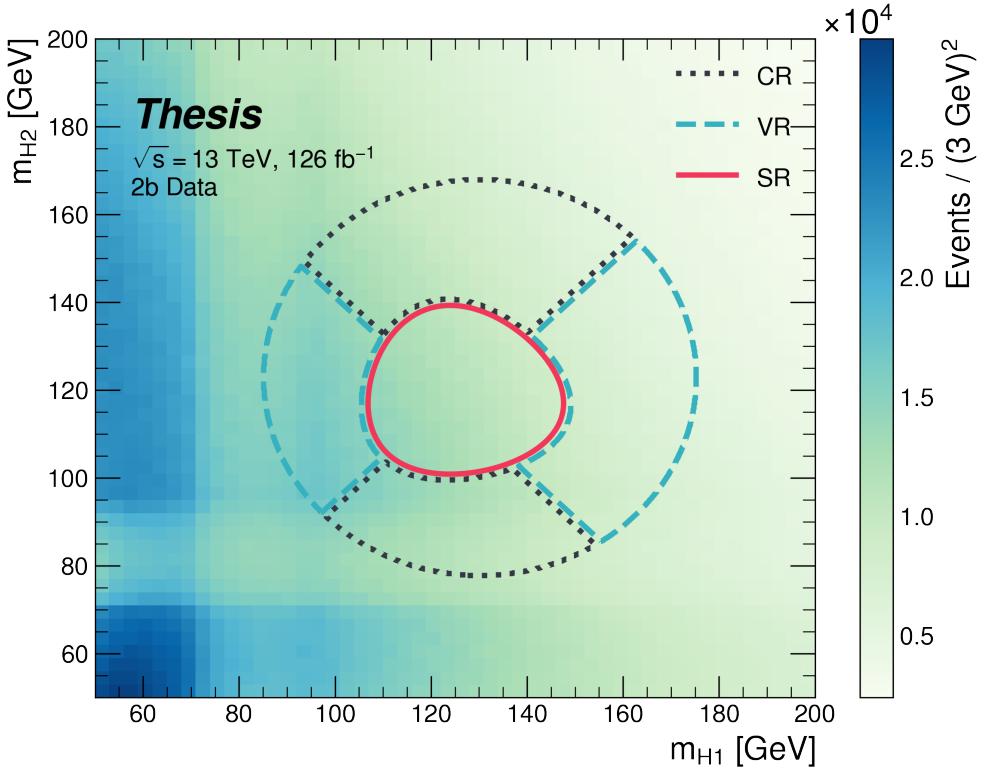


Figure 7.6: Regions used for the non-resonant search. The “top” and “bottom” quadrants together comprise the control region, in which the nominal background estimate is derived. The “left” and “right” quadrants together comprise the validation region, which is used to assess an uncertainty. The signal region, in the center, is where the signal extraction fit is performed.

²¹⁷⁷ 45° , with the “top” and “bottom” quadrants together comprising the control region, and the
²¹⁷⁸ other set (“left” and “right”) the validation region. These regions are shown in Figure 7.6

²¹⁷⁹ This design of regions includes a set of events closer to the signal region in the mass plane,
²¹⁸⁰ leveraging the assumption that these events are more similar to signal region events, while
²¹⁸¹ also including events further away from the signal region, mitigating signal contamination.
²¹⁸² This region selection is found to have good performance in alternate validation regions (see
²¹⁸³ Section 9.4).

2184 Figure 7.7 shows the signal acceptance times efficiency for the respective analysis selections
 2185 described above for spin-0, spin-2, and 4b Standard Model signals.

2186 **7.4 Discriminating Variable**

2187 The discriminant used for the resonant analysis is *corrected* m_{HH} . This variable is calculated
 2188 by re-scaling the Higgs candidate four vectors such that each $m_H = 125$ GeV. These re-scaled
 2189 four-vectors are then summed, and their invariant mass is the corrected m_{HH} . These re-scaled
 2190 four-vectors are not used for any other purpose. The effect of this correction, which sharpens
 2191 the m_{HH} peak and correctly centers it, is shown in Figure 7.8.

2192 For the non-resonant analysis, due to the broad nature of the signal in m_{HH} , such a
 2193 correction is not as motivated, and, indeed, is found to have very minimal impact. The
 2194 uncorrected m_{HH} (just referred to as m_{HH}) is therefore used as a discriminant. To maximize
 2195 sensitivity, the non-resonant analysis additionally uses two variables for categorization: $\Delta\eta_{HH}$,
 2196 an angular variable which, along with m_{HH} , fully characterizes the HH system [101], and
 2197 X_{HH} , the variable used for the signal region definition, which leverages the peaked structure
 2198 of the signal in the $(m(H_1), m(H_2))$ plane to split the signal extraction fit into lower
 2199 and higher purity regions (highest purity near $X_{HH} = 0$, the center of the signal region).
 2200 The categorization used for this thesis has been optimized to be 2×2 in these variables,
 2201 with corresponding selections $0 \leq \Delta\eta_{HH} \leq 0.75$ and $0.75 \leq \Delta\eta_{HH} \leq 1.5$ for $\Delta\eta_{HH}$, and
 2202 $0 \leq X_{HH} \leq 0.95$ and $0.95 \leq X_{HH} \leq 1.6$ for X_{HH} .

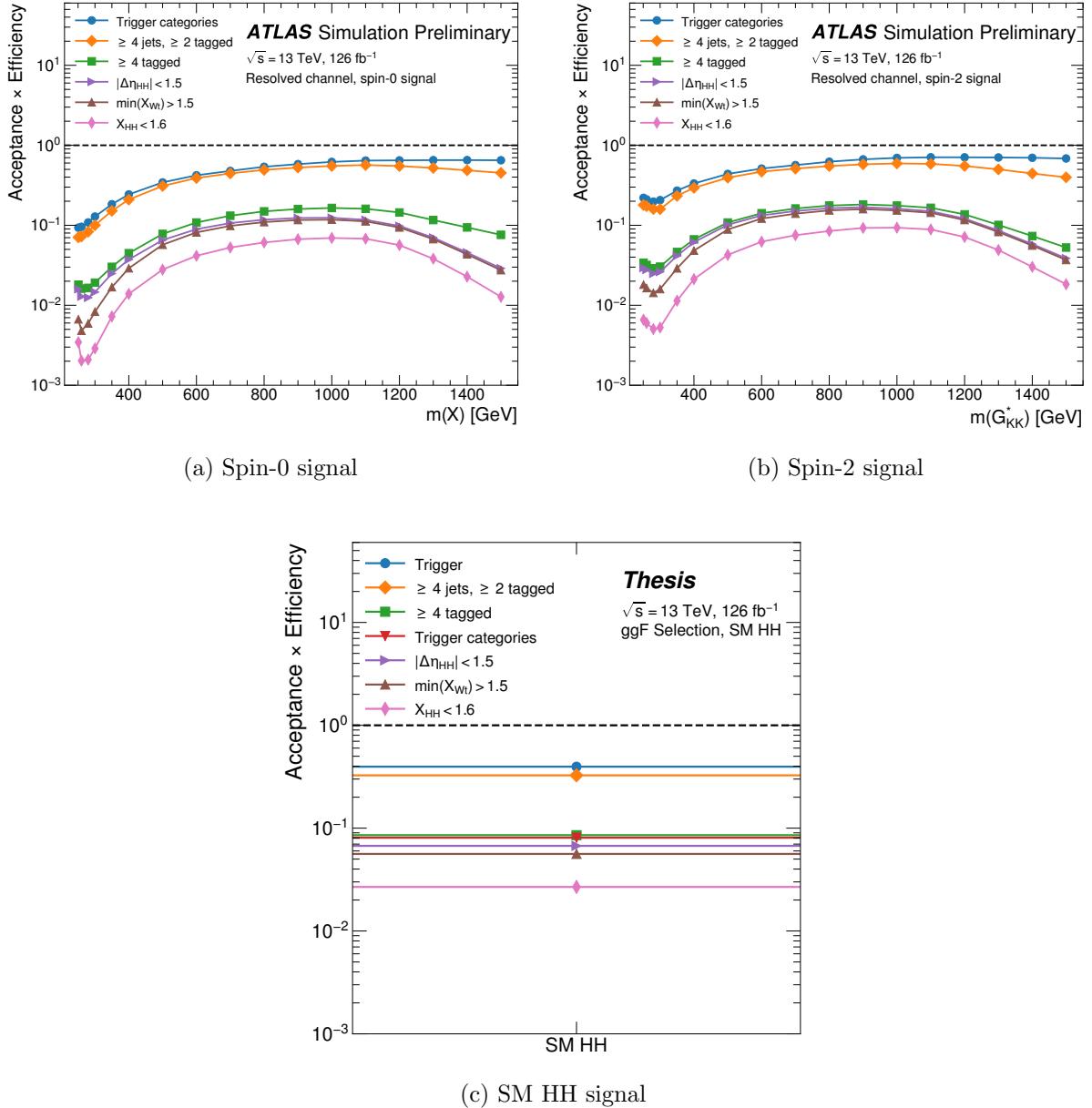


Figure 7.7: Acceptance times efficiency for the respective analysis selections for spin-0, spin-2, and 4*b* Standard Model signals. The Standard Model acceptance times efficiency is roughly consistent with the resonant signals in the mass range near the Standard Model peak (near 400 to 600 GeV). Acceptance times efficiency at low mass is mostly limited by the trigger, whereas for higher masses, the jets start to merge together, and the efficiency for reconstructing four *b*-tagged jets decreases. The spin-2 signal has a higher low mass acceptance times efficiency than spin-0 due to the broader signal distributions of this variable, which leads to a distortion of this distribution towards higher mass values. The increase in acceptance times efficiency at very low mass reflects the impact of the kinematic threshold of

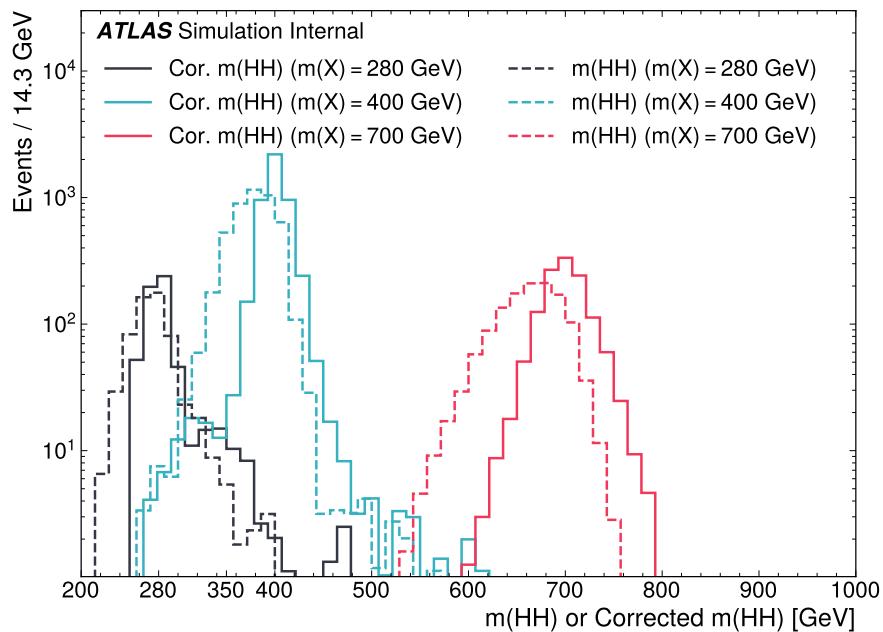


Figure 7.8: Impact of the m_{HH} correction on a range of spin-0 resonant signals. The corrected m_{HH} distributions (solid lines) are much sharper and more centered on the corresponding resonance masses than the uncorrected m_{HH} distributions (dashed).

2203

Chapter 8

2204

BACKGROUND ESTIMATION

2205 After the event selection described above, there are two major backgrounds, QCD and $t\bar{t}$.
 2206 A very similar approach is used for both the resonant and the non-resonant analyses, with
 2207 some small modifications. This approach is notably fully data-driven, which is warranted due
 2208 to the flexibility of the estimation method, as well as the high relative proportion of QCD
 2209 background ($> 90\%$), and allows for the use of machine learning methods in the construction
 2210 of the background estimate. However, it sacrifices an explicit treatment of the $t\bar{t}$ component.
 2211 Performance of the background estimate on the $t\bar{t}$ component is checked explicitly, and
 2212 minimal impact due to $t\bar{t}$ mis-modeling is seen.

2213 Contributions of single Higgs processes and ZZ are found to be negligible, and the
 2214 Standard Model HH background is found to have no impact on the resonant search.

2215 The foundation of the background estimate lies in the derivation of a reweighting function
 2216 which matches the kinematics of events with exactly two b -tagged jets to those of events in
 2217 the higher tagged regions (events with three or four b -tagged jets). The reweighting function
 2218 and overall normalization are derived in the control region. Systematic bias of this estimate
 2219 is assessed in the validation region.

2220 For the resonant analysis, the systematic bias is a bias due to extrapolation: the validation
 2221 region lies between the control and signal regions. For the non-resonant analysis, the bias
 2222 instead comes from different possible interpolations of the signal region kinematics – given the
 2223 choice of nominal estimate, the validation region is a conceptually equivalent, but maximally
 2224 different, signal region estimate.

2225 **8.1 The Two Tag Region**

2226 Events in data with exactly two b-tagged jets are used for the data driven background estimate.
2227 The hypothesis here is that, due to the presence of multiple *b*-tagged jets, the kinematics of
2228 such events are similar to the kinematics of events in higher b-tagged regions (i.e. events
2229 with three and four *b*-tagged jets, respectively), and any differences can be corrected by a
2230 reweighting procedure. The region with three *b*-tagged jets is split into two *b*-tagging regions,
2231 as described in Section 7.1, with the $3b + 1$ loose region used as an additional signal region.
2232 The lower tagged $3b$ component ($3b + 1$ fail) is reserved for validation of the background
2233 modelling procedure. Events with fewer than two *b*-tagged jets are not used for this analysis,
2234 as they are relatively more different from the higher tag regions.

2235 The nominal event selection requires at least four jets in order to form Higgs candidates.
2236 For the four tag region, these are the four highest p_T *b*-tagged jets. For the three tag regions,
2237 these jets are the three *b*-tagged jets, plus the highest p_T jet satisfying a loosened *b*-tagging
2238 requirement. Similarly, and following the approach of the resonant analysis, the two tag region
2239 uses the two *b*-tagged jets and the two highest p_T non-tagged jets to form Higgs candidates.
2240 Combinatoric bias from selection of different numbers of *b*-tagged jets is corrected as a part
2241 of the kinematic reweighting procedure through the reweighting of the total number of jets in
2242 the event. In this way, the full event selection may be run on two tagged events.

2243 **8.2 Kinematic Reweighting**

2244 The set of two tagged data events is the fundamental piece of the data driven background
2245 estimate. However, kinematic differences from the four tag region exist and must be corrected
2246 in order for this estimate to be useful. Binned approaches based on ratios of histograms
2247 have been previously considered [2], [22], but are limited in their handling of correlations
2248 between variables and by the ‘‘curse of dimensionality’’, i.e. the dataset becomes sparser and
2249 sparser in ‘‘reweighting space’’ as the number of dimensions in which to reweight increases,
2250 limiting the number of variables used for reweighting. This leads either to an unstable fit

2251 result (overfitting with finely grained bins) or a lower quality fit result (underfitting with
 2252 coarse bins).

2253 Note that even some machine learning methods such as Boosted Decision Trees (BDTs) [102],
 2254 may suffer from this curse of dimensionality, as the depth of each decision tree used is limited
 2255 by the available statistics after each set of corresponding selections (cf. binning in a more
 2256 sophisticated way), limiting the expressivity of the learned reweighting function.

2257 To solve these issues, a neural network based reweighting procedure is used here. This
 2258 is a truly multivariate approach, allowing for proper treatment of variable correlations. It
 2259 further overcomes the issues associated with binned approaches by learning the reweighting
 2260 function directly, allowing for greater sensitivity to local differences and helping to avoid the
 2261 curse of dimensionality.

2262 8.2.1 Neural Network Reweighting

Let $p_{4b}(x)$ and $p_{2b}(x)$ be the probability density functions for four and two tag data respectively across some input variables x . The problem of learning the reweighting function between two and four tag data is then the problem of learning a function $w(x)$ such that

$$p_{2b}(x) \cdot w(x) = p_{4b}(x) \quad (8.1)$$

from which it follows that

$$w(x) = \frac{p_{4b}(x)}{p_{2b}(x)}. \quad (8.2)$$

This falls into the domain of density ratio estimation, for which there are a variety of approaches. The method considered here is modified from [103, 104], and depends on a loss function of the form

$$\mathcal{L}(R(x)) = \mathbb{E}_{x \sim p_{2b}}[\sqrt{R(x)}] + \mathbb{E}_{x \sim p_{4b}}\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{R(x)}}\right]. \quad (8.3)$$

where $R(x)$ is some estimator dependent on x and $\mathbb{E}_{x \sim p_{2b}}$ and $\mathbb{E}_{x \sim p_{4b}}$ are the expectation values with respect to the 2b and 4b probability densities. A neural network trained with

such a loss function has the objective of finding the estimator, $R(x)$, that minimizes this loss. It is straightforward to show that

$$\arg \min_R \mathcal{L}(R(x)) = \frac{p_{4b}(x)}{p_{2b}(x)} \quad (8.4)$$

2263 which is exactly the form of the desired reweighting function.

In practice, to avoid imposing explicit positivity constraints, the substitution $Q(x) \equiv \log R(x)$ is made. The loss function then takes the equivalent form

$$\mathcal{L}(Q(x)) = \mathbb{E}_{x \sim p_{2b}} [\sqrt{e^{Q(x)}}] + \mathbb{E}_{x \sim p_{4b}} \left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{e^{Q(x)}}} \right], \quad (8.5)$$

with solution

$$\arg \min_Q \mathcal{L}(Q(x)) = \log \frac{p_{4b}(x)}{p_{2b}(x)}. \quad (8.6)$$

2264 Taking the exponent then results in the desired reweighting function.

2265 Note that similar methods for density ratio estimation are available [105], e.g. from a
2266 more standard binary cross-entropy loss. However, these were found to perform no better
2267 than the formulation presented here.

2268 8.2.2 Variables and Results

2269 The neural network is trained on a variety of variables sensitive to two vs. four tag differences.
2270 To help bring out these differences, the natural logarithm of some of the variables with a
2271 large, local change is taken. The set of training variables used for the resonant analysis is

2272 1. $\log(p_T)$ of the 4th leading Higgs candidate jet

2273 2. $\log(p_T)$ of the 2nd leading Higgs candidate jet

2274 3. $\log(\Delta R)$ between the closest two Higgs candidate jets

2275 4. $\log(\Delta R)$ between the other two Higgs candidate jets

2276 5. Average absolute value of η across the four Higgs candidate jets

- 2277 6. $\log(p_T)$ of the di-Higgs system.
- 2278 7. ΔR between the two Higgs candidates
- 2279 8. $\Delta\phi$ between the jets in the leading Higgs candidate
- 2280 9. $\Delta\phi$ between the jets in the subleading Higgs candidate
- 2281 10. $\log(X_{Wt})$, where X_{Wt} is the variable used for the top veto
- 2282 11. Number of jets in the event.

2283 The non-resonant analysis uses an identical set of variables with two notable changes

- 2284 1. The definition of X_{Wt} differs from the resonant definition (as described in Section 7.2).
- 2285 2. An integer encoding of the two trigger categories is used as an input (variable which
2286 takes on the value 0 or 1 corresponding to each of the two categories). This was found
2287 to improve a mis-modeling near the tradeoff in m_{HH} of the two buckets.

2288 The neural network used for both resonant and non-resonant reweighting has three densely
2289 connected hidden layers of 50 nodes each with ReLU activation functions and a single node
2290 linear output. This configuration demonstrates good performance in the modelling of a variety
2291 of relevant variables, including m_{HH} , when compared to a range of networks of similar size.

2292 In practice, a given training of the reweighting neural network is subject to variation
2293 due to training statistics and initial conditions. An uncertainty is assigned to account for
2294 this (Chapter 9), which relies on training an ensemble of reweighting networks [106]. To
2295 increase the stability of the background estimate, the median of the predicted weight for each
2296 event is calculated across the ensemble. This median is then used as the nominal background
2297 estimate. This approach is indeed seen to be much more stable and to demonstrate a better
2298 overall performance than a single arbitrary training. Each ensemble used for this analysis
2299 consists of 100 neural networks, trained as described in Chapter 9.

2300 The training of the ensemble used for the nominal estimate is done in the kinematic
 2301 Control Region. The prediction of these networks in the Signal Region is then used for the
 2302 nominal background estimate. In addition, a separate ensemble of networks is trained in the
 2303 Validation Region. The difference between the prediction of the nominal estimate and the
 2304 estimate from the VR derived networks in the Signal Region is used to assign a systematic
 2305 uncertainty. Further details on this systematic uncertainty are discussed in Chapter 9. Note
 2306 that although the same procedure is used for both Control and Validation Region trained
 2307 networks, only the median estimate from the VR derived reweighting is used for assessing a
 2308 systematic – no additional “uncertainty on the uncertainty” from VR ensemble variation is
 2309 applied.

2310 Each reweighted estimate is normalized such that the reweighted $2b$ yield matches the $4b$
 2311 yield in the corresponding training region. Note that this applies to each of the networks used
 2312 in each ensemble, where the normalization factor is also subject to the procedure described
 2313 in Chapter 9. As the median over these normalized weights is not guaranteed to preserve this
 2314 normalization, a further correction is applied such that the $2b$ yield, after the median weights
 2315 are applied, matches the $4b$ yield in the corresponding training region. As no pre-processing
 2316 is applied to correct for the class imbalance between $2b$ and $4b$ events entering the training,
 2317 this ratio of number of $4b$ events ($n(4b)$) over number of $2b$ events ($n(2b)$) is folded into the
 2318 learned weights. Correspondingly, the set of normalization factors described above is near 1
 2319 and the learned weights are centered around $n(4b)/n(2b)$ (roughly 0.01 over the full dataset).
 2320 This normalization procedure applies for all instances of the reweighting (e.g. those used for
 2321 validations in Section 9.4), with appropriate substitutions of reweighting origin (here $2b$) and
 2322 reweighting target (here $4b$).

2323 Note that, due to different trigger and pileup selections during each year, the reweighting
 2324 is trained on each year separately. An approach of training all of the years together with
 2325 a one-hot encoding was explored, but was found to have minimal benefit over the split
 2326 years approach, and in fact to increase the systematic bias of the corresponding background
 2327 estimate. Because of this, and because trigger selections for each year significantly impact

2328 the kinematics of each year, such that categorizing by year is expected to reflect groupings
 2329 of kinematically similar events and to provide a meaningful degree of freedom in the signal
 2330 extraction fit, the split-year approach is kept.

2331 The control region closure for the 2018 dataset is shown for the resonant search in Figures
 2332 8.1 through 8.9 and for the non-resonant search in Figures 8.19 through 8.27 for 4*b* and
 2333 Figures 8.37 through 8.45 for 3*b1l*. The impact of this control region derived reweighting
 2334 on the validation region is shown in Figures 8.10 through 8.18 for the resonant search and
 2335 Figures 8.28 through 8.36 for 4*b* and Figures 8.46 through 8.54 for 3*b1l* for the non-resonant
 2336 search. 2018 is chosen because it is the largest subset of the data on which the year-by-year
 2337 reweighting is trained. The other years are omitted here for brevity, but demonstrate very
 2338 similar results. Generally good performance is seen, with some occasional mis-modeling. For
 2339 the resonant search, this is most notable in the case of individual jet p_T . Such mis-modeling
 2340 may be corrected by including the variables in the input set, but this was found to not
 2341 improve the modeling of m_{HH} , and so is not done here. This mis-modeling is notable for the
 2342 non-resonant search in the leading Higgs candidate jet p_T , and is a direct consequence of the
 2343 trigger category input, which improves modeling of m_{HH} . Results are similar for other years,
 2344 but are not included here for brevity.

2345 One other salient feature of the non-resonant plots is the distributions of m_{H1} and m_{H2} ,
 2346 which emphasize the quadrant region definitions – the control region has a peak around
 2347 125 GeV in m_{H1} , which may be thought of as “signal region-like”, motivating this alignment,
 2348 though consequently the distribution of m_{H2} is quite bimodal. The reverse is true for the
 2349 validation region.

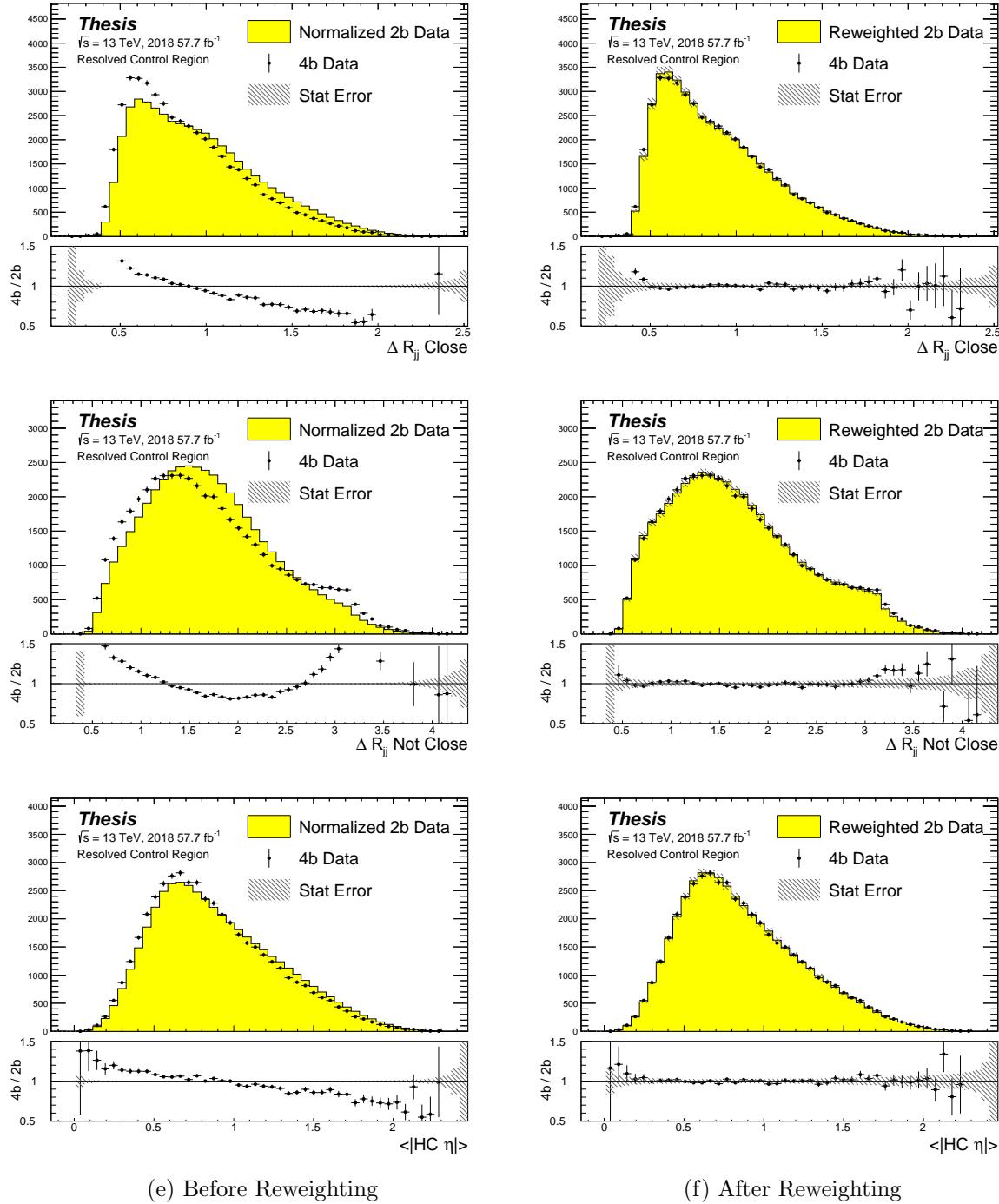


Figure 8.1: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of ΔR between the closest Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.

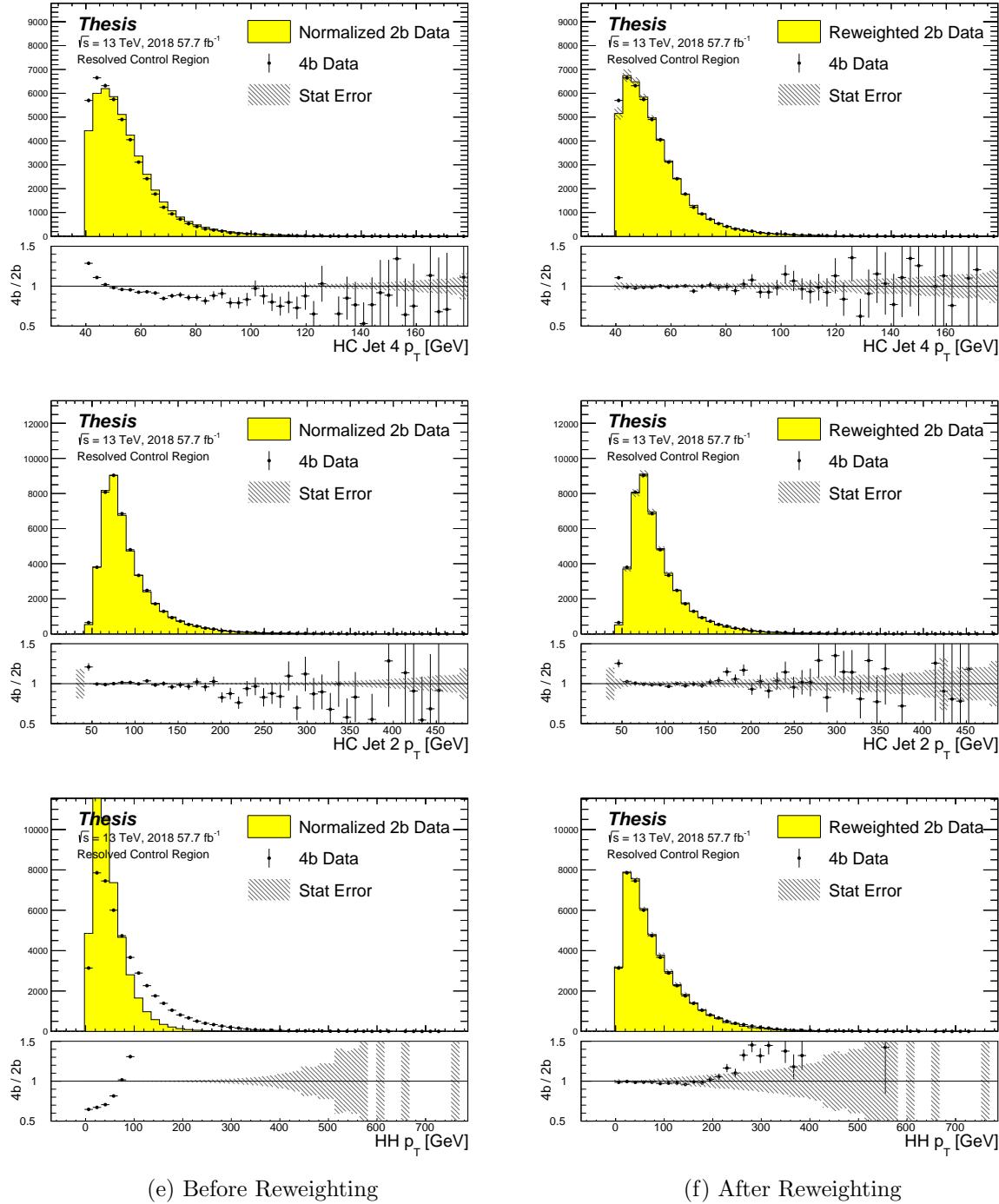


Figure 8.2: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.

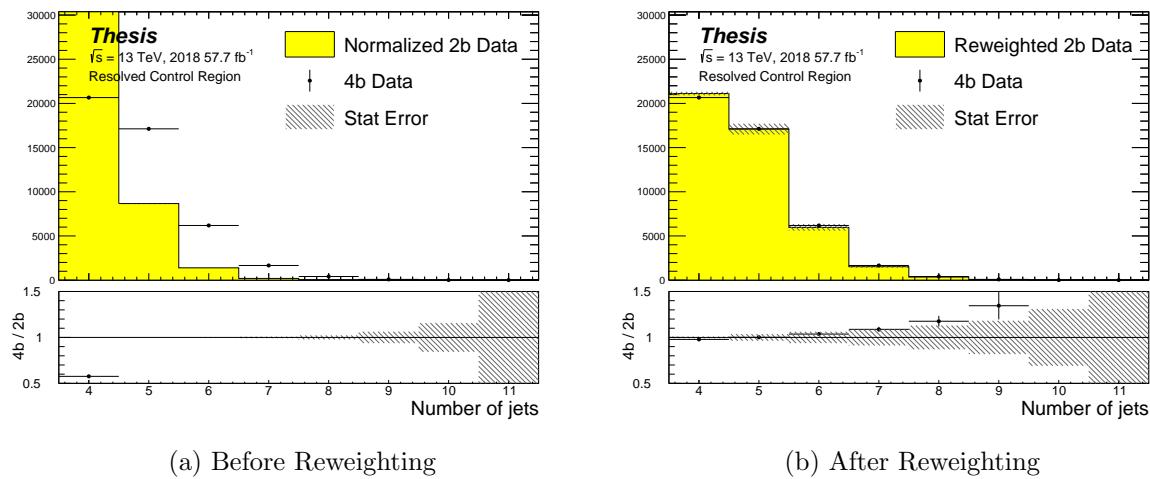


Figure 8.3: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of the number of jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs candidates.

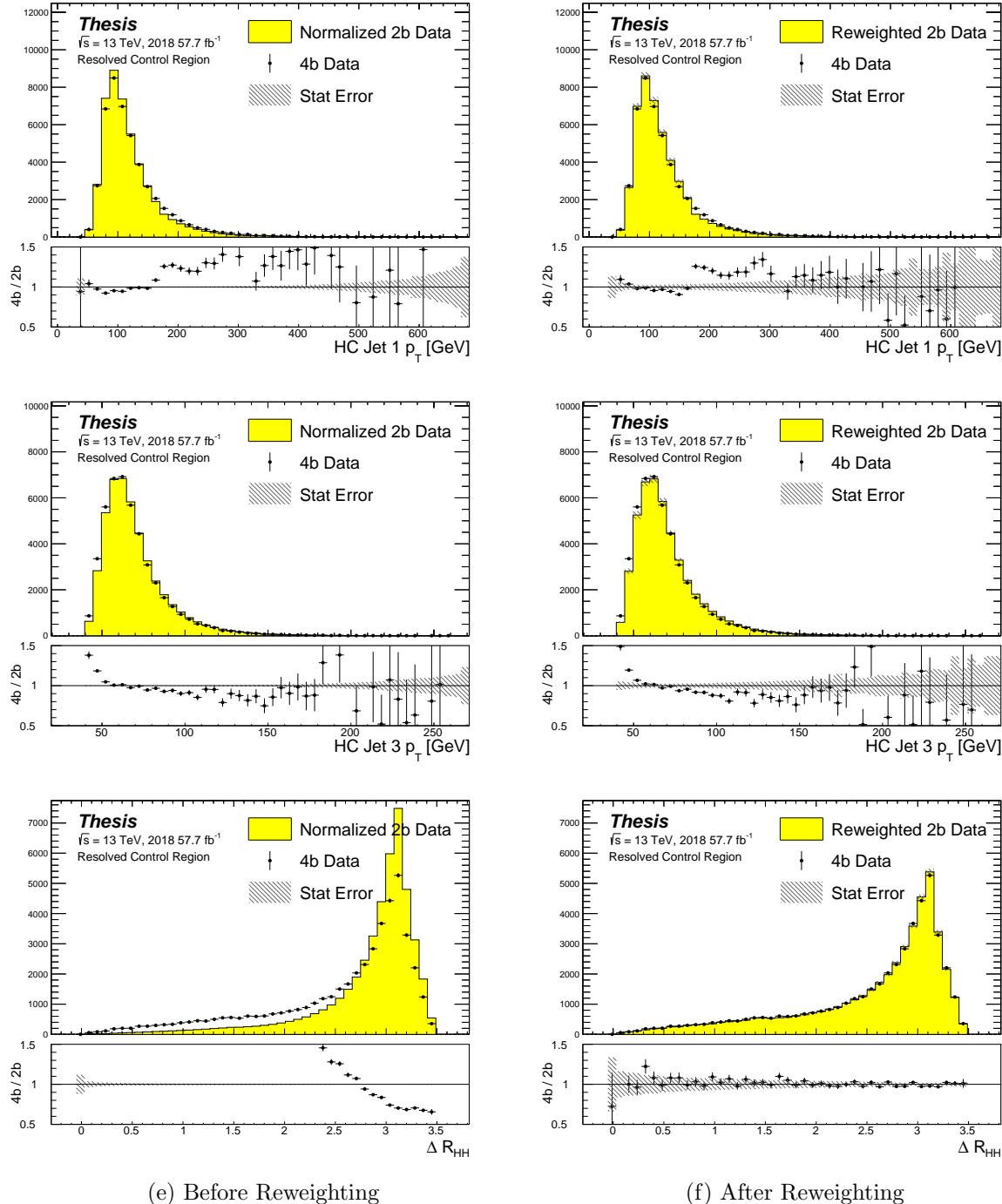


Figure 8.4: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.

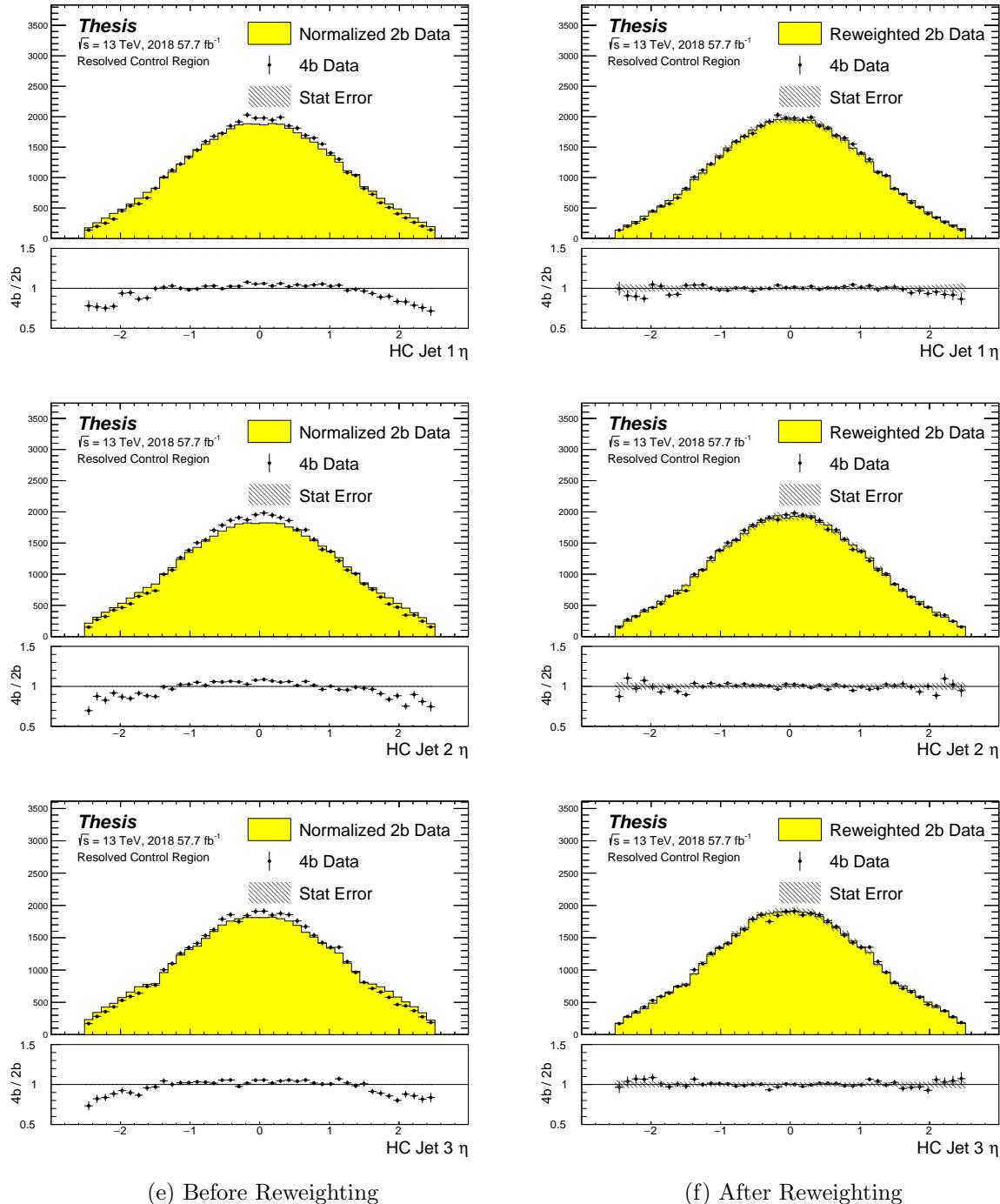


Figure 8.5: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.

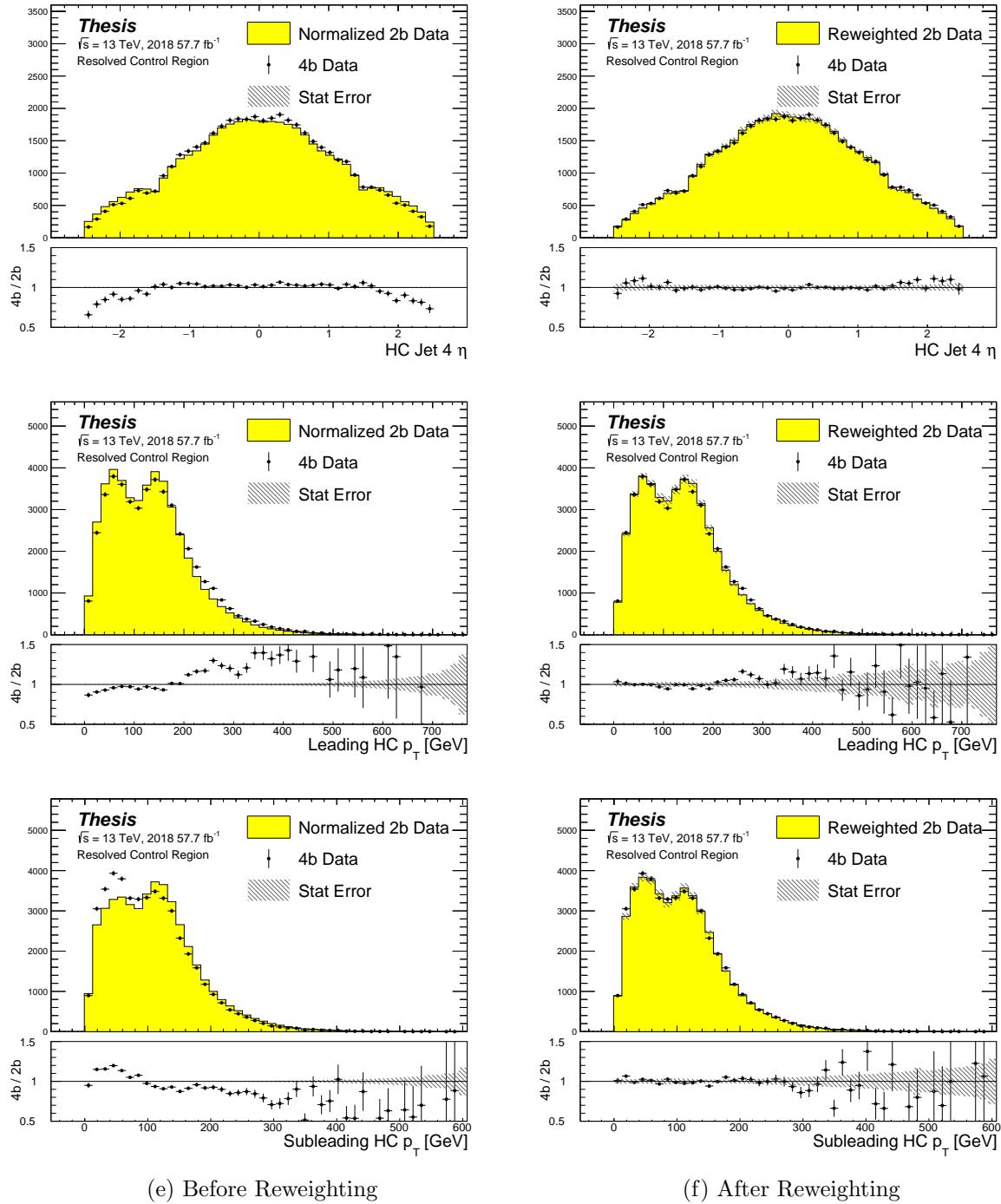


Figure 8.6: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.

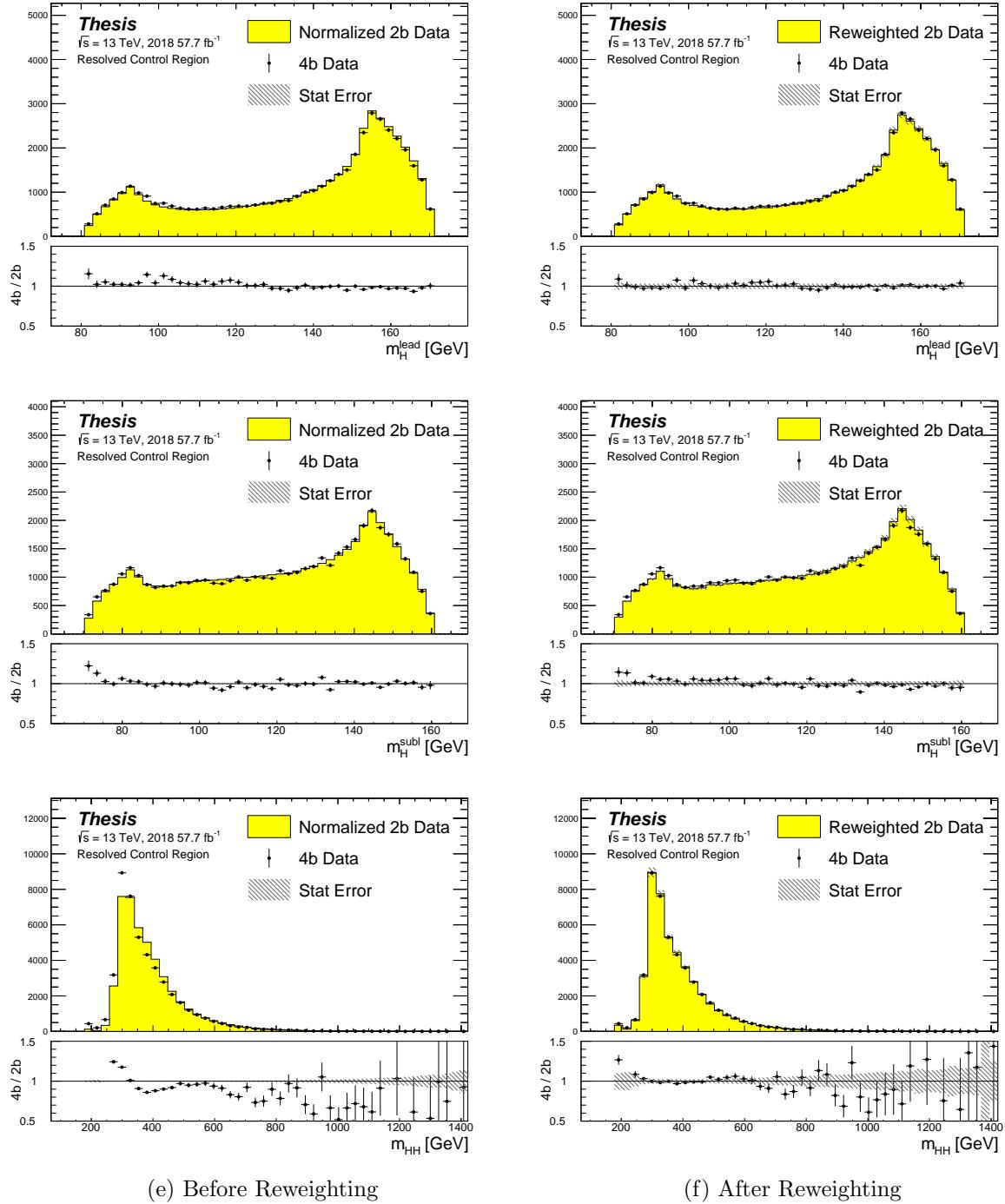


Figure 8.7: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of mass of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.

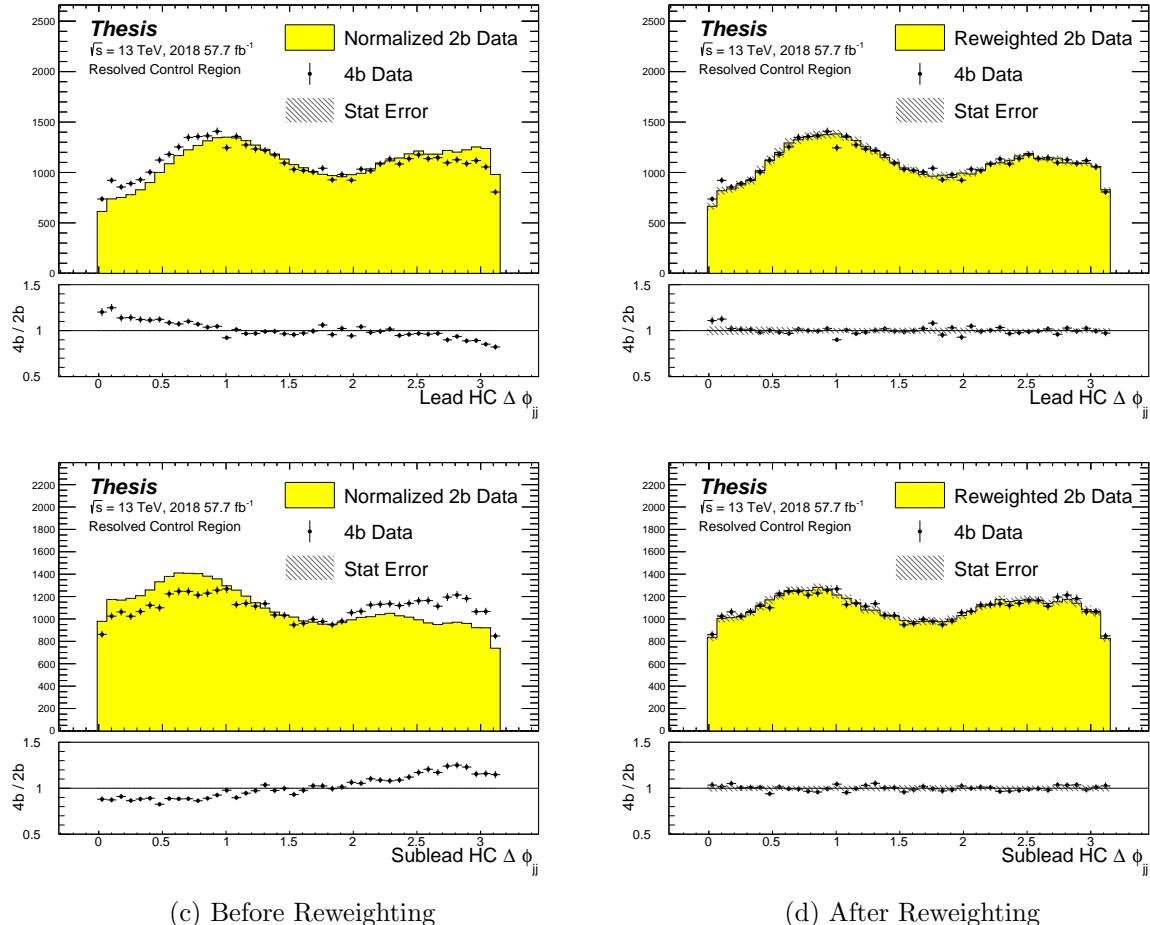


Figure 8.8: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region.

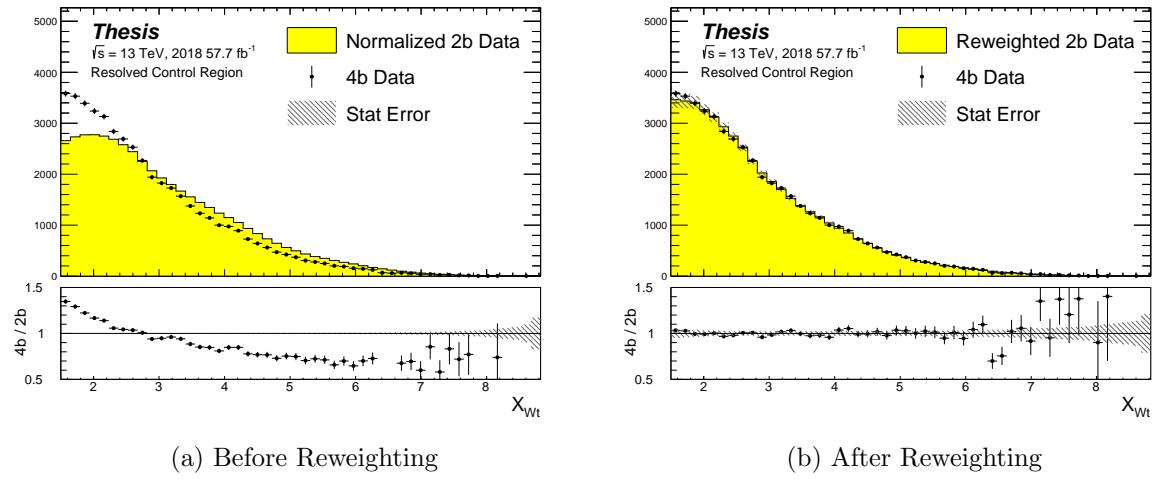


Figure 8.9: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Control Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied

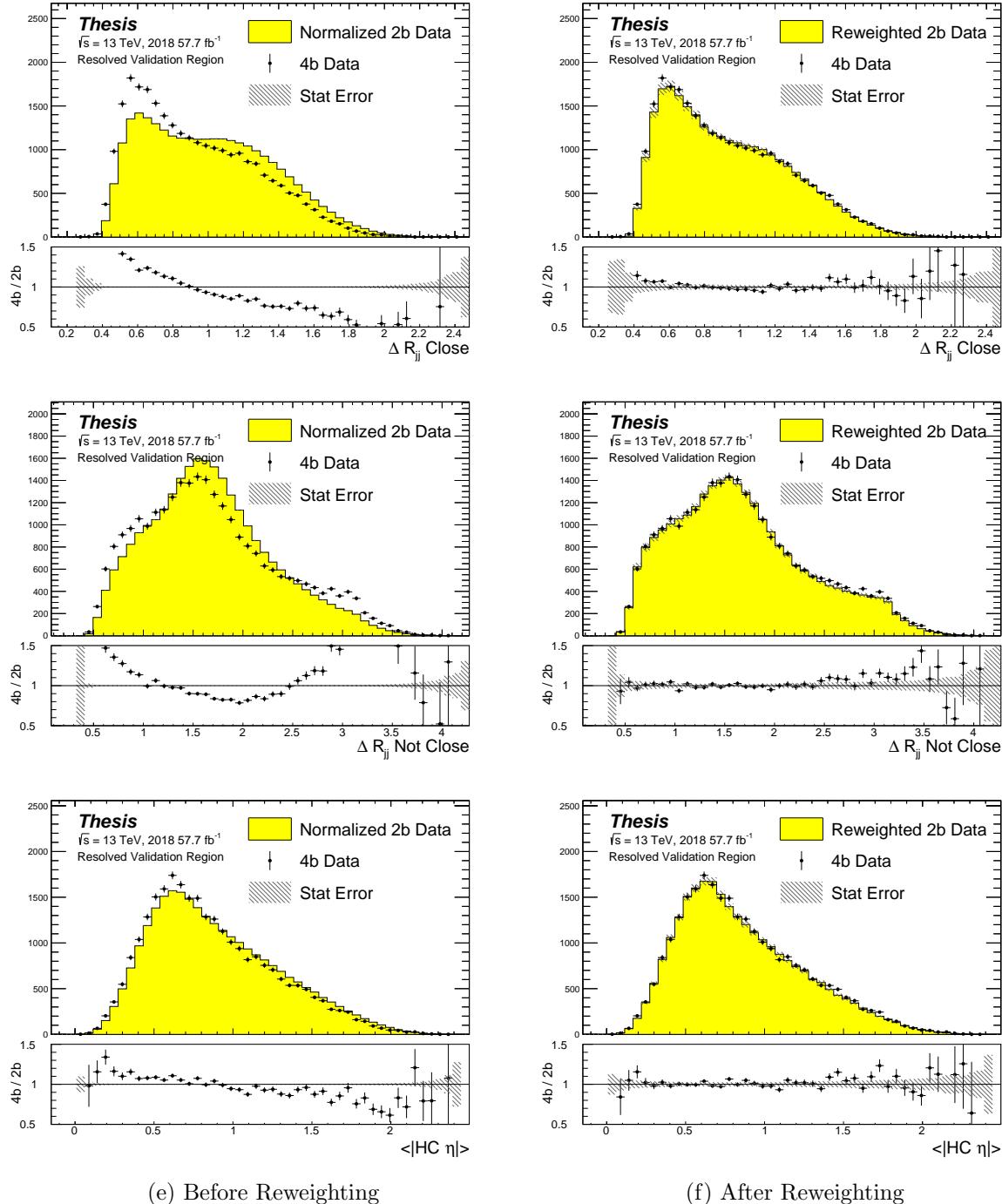


Figure 8.10: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of ΔR between the closest Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.

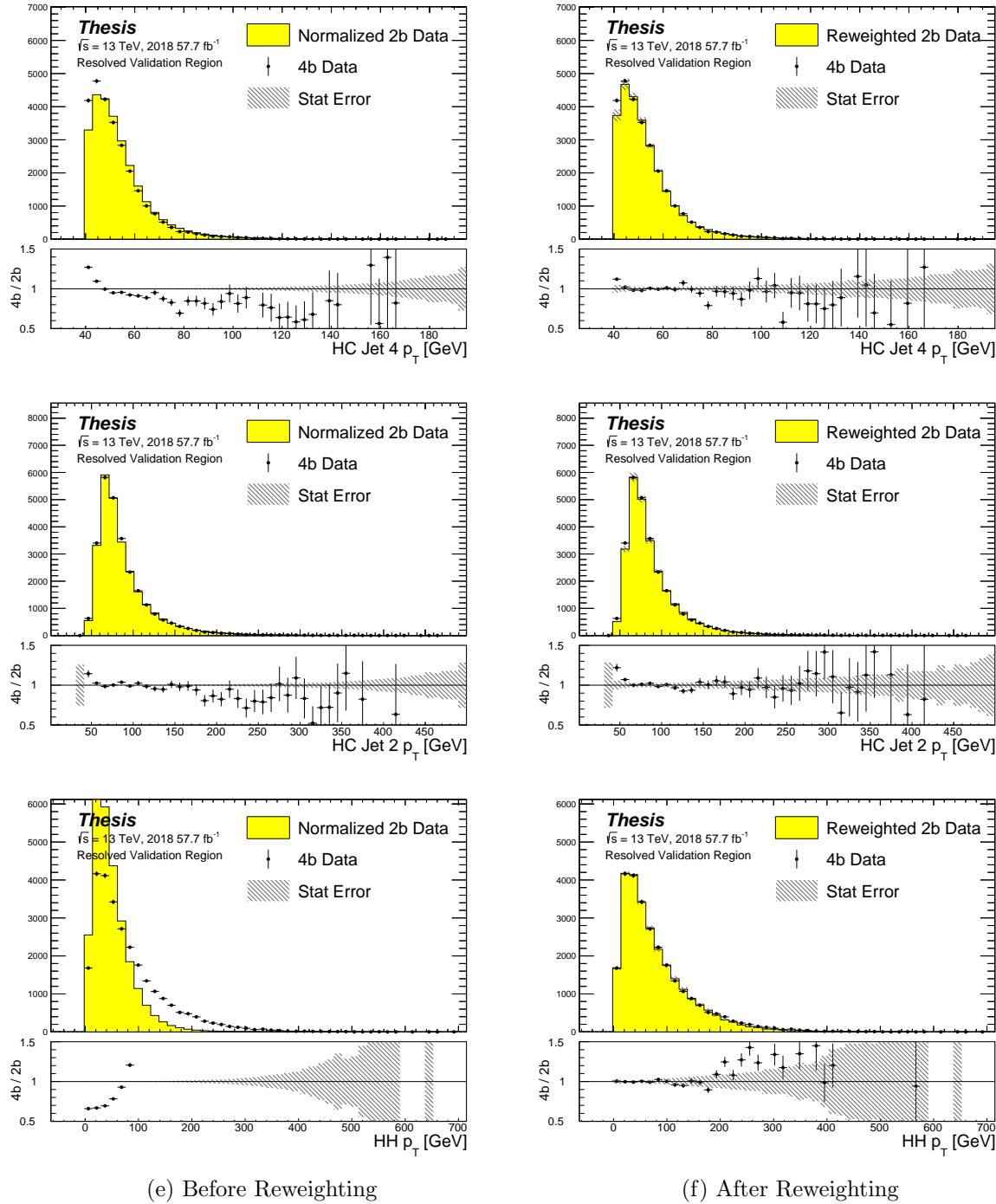


Figure 8.11: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.

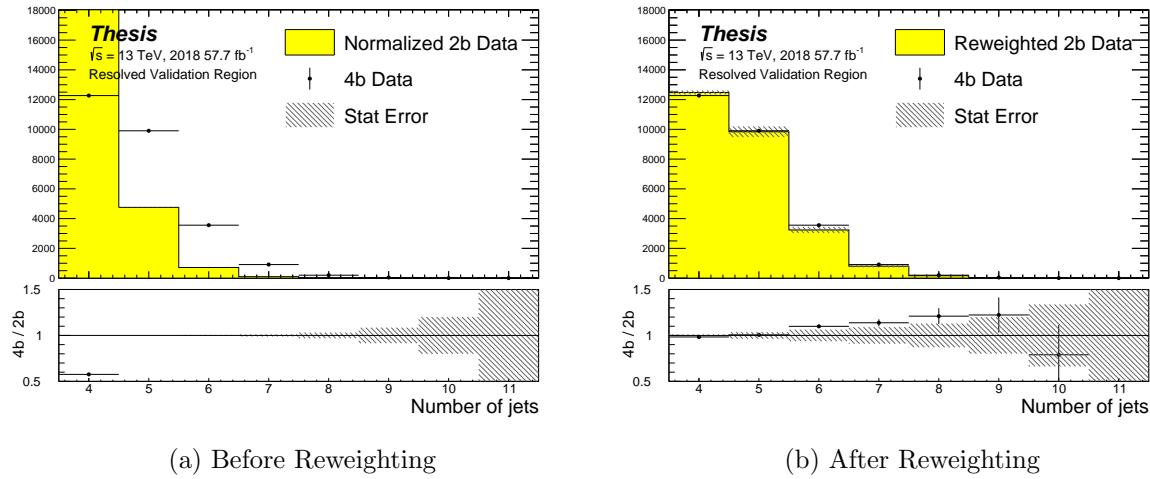


Figure 8.12: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of the number of jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs candidates.

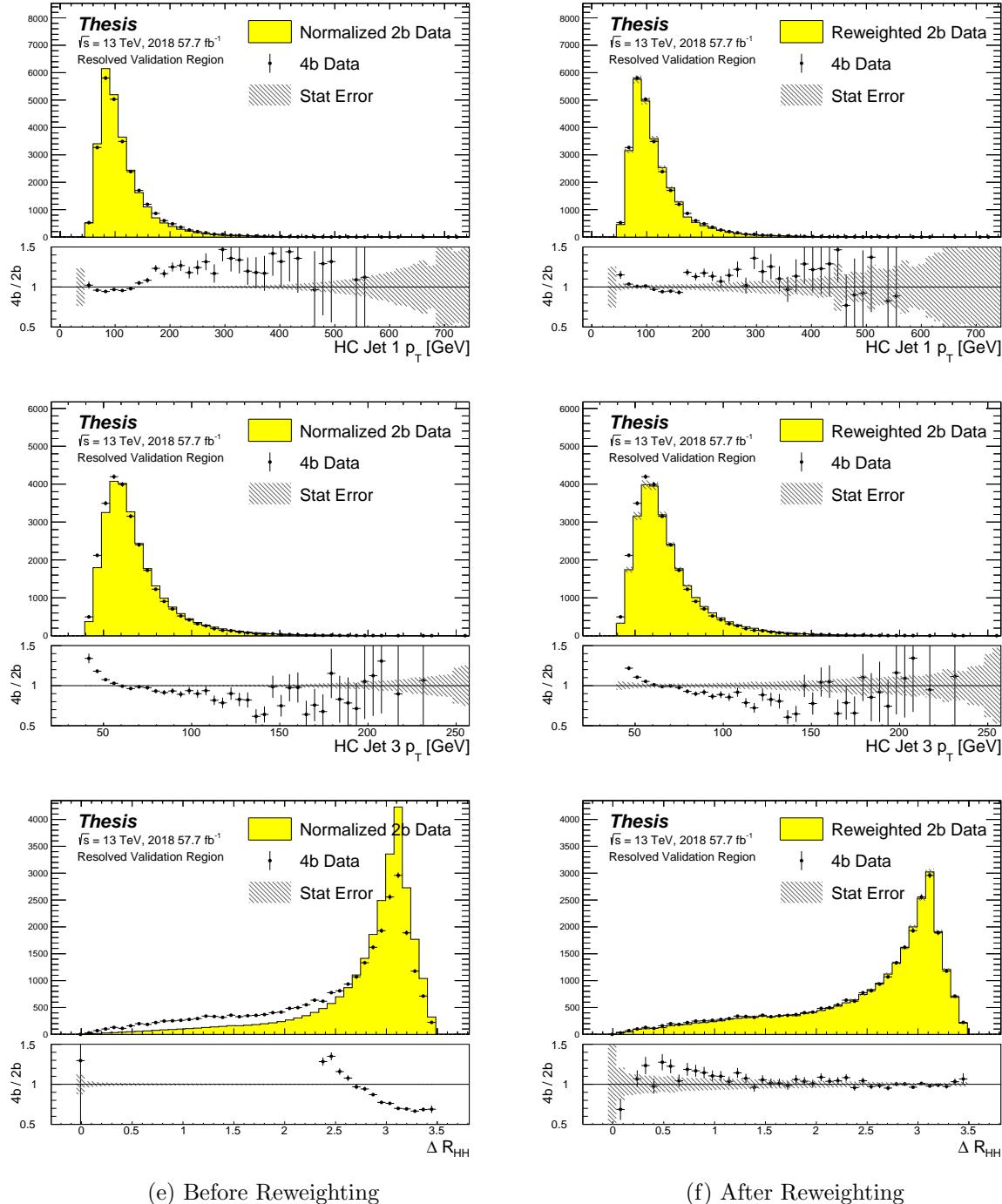


Figure 8.13: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.

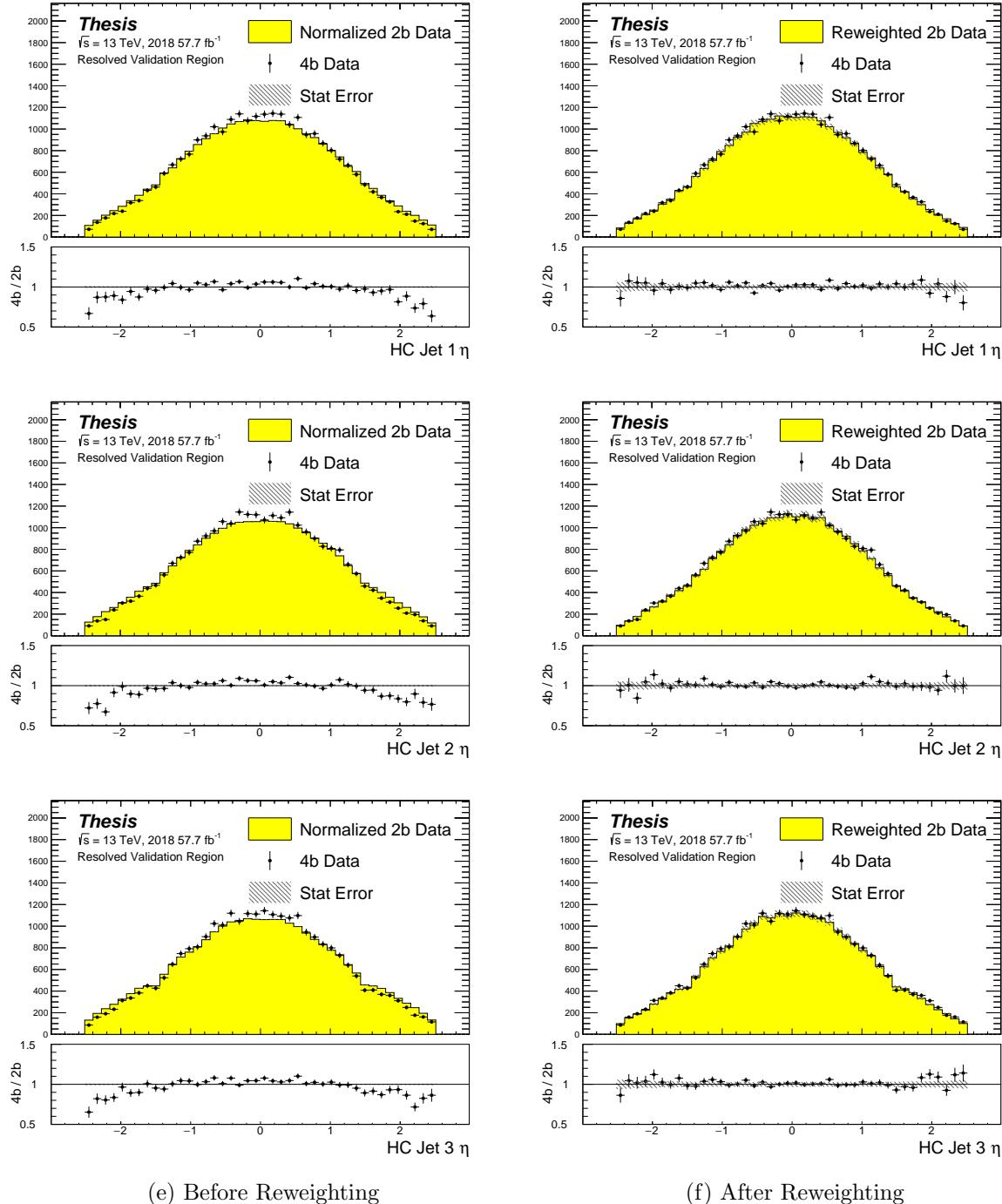


Figure 8.14: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.

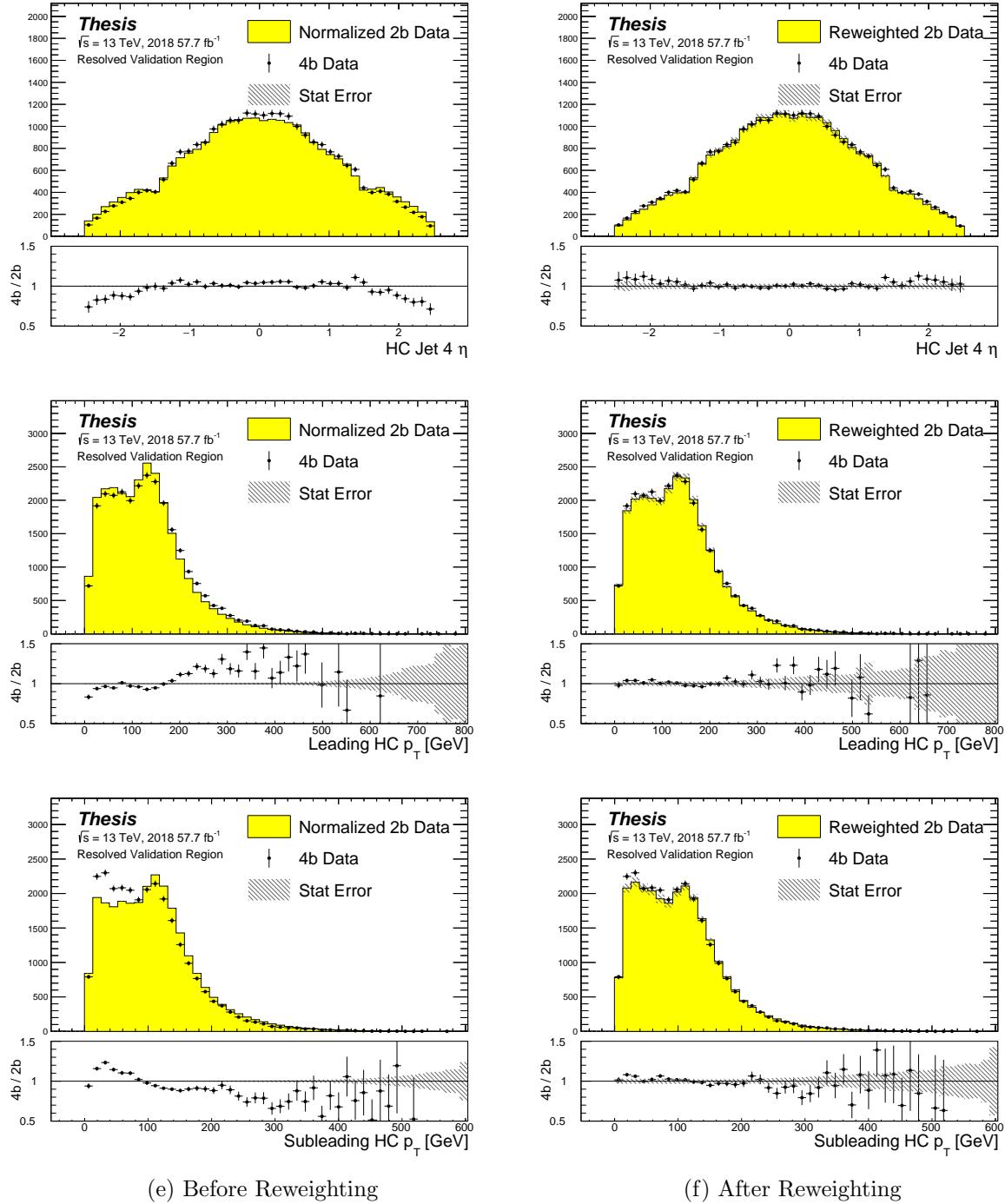


Figure 8.15: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.

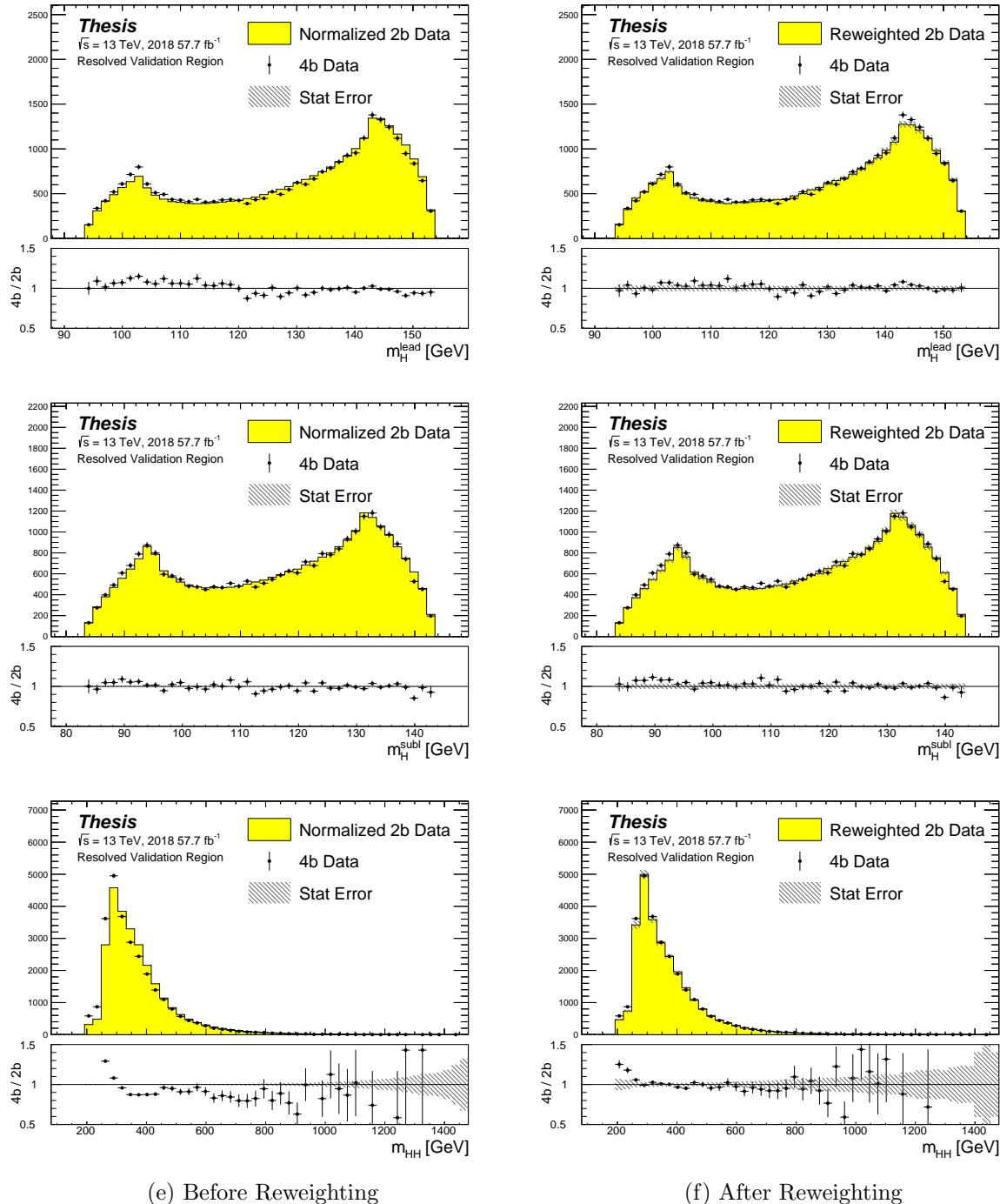


Figure 8.16: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of mass of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.

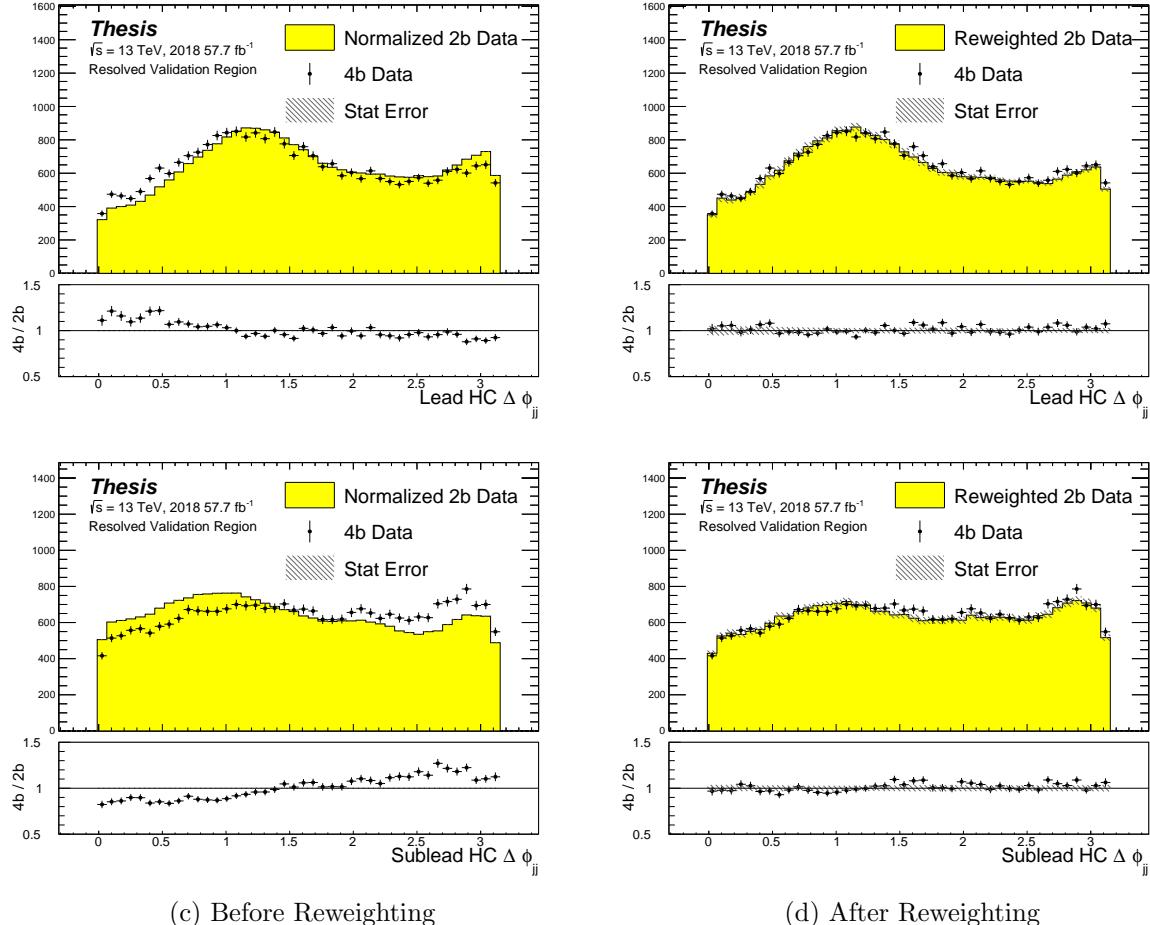


Figure 8.17: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region.

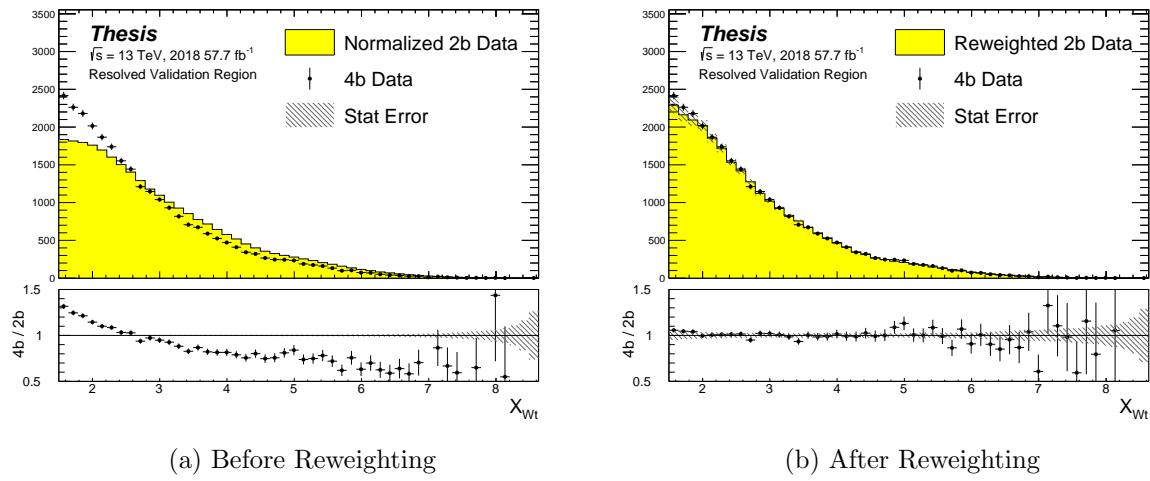


Figure 8.18: **Resonant Search:** Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 Validation Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied

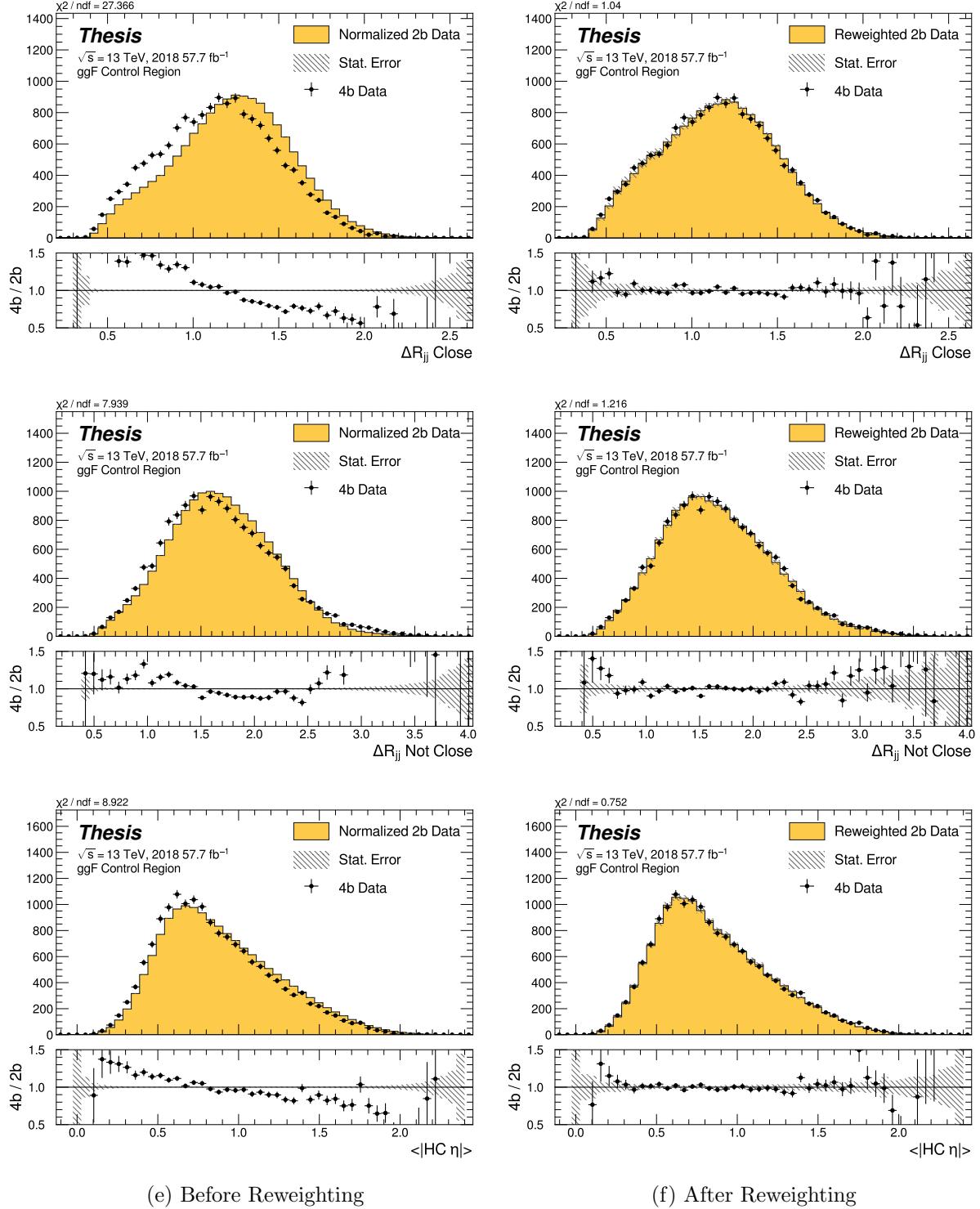


Figure 8.19: **Non-resonant Search (4b):** Distributions of ΔR between the closest Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.

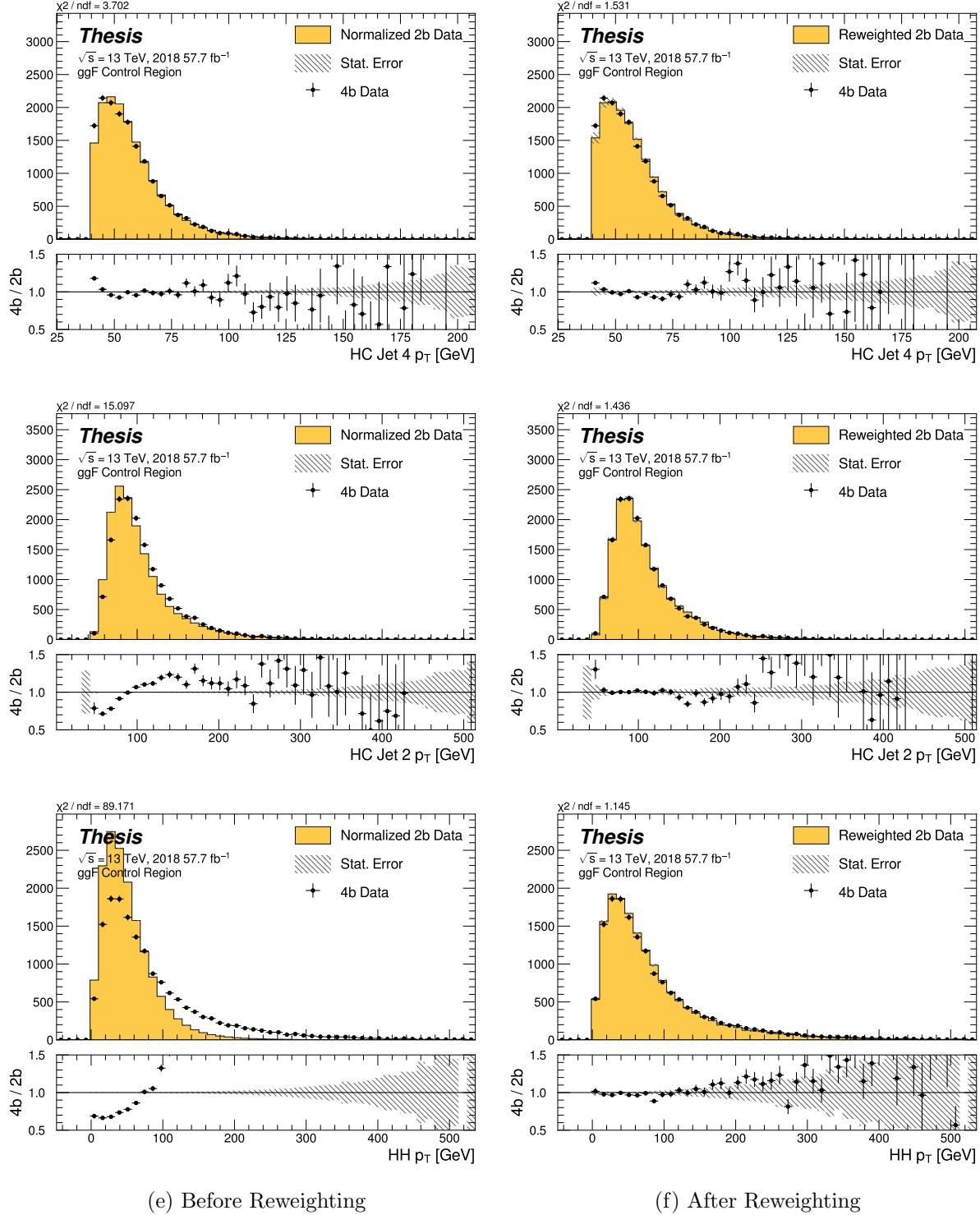


Figure 8.20: **Non-resonant Search (4b):** Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.

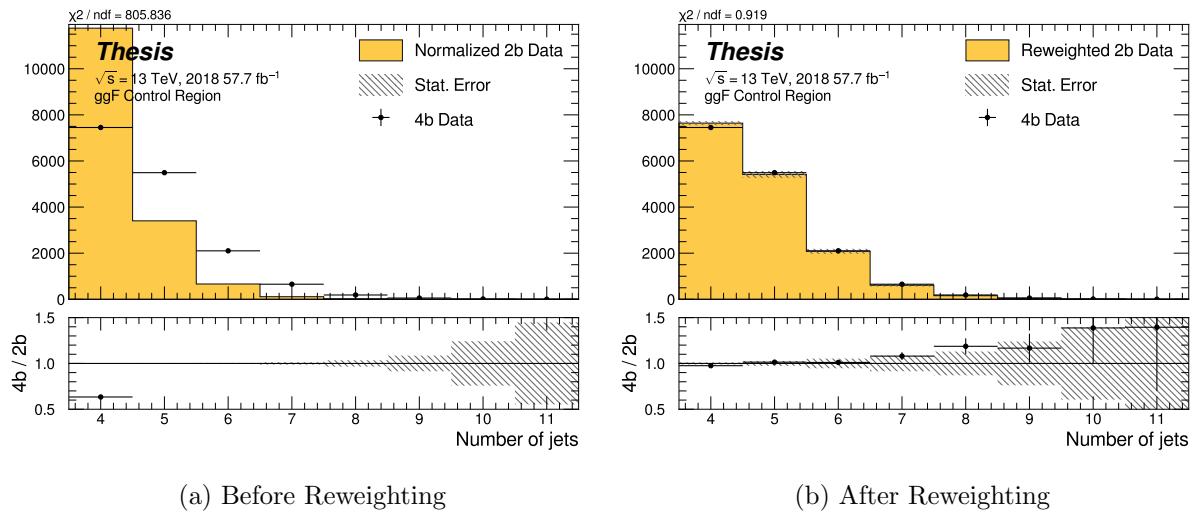


Figure 8.21: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Distributions of the number of jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs candidates.

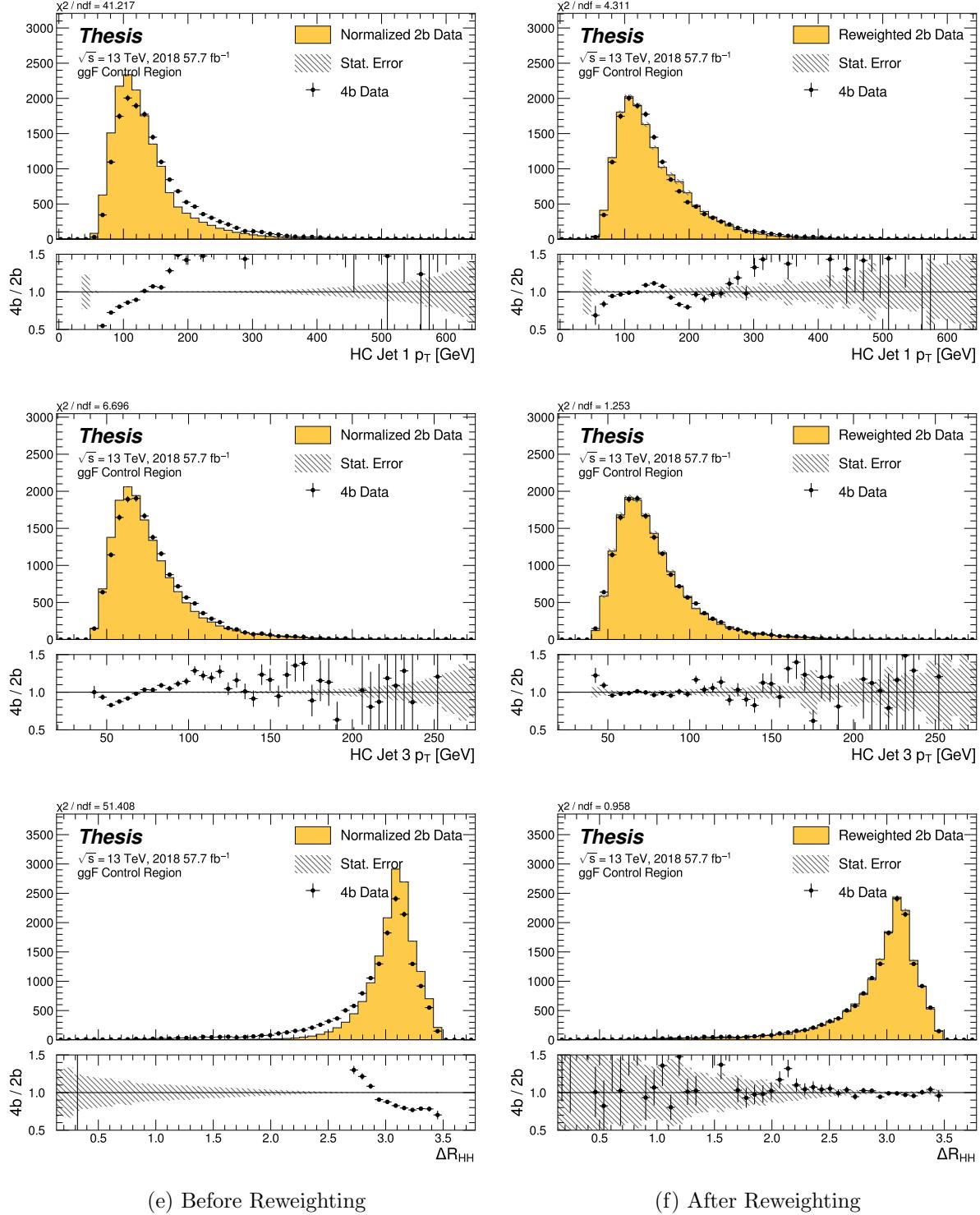


Figure 8.22: **Non-resonant Search (4b):** Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.

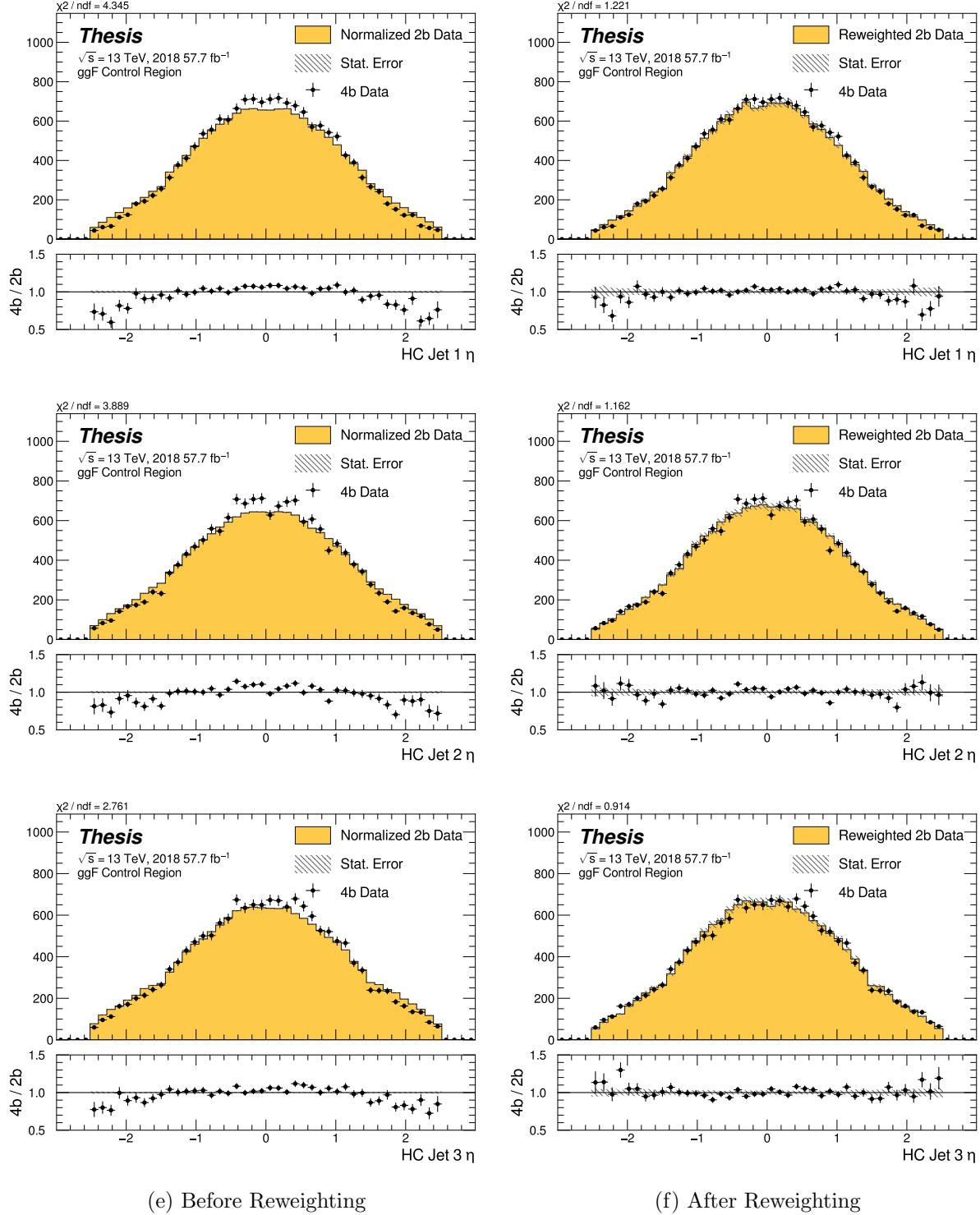


Figure 8.23: **Non-resonant Search (4b):** Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.

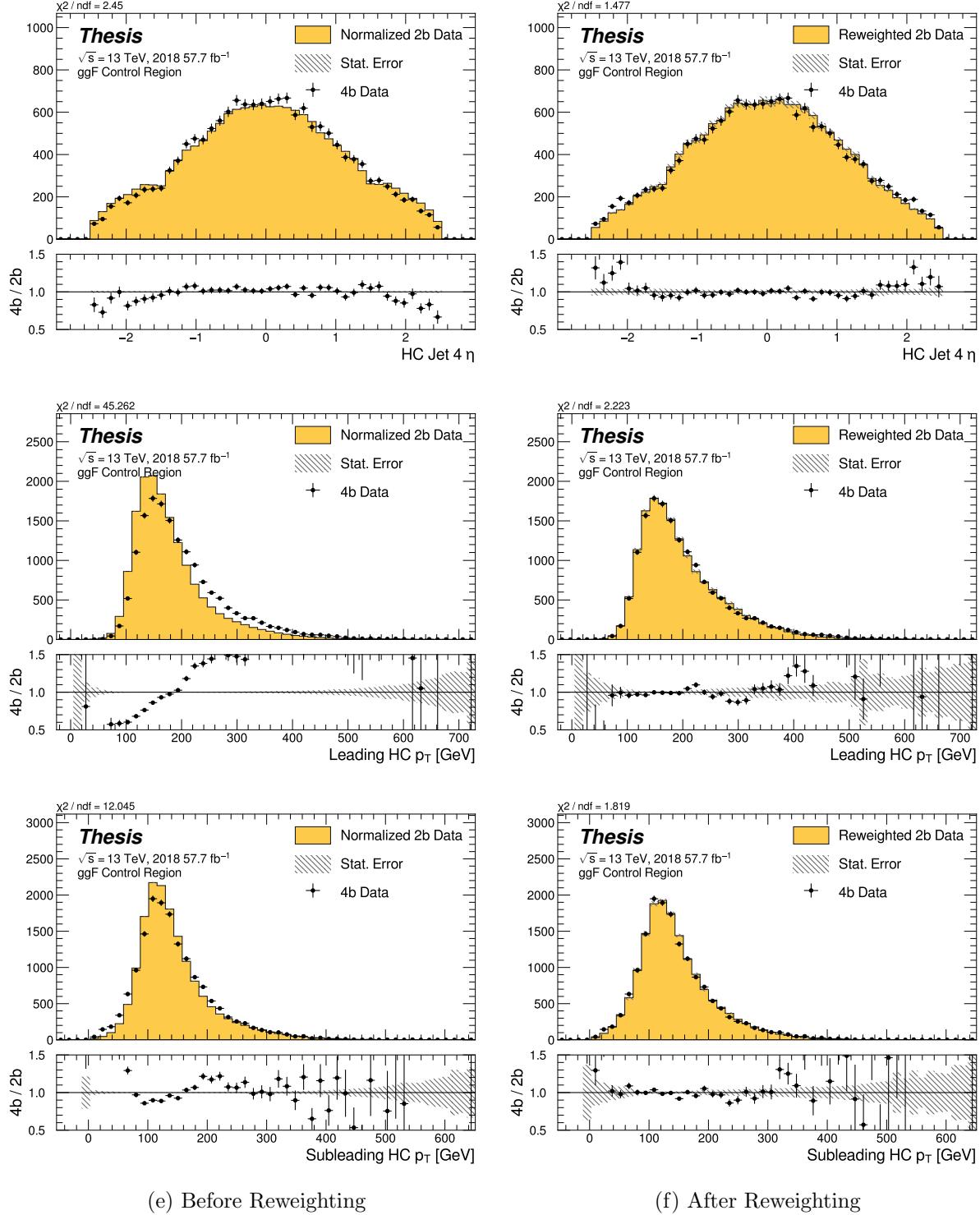


Figure 8.24: **Non-resonant Search (4b):** Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.

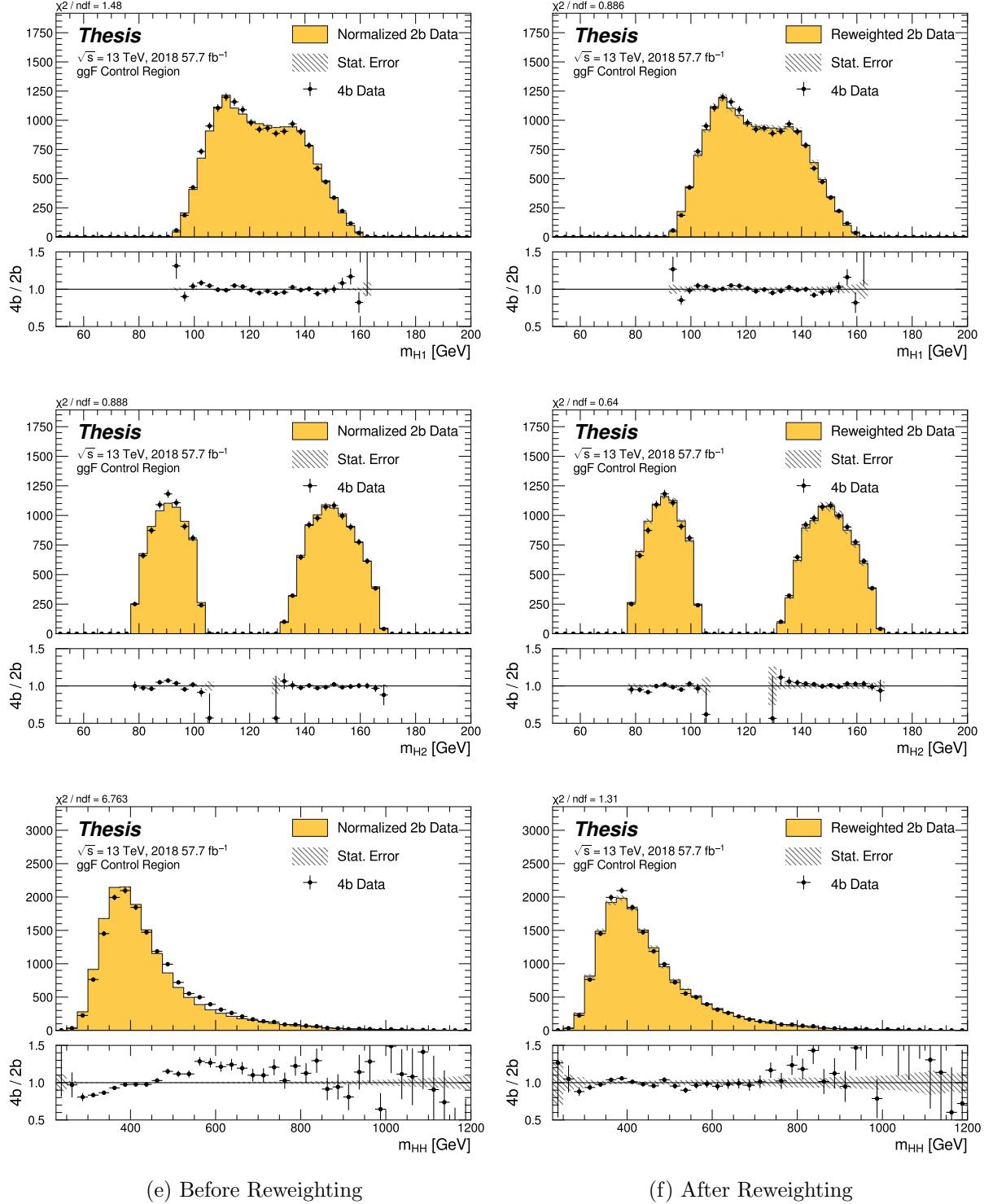


Figure 8.25: **Non-resonant Search (4b):** Distributions of mass of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.

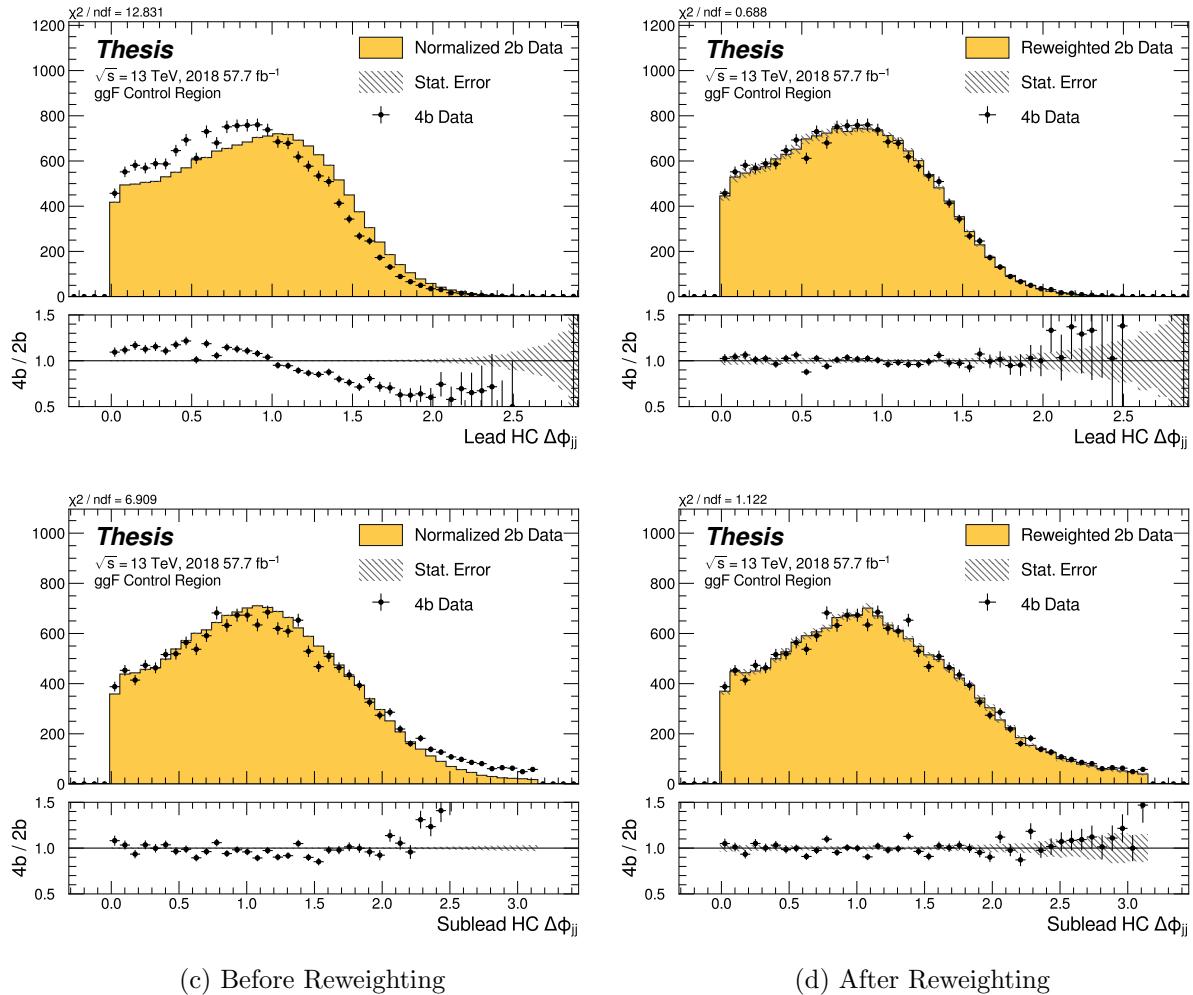


Figure 8.26: **Non-resonant Search (4b):** Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region.

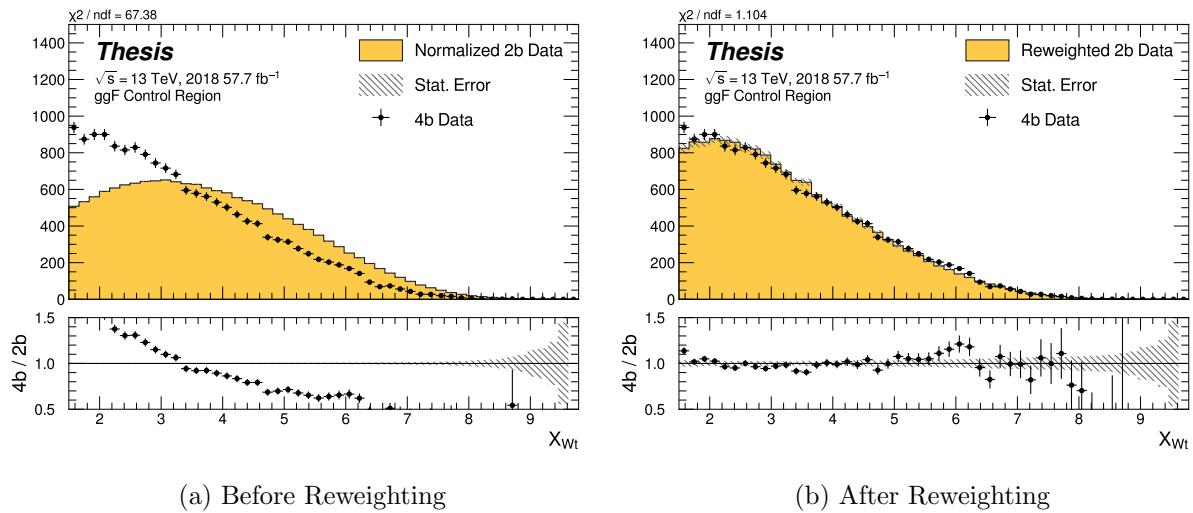


Figure 8.27: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Control Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied.

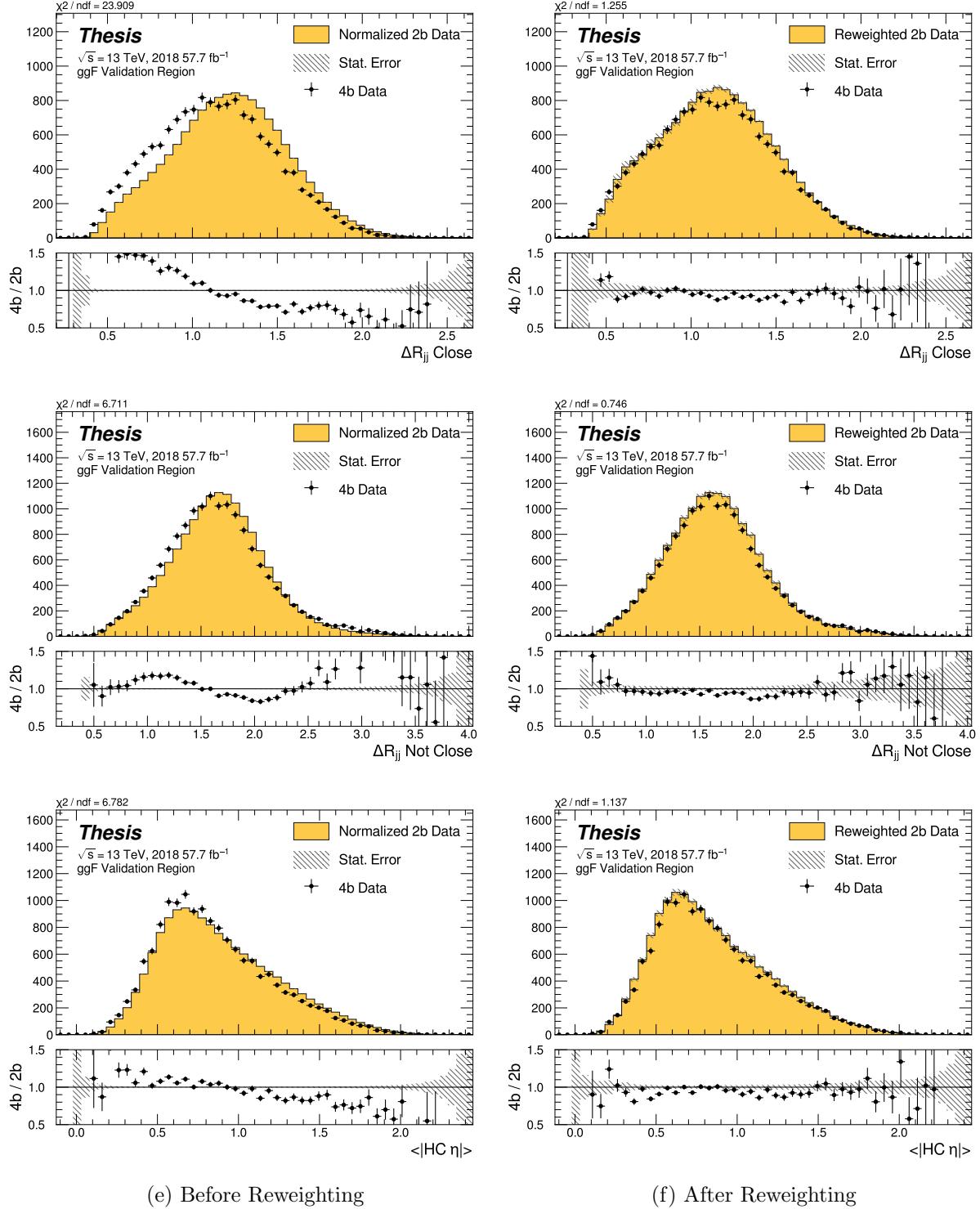


Figure 8.28: **Non-resonant Search (4b):** Distributions of ΔR between the closest Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.

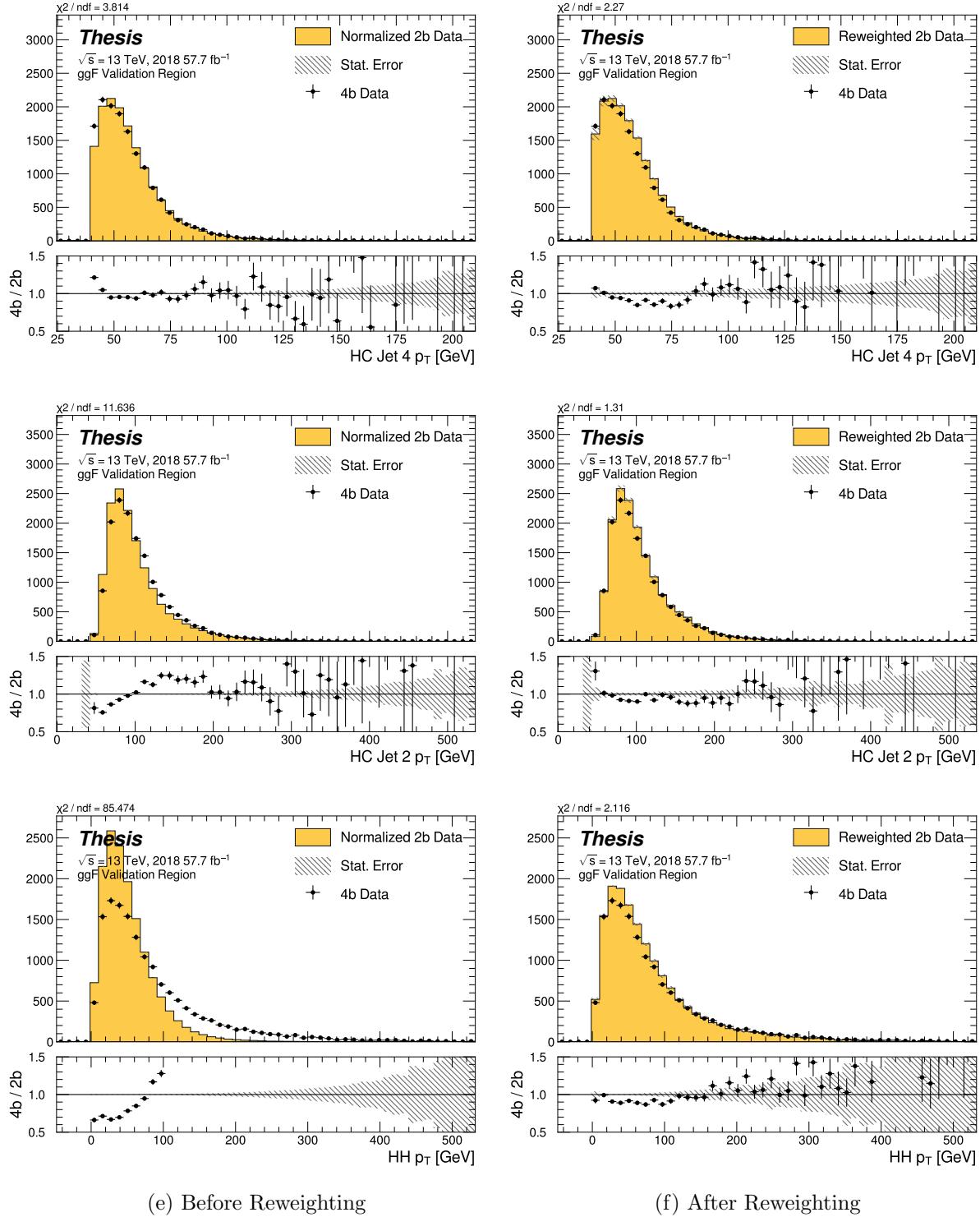


Figure 8.29: **Non-resonant Search (4b):** Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.

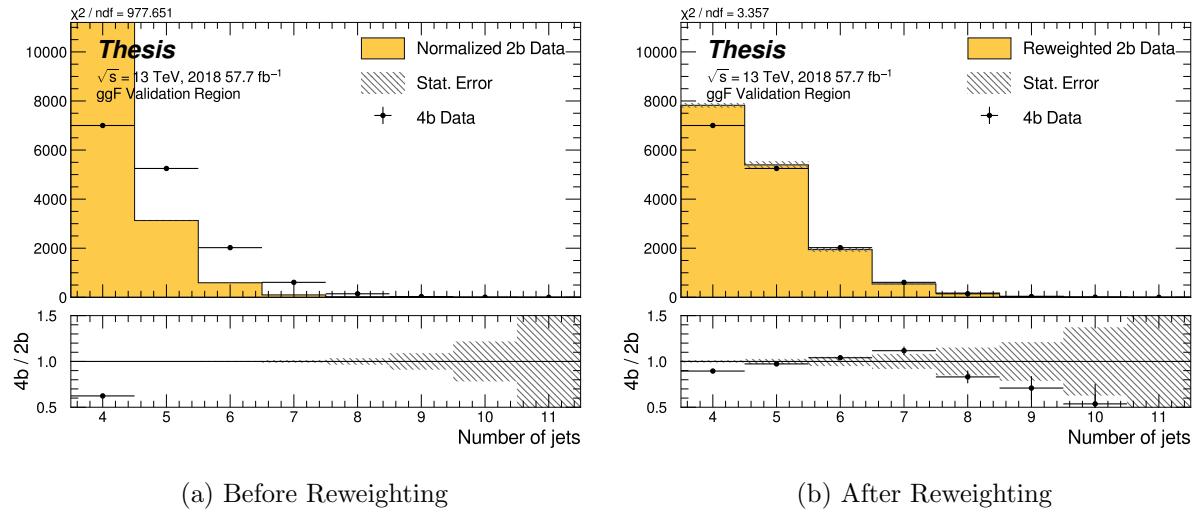


Figure 8.30: **Non-resonant Search (4b):** Distributions of the number of jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs candidates.

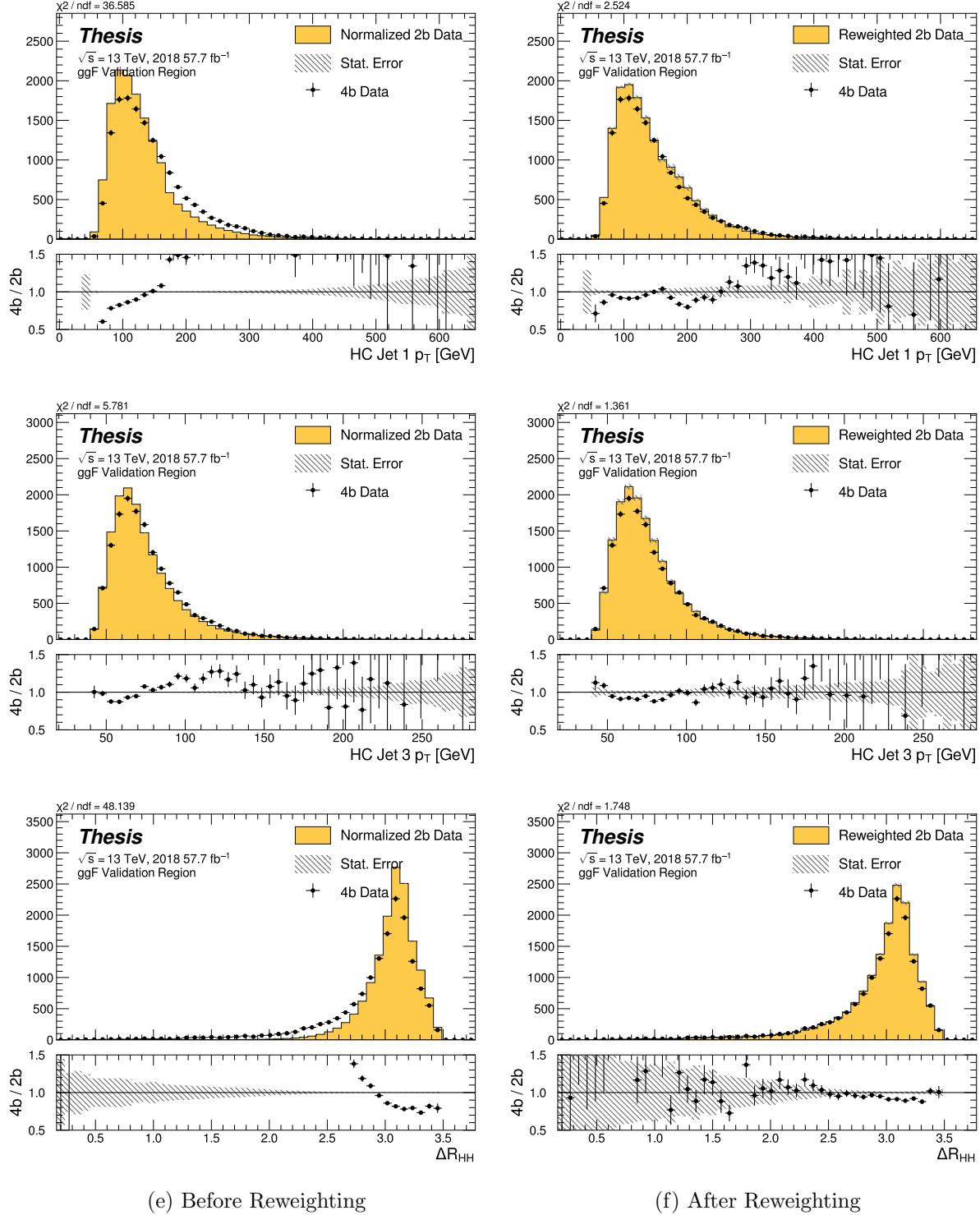


Figure 8.31: **Non-resonant Search (4b):** Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.

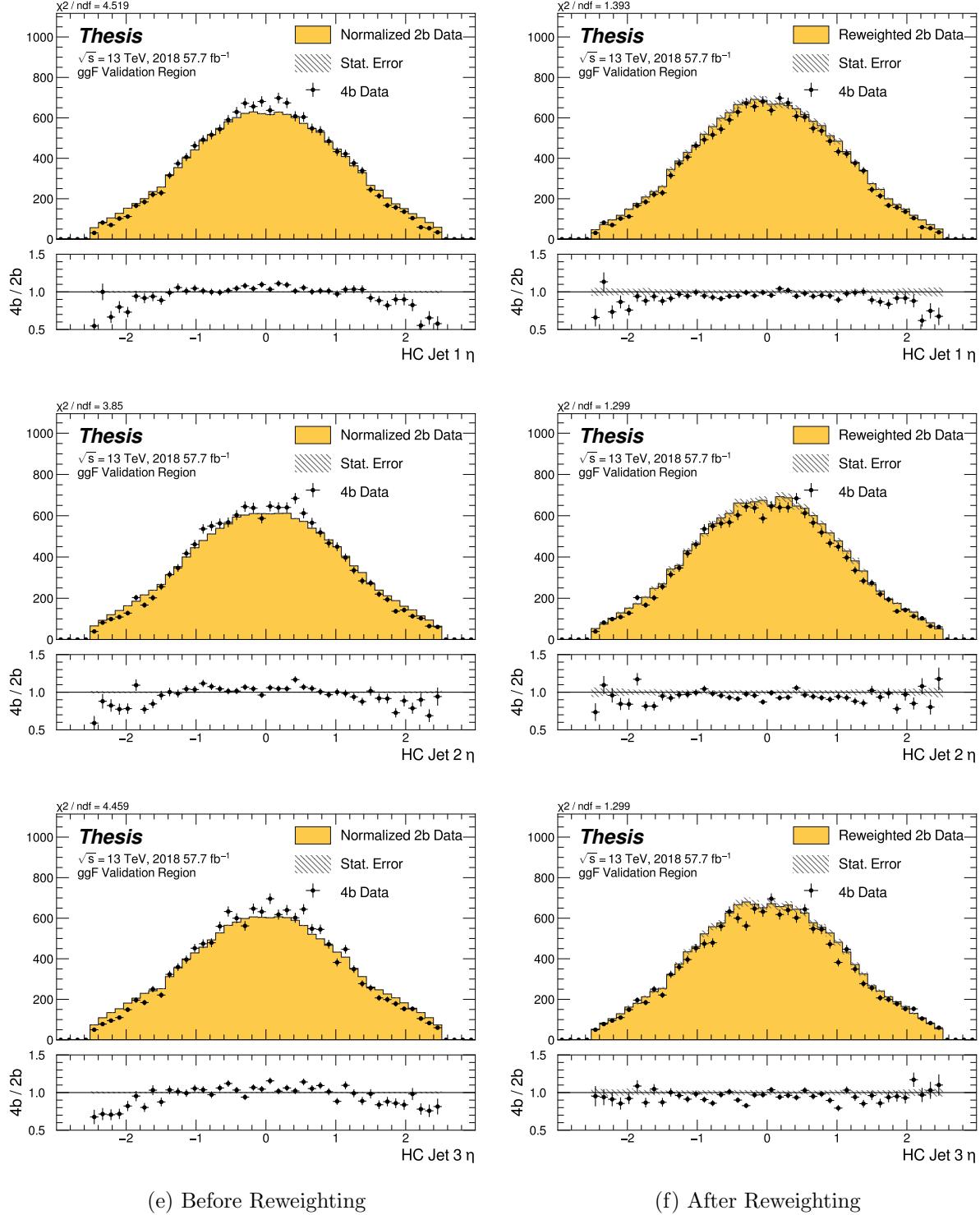


Figure 8.32: **Non-resonant Search (4b):** Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.

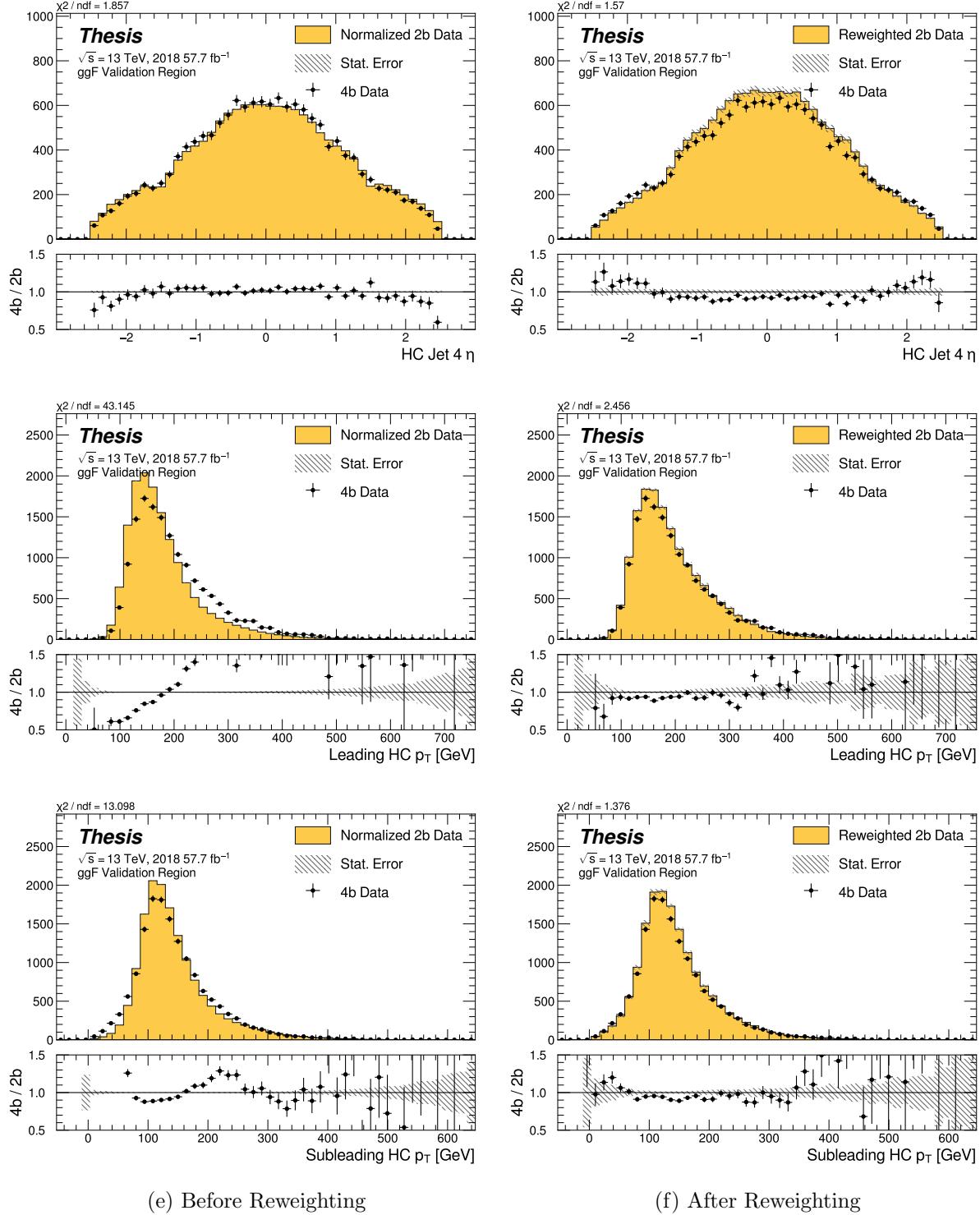


Figure 8.33: **Non-resonant Search (4b):** Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.

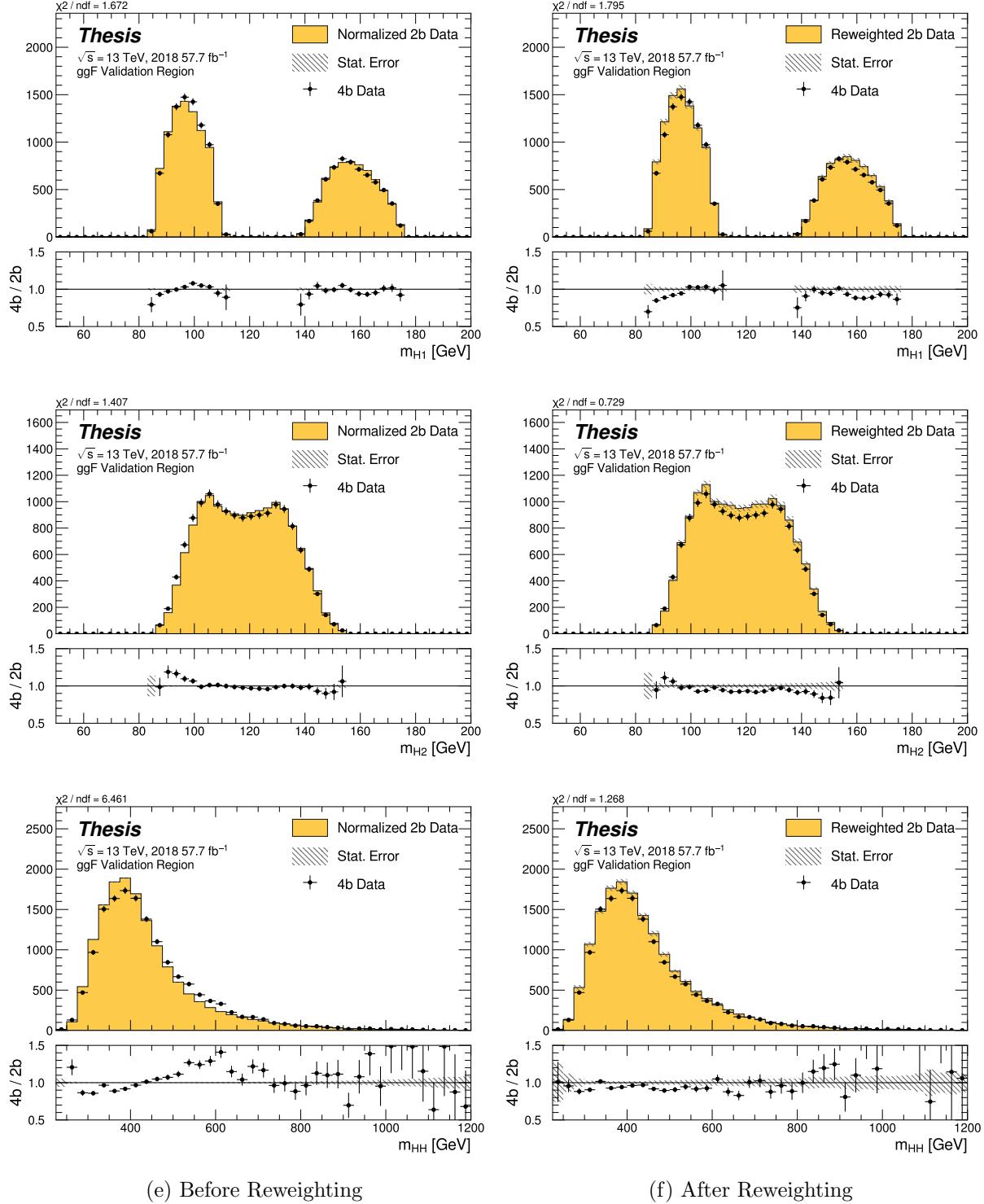


Figure 8.34: **Non-resonant Search (4b):** Distributions of mass of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.

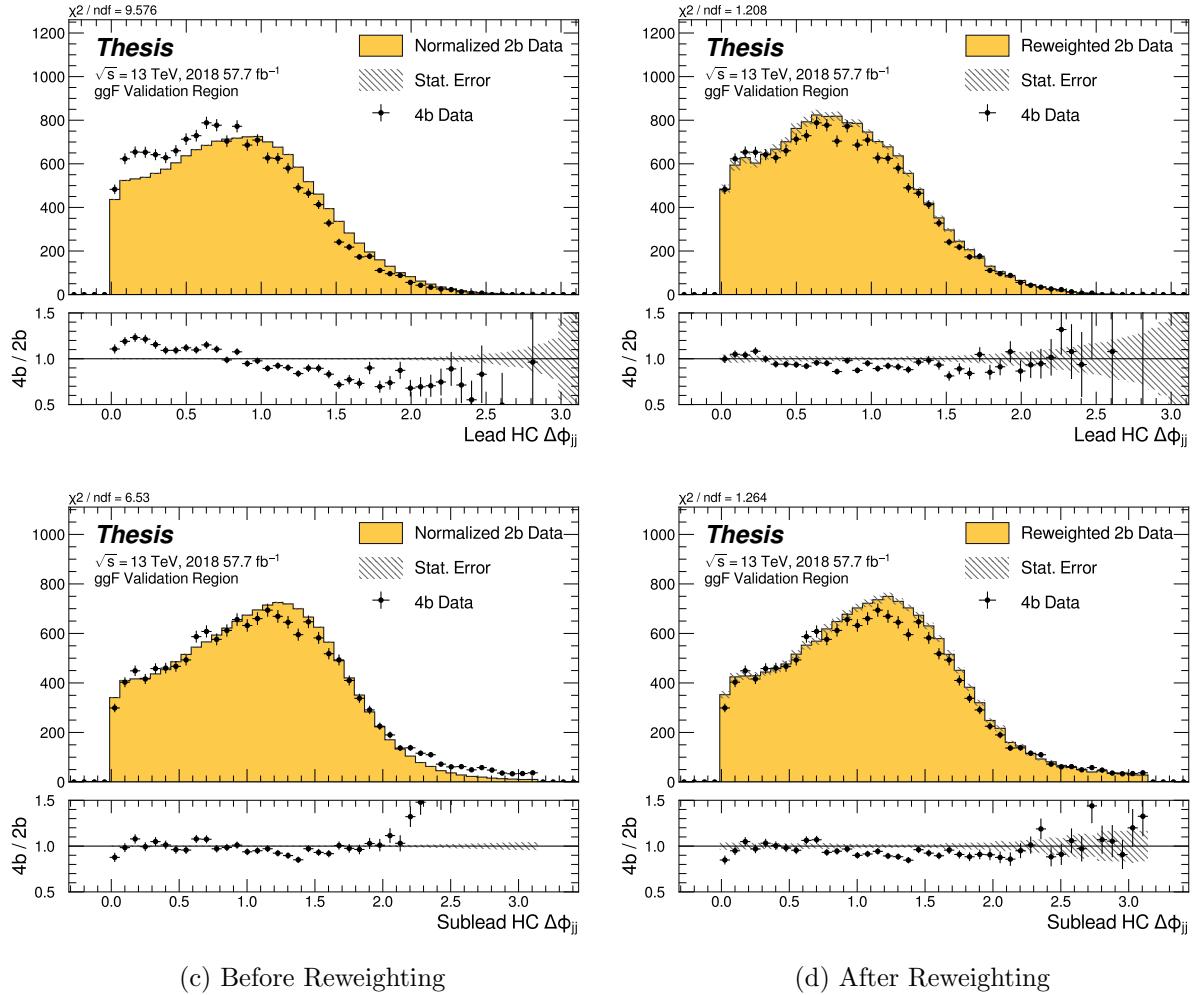


Figure 8.35: **Non-resonant Search (4b):** Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region.

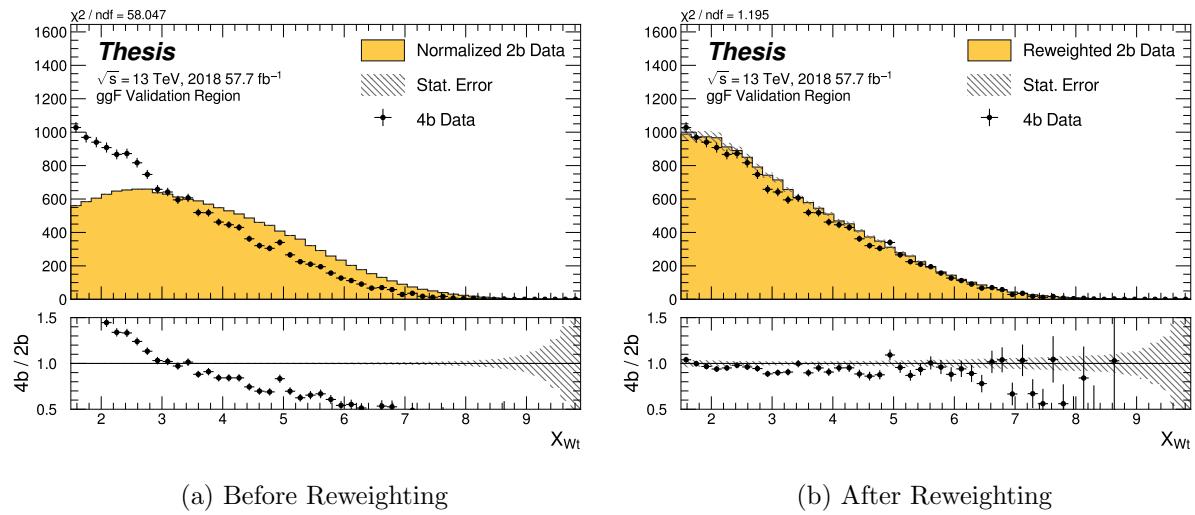


Figure 8.36: **Non-resonant Search (4b):** Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 4b Validation Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied.

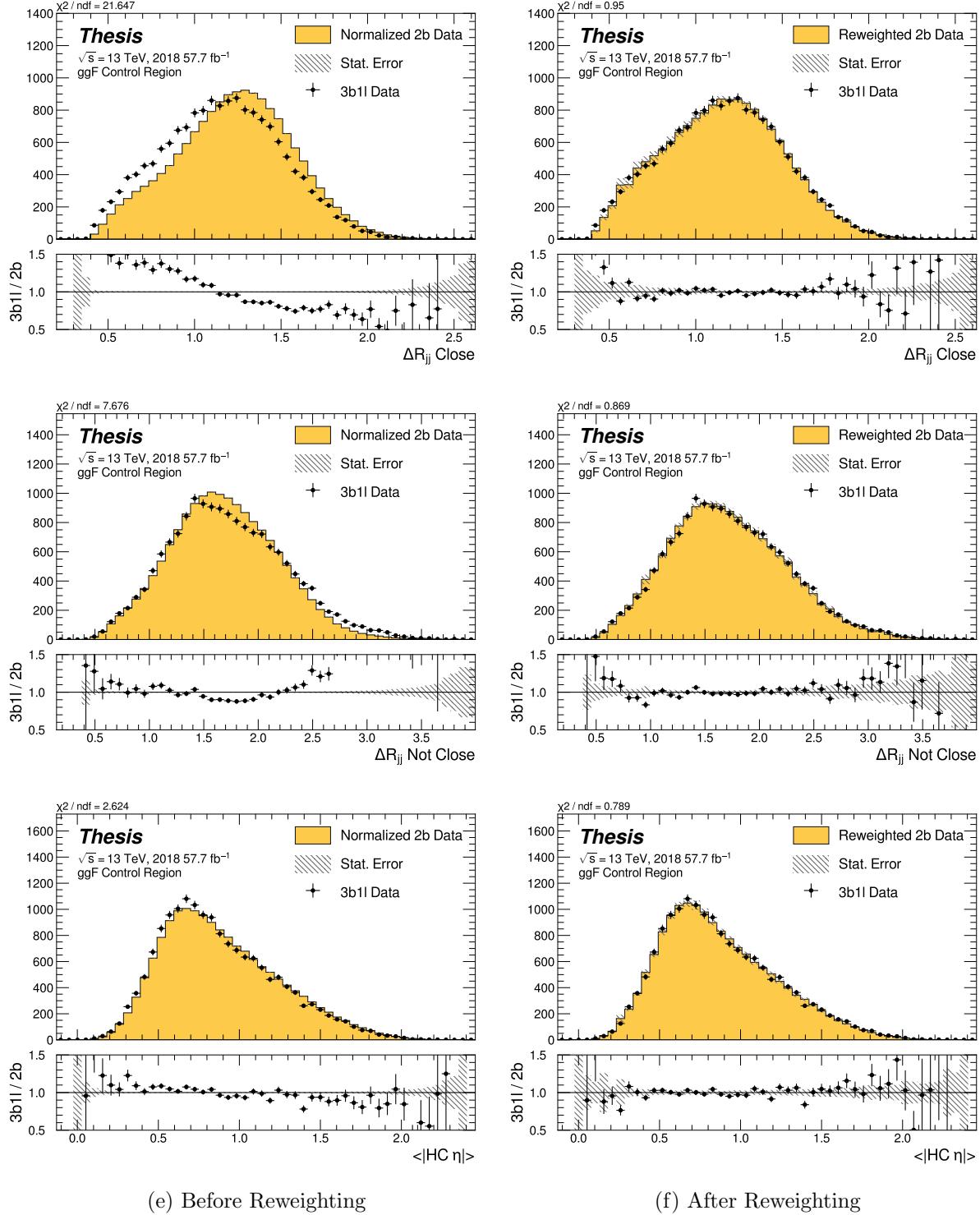


Figure 8.37: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l):** Distributions of ΔR between the closest Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.

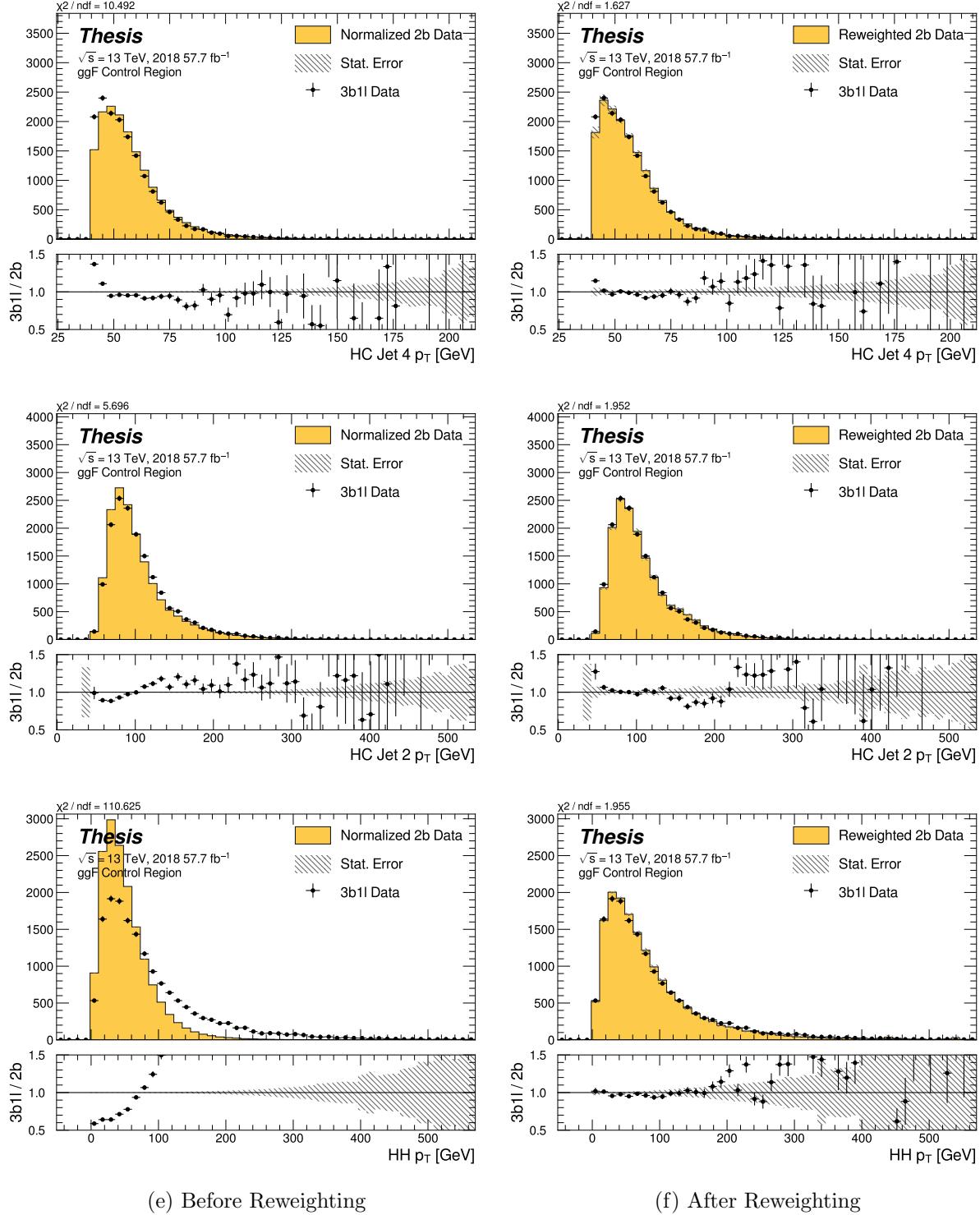


Figure 8.38: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l):** Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.

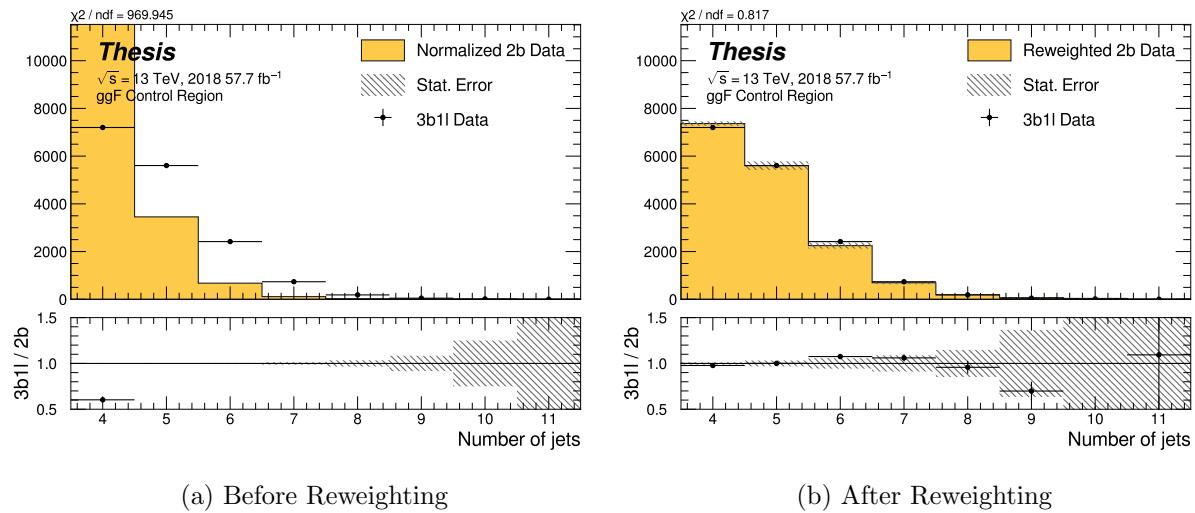


Figure 8.39: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l)**: Distributions of the number of jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs candidates.

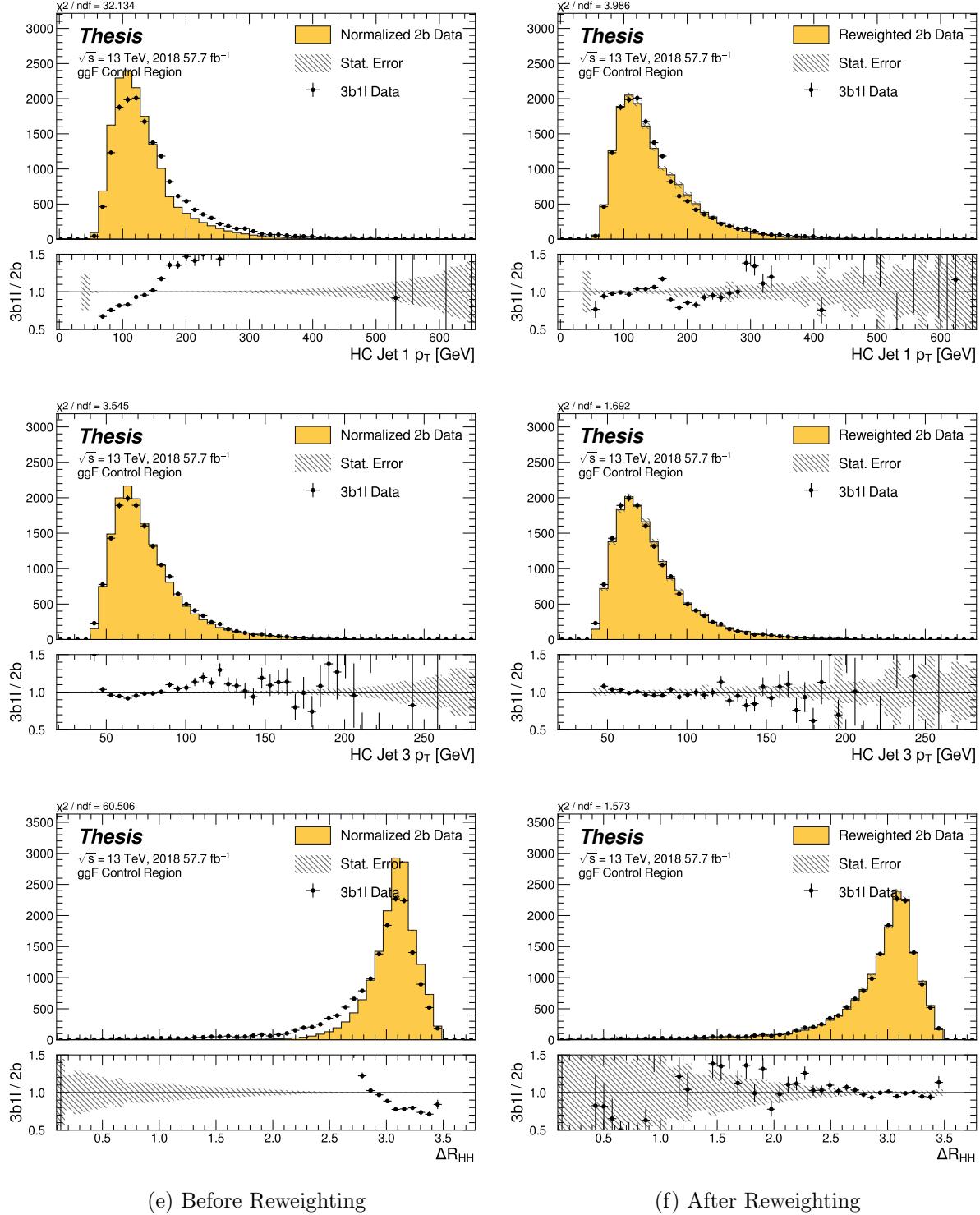


Figure 8.40: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l):** Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.

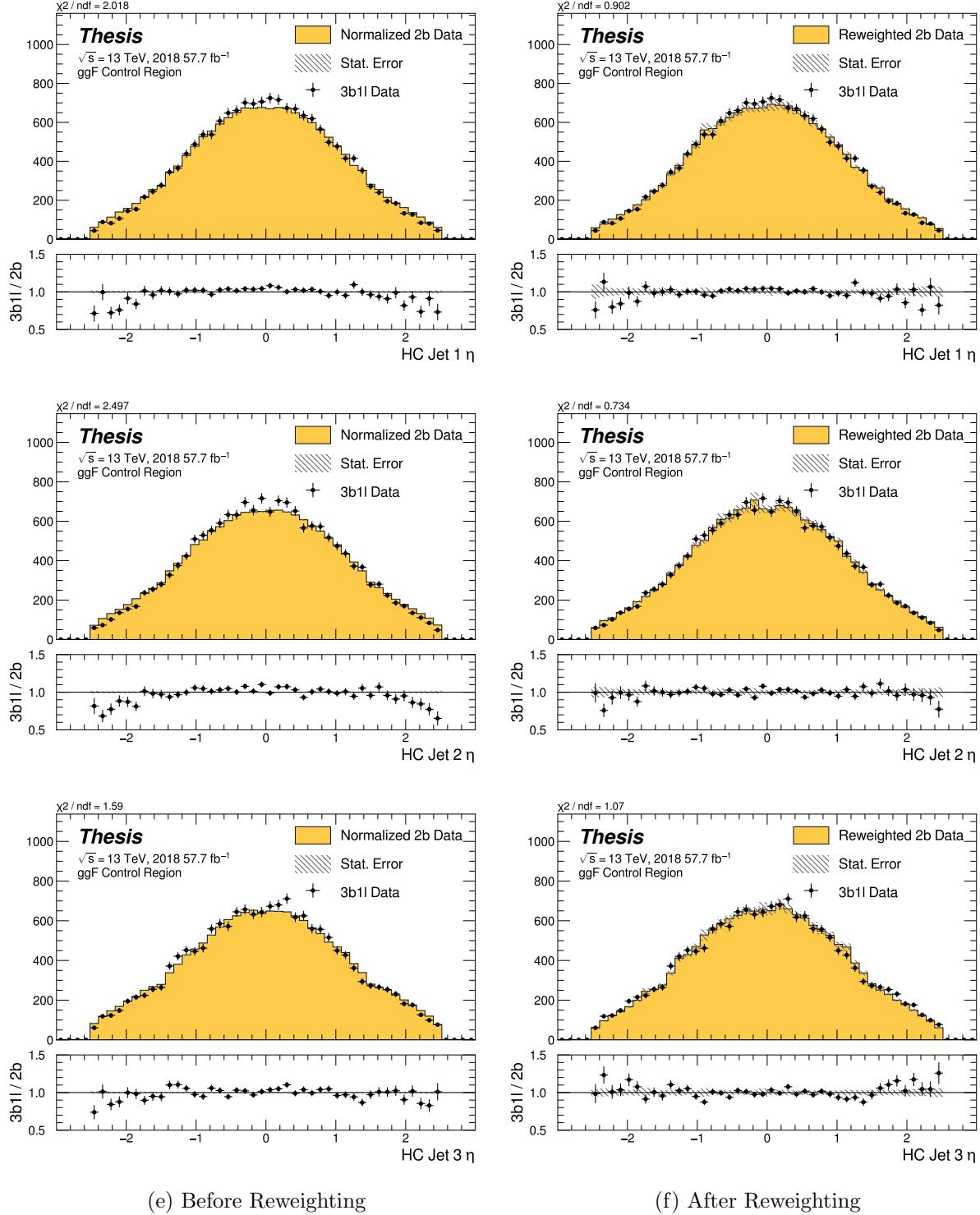


Figure 8.41: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l):** Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.

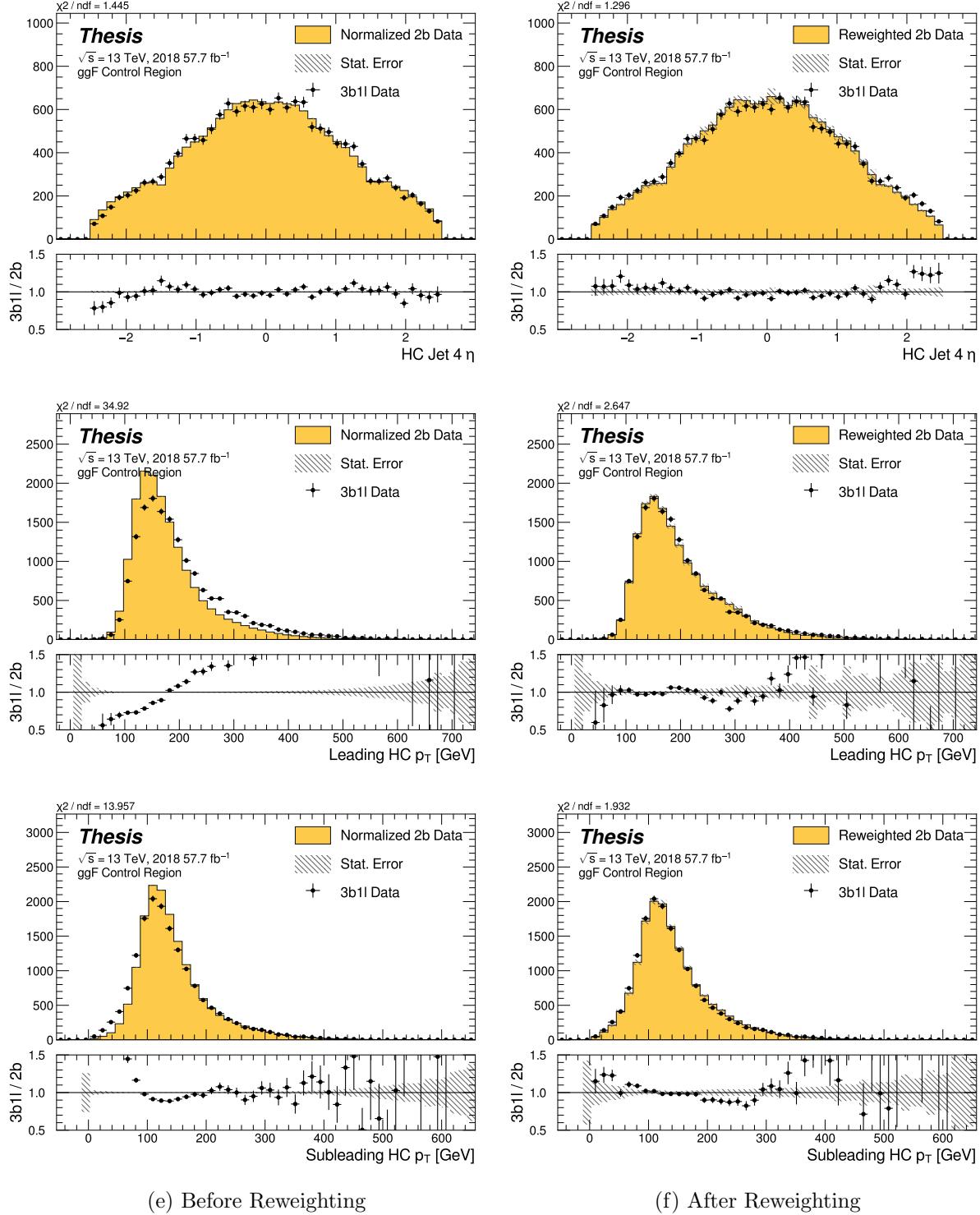


Figure 8.42: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l):** Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.

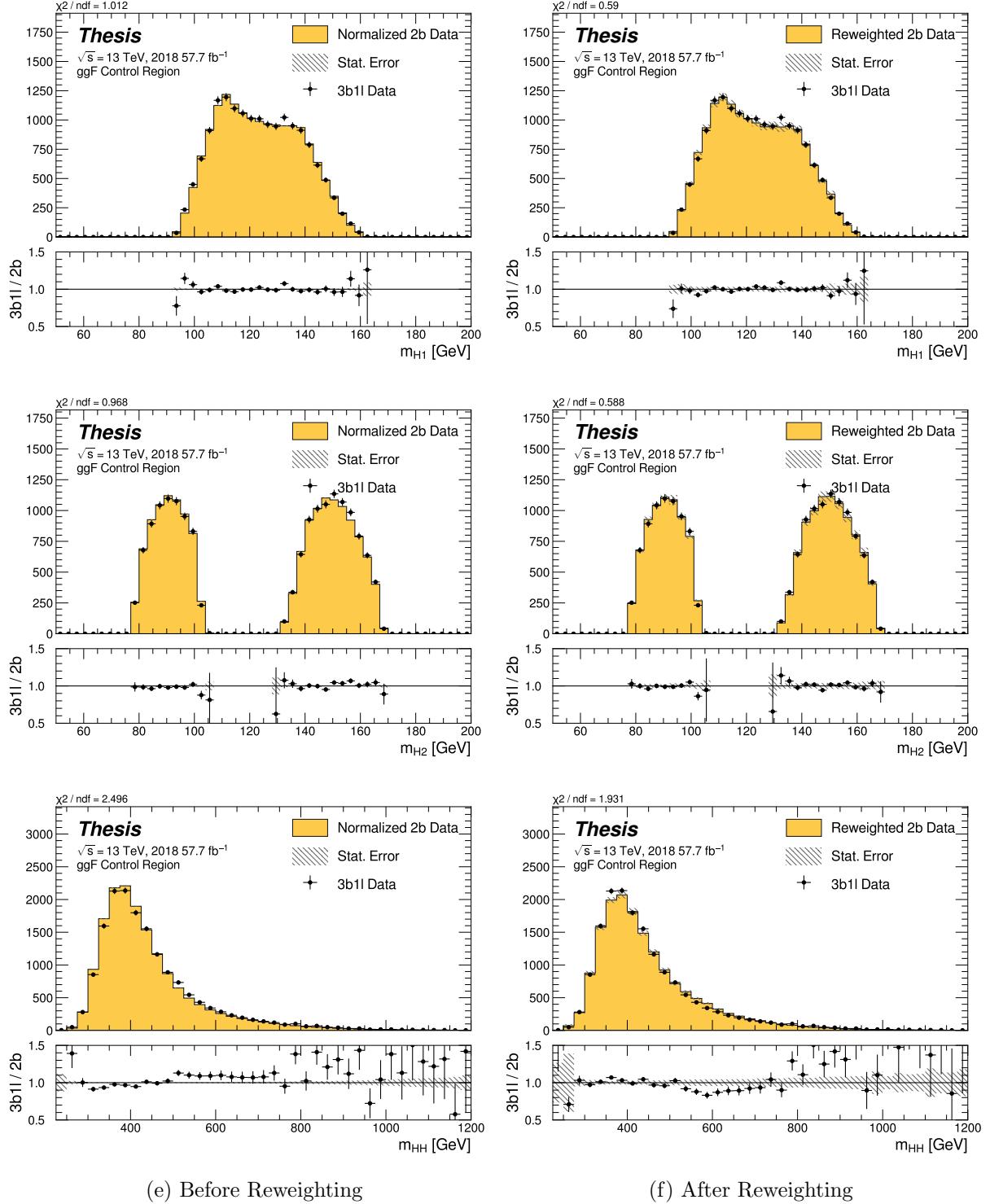


Figure 8.43: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l):** Distributions of mass of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.

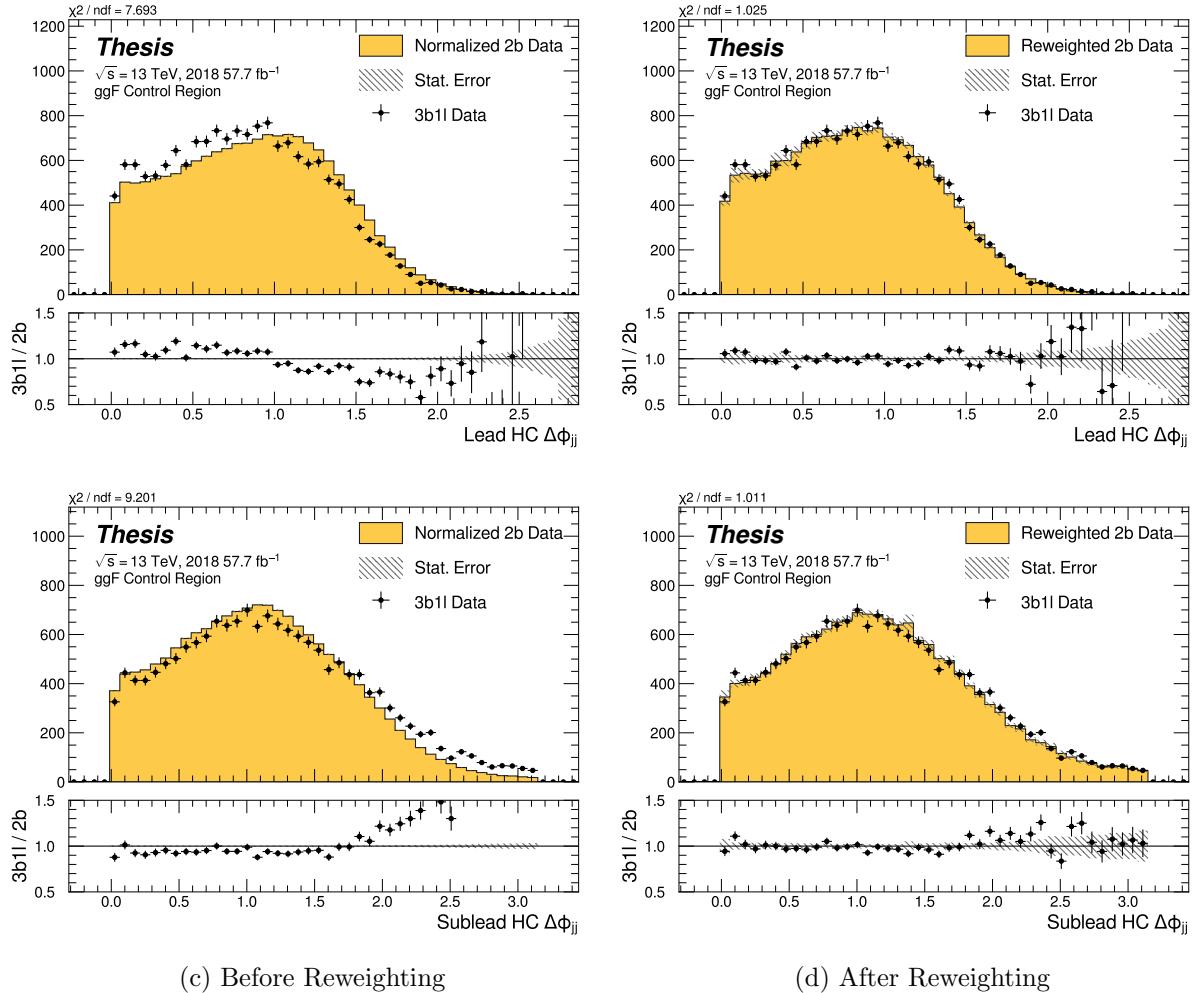


Figure 8.44: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l):** Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region.

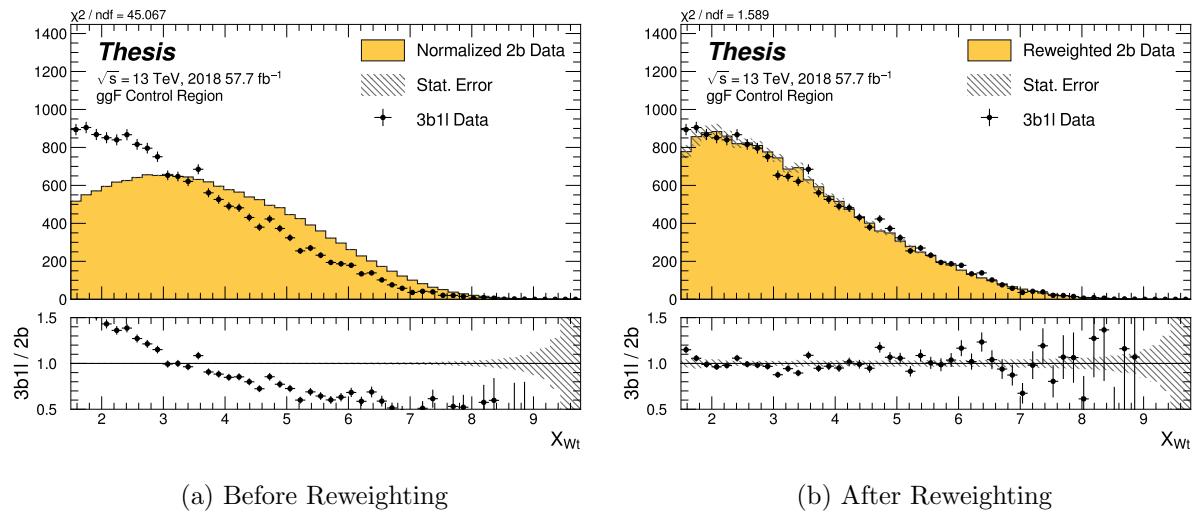


Figure 8.45: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l):** Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Control Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied.

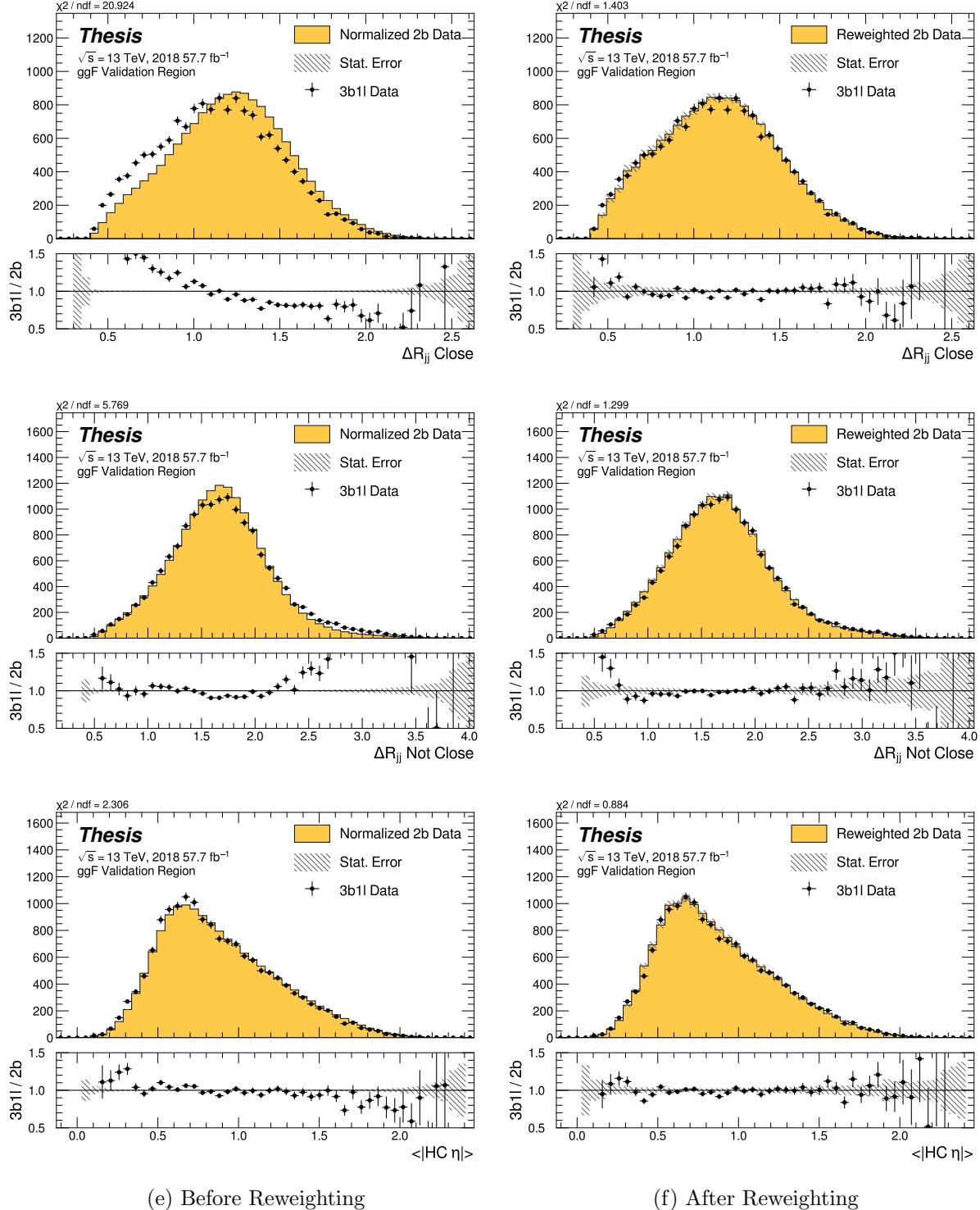


Figure 8.46: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l):** Distributions of ΔR between the closest Higgs Candidate jets, ΔR between the other two, and average absolute value of HC jet η before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.

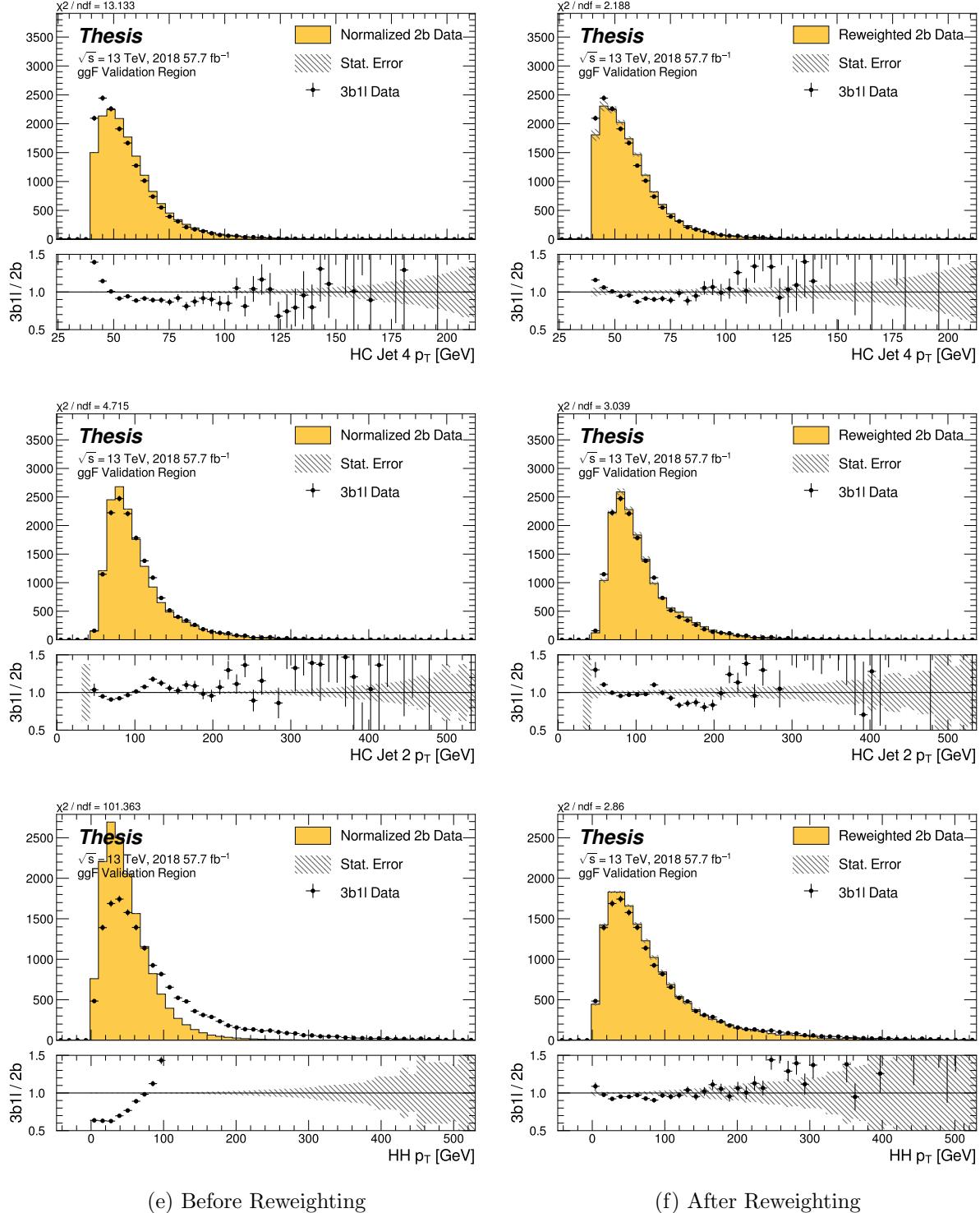


Figure 8.47: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l):** Distributions of p_T of the 2nd and 4th leading Higgs Candidate jets and the p_T of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.

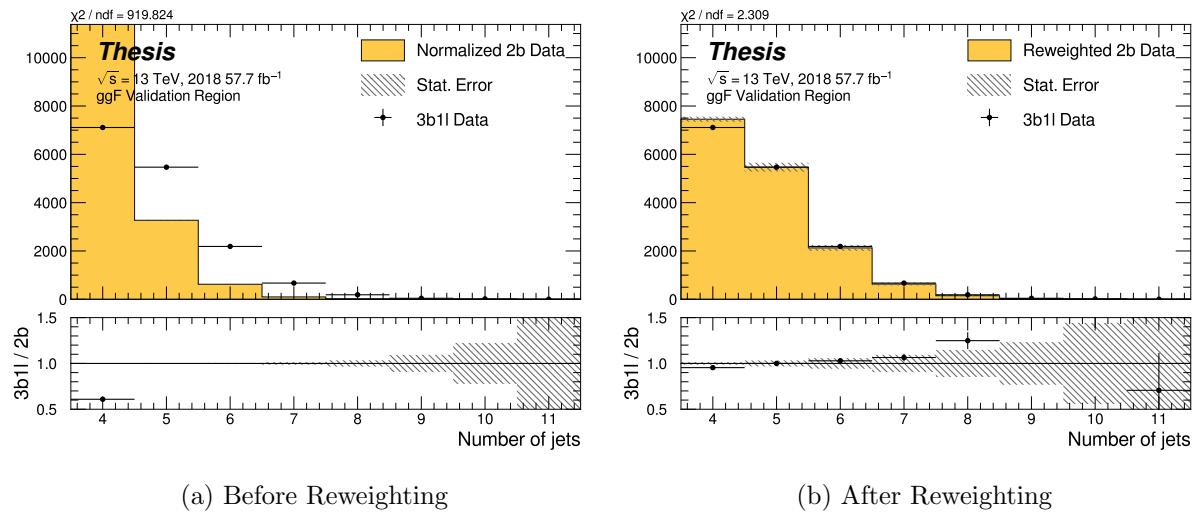


Figure 8.48: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l)**: Distributions of the number of jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region. A minimum of 4 jets is required in each event in order to form Higgs candidates.

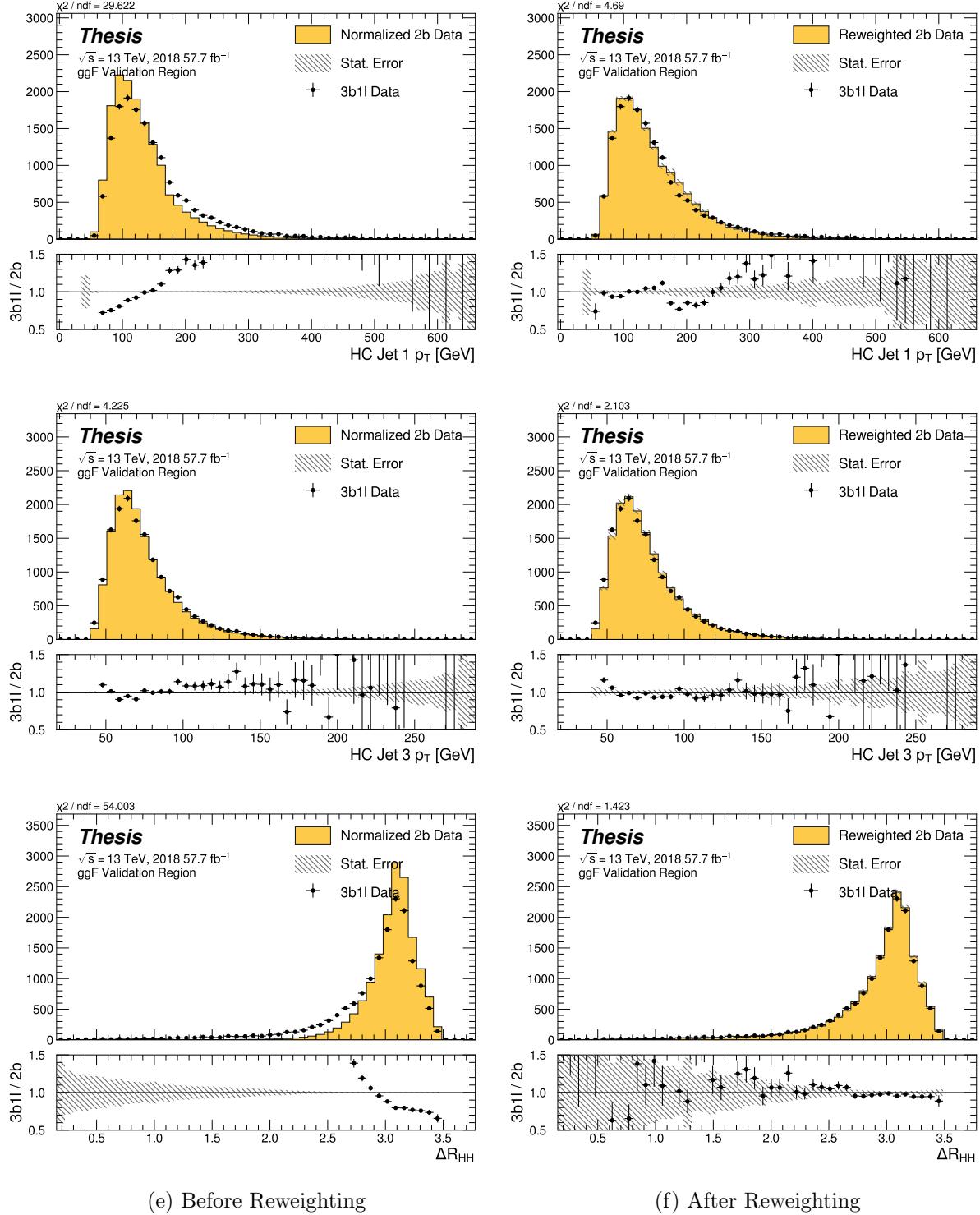


Figure 8.49: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l):** Distributions of p_T of the 1st and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets and ΔR between Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.

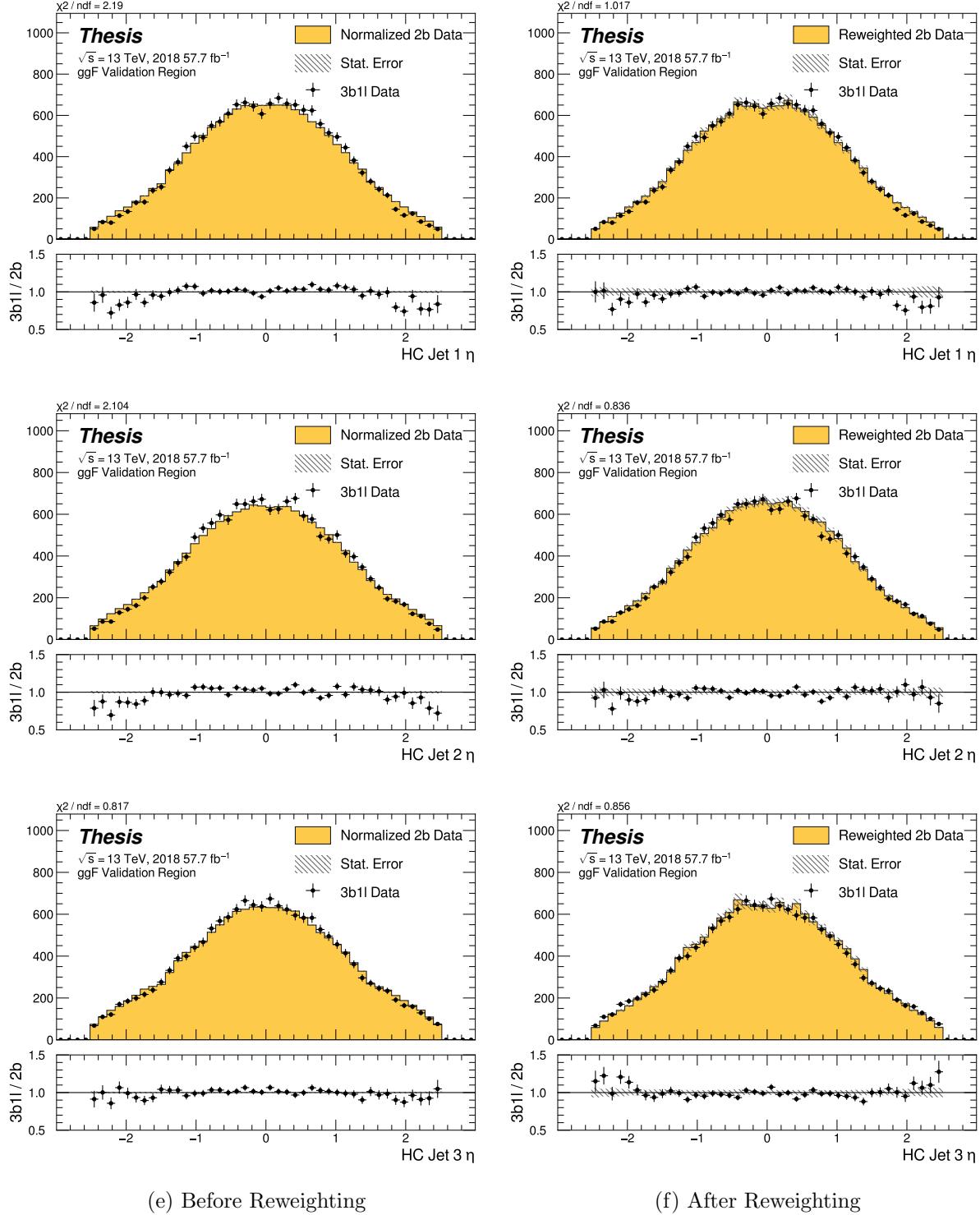


Figure 8.50: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l):** Distributions of η of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd leading Higgs Candidate jets before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.

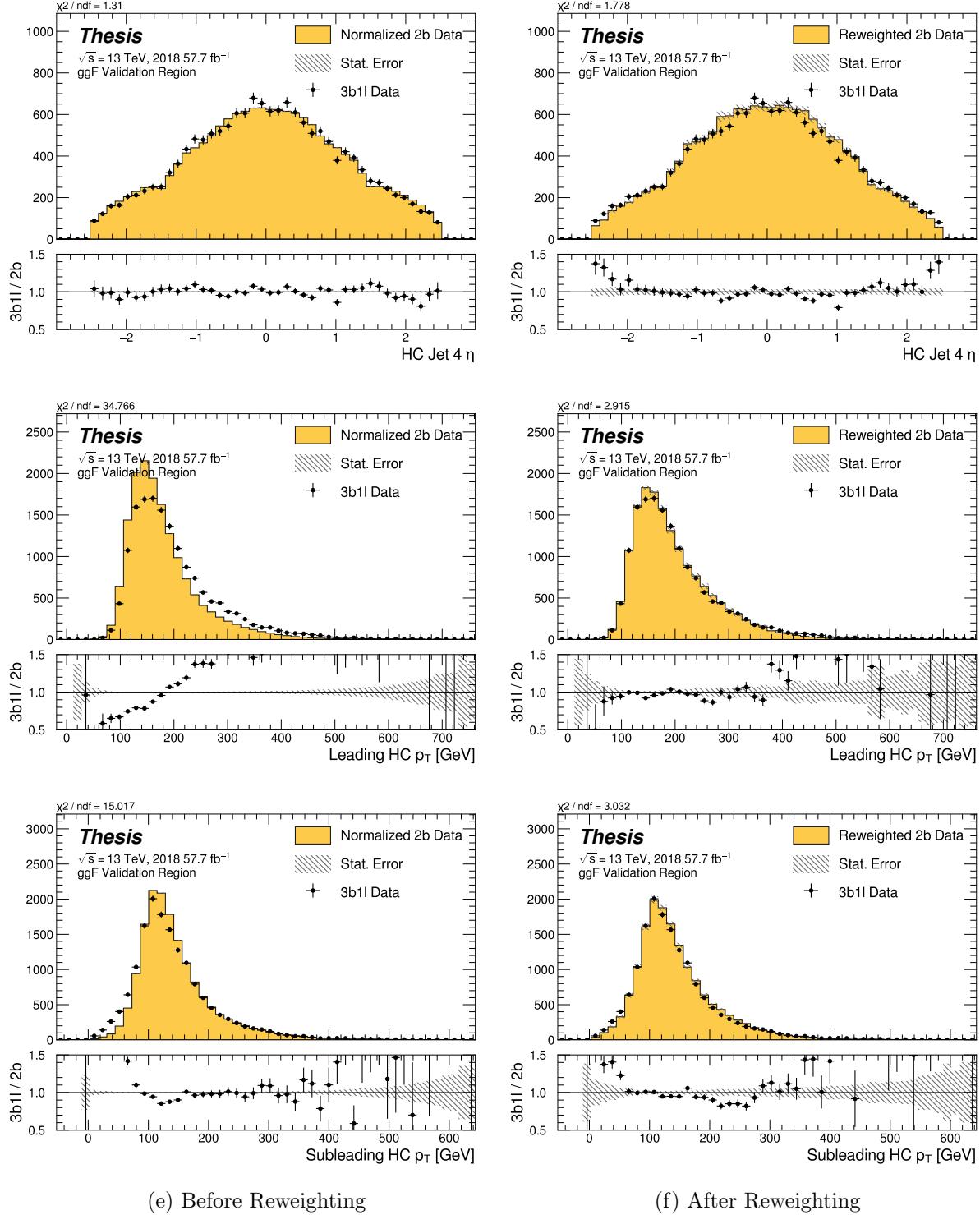


Figure 8.51: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l):** Distributions of η of the 4th leading Higgs Candidate jet and the p_T of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.

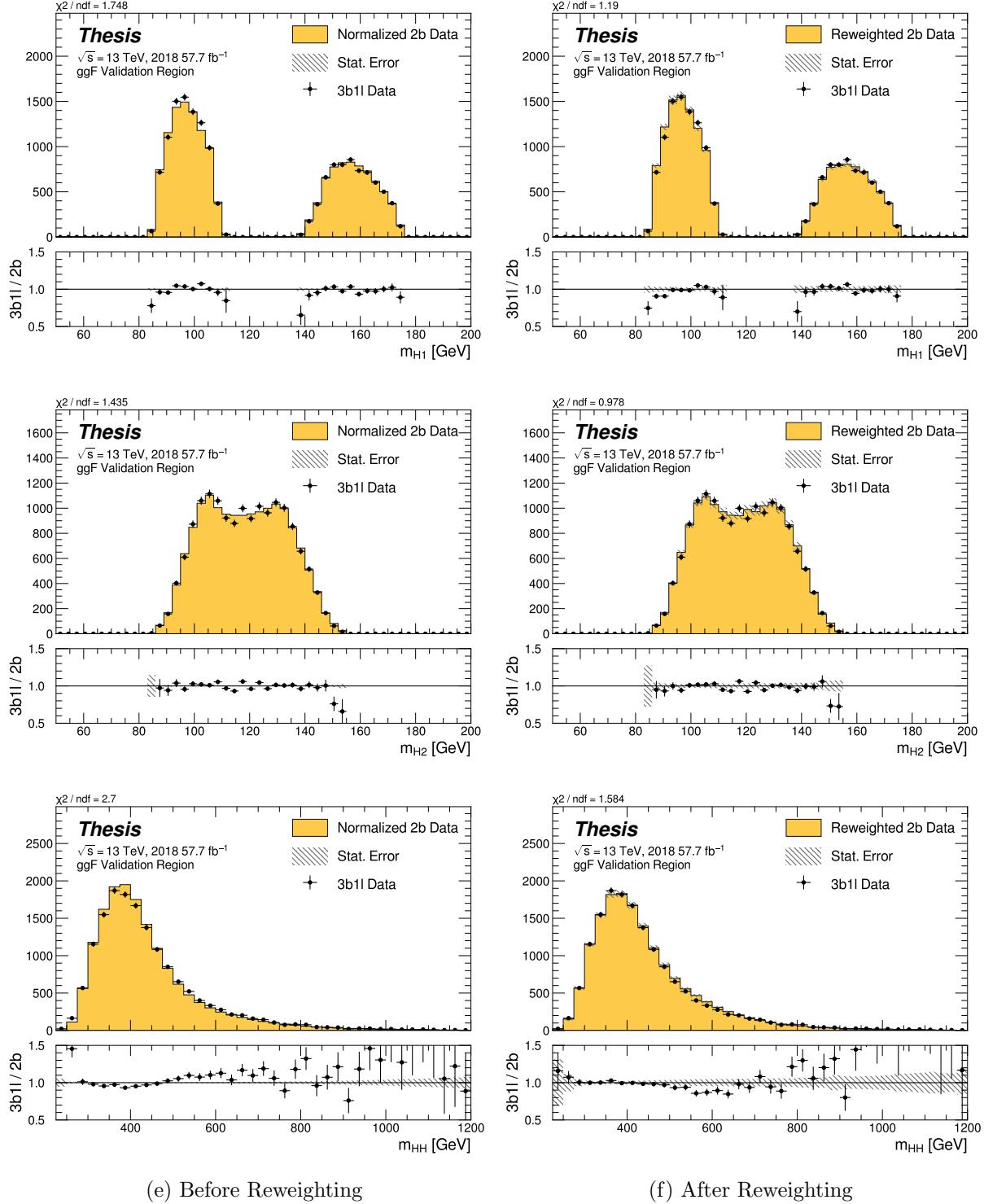


Figure 8.52: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l):** Distributions of mass of the leading and subleading Higgs candidates and of the di-Higgs system before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.

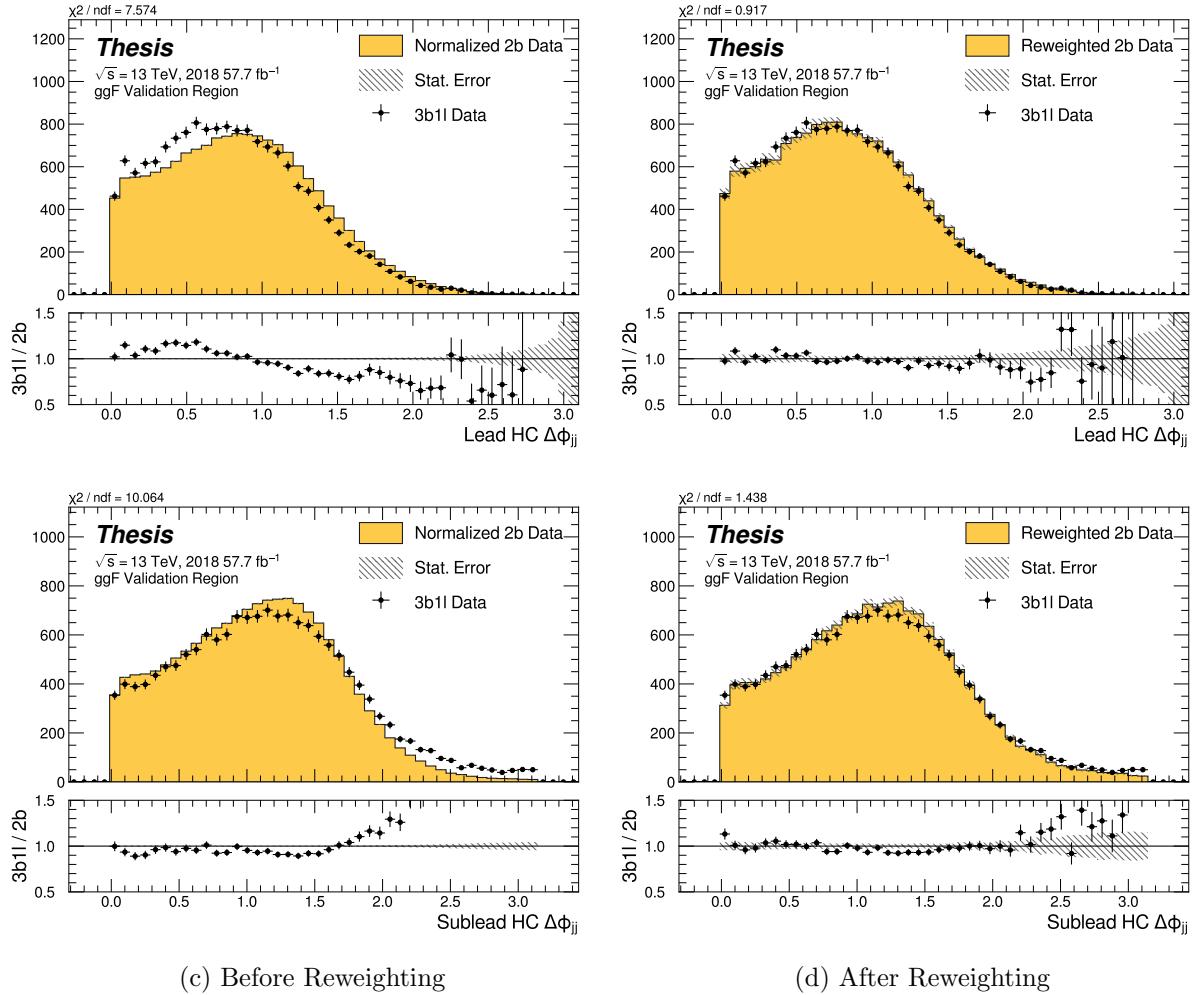


Figure 8.53: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l):** Distributions of $\Delta\phi$ between jets in the leading and subleading Higgs candidates before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region.

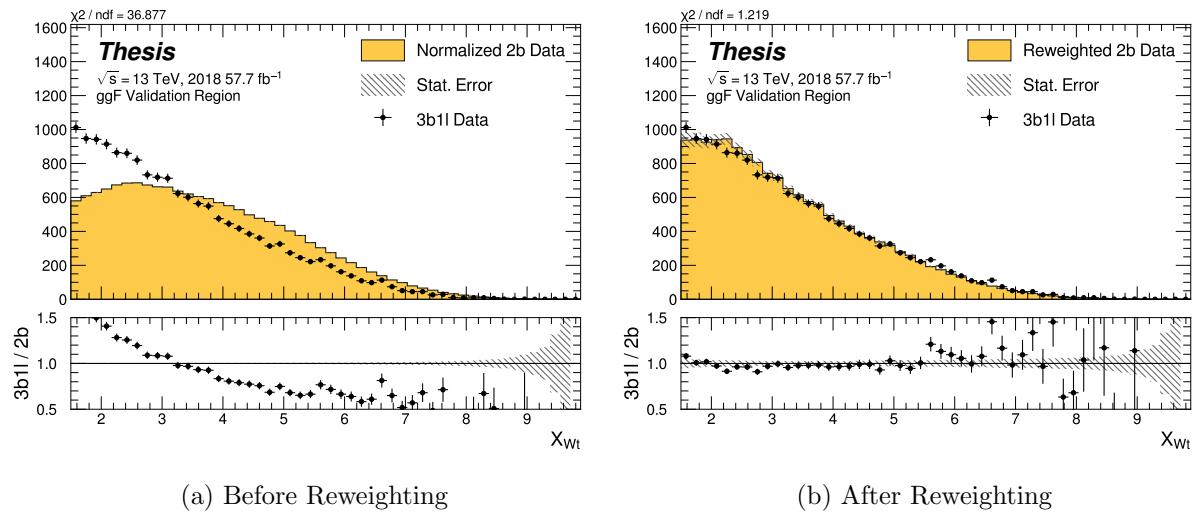


Figure 8.54: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l):** Distributions of the top veto variable, X_{Wt} , before (left) and after (right) CR derived reweighting for the 2018 3b1l Validation Region. Reweighting is done after the cut on this variable is applied.

2350

Chapter 9

2351

UNCERTAINTIES AND VALIDATION

2352 A variety of uncertainties are assigned to account for known biases in the underlying
 2353 methods, calibrations, and objects used for this analysis. The largest such uncertainty is
 2354 associated with the kinematic bias inherent in deriving the background estimate outside of
 2355 the signal region. However, a statistical biasing of this same estimate also has a significant
 2356 impact. Additionally, due to the use of Monte Carlo for signal modelling and b -tagging
 2357 calibration, uncertainties related to mis-modelings in simulation must also be accounted for.
 2358 Note that the results for the non-resonant analysis presented here are preliminary and only
 2359 include background systematic, such that the discussion of the signal systematics *only* applies
 2360 for the resonant search. However, these background systematics are expected to be by far
 2361 the dominant uncertainties.

2362 **9.1 Statistical Uncertainties and Bootstrapping**

2363 There are two components to the statistical error for the neural network background estimate.
 2364 The first is standard Poisson error, i.e., a given bin, i , in the background histogram has value
 2365 $n_i = \sum_{j \in i} w_j$, where w_j is the weight for an event j which falls in bin i . Standard techniques
 2366 then result in statistical error $\delta n_i = \sqrt{\sum_{j \in i} w_j^2}$, which reduces to the familiar \sqrt{N} Poisson error
 2367 when all w_j are equal to 1.

2368 However, this procedure does not take into account the statistical uncertainty on the
 2369 w_j due to the finite training dataset. Due to the large size difference between the two tag
 2370 and four tag datasets, it is the statistical uncertainty due to the four tag training data that
 2371 dominates that on the background. A standard method for estimating this uncertainty is the
 2372 bootstrap resampling technique [107]. Conceptually, a set of statistically equivalent sets is

2373 constructed by sampling with replacement from the original training set. The reweighting
2374 network is then trained on each of these separately, resulting in a set of statistically equivalent
2375 background estimates. Each of these sets is below referred to as a replica.

2376 In practice, as the original training set is large, the resampling procedure is able to
2377 be simplified through the relation $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \text{Binomial}(n, 1/n) = \text{Poisson}(1)$, which dictates that
2378 sampling with replacement is approximately equivalent to applying a randomly distributed
2379 integer weight to each event, drawn from a Poisson distribution with a mean of 1.

2380 Though the network configuration itself is the same for each bootstrap training, the
2381 network initialization is allowed to vary. It should therefore be noted that the bootstrap
2382 uncertainties implicitly capture the uncertainty due to this variation in addition to the
2383 previously mentioned training set variation.

2384 The variation from this bootstrapping procedure is used to assign a bin-by-bin uncertainty
2385 which is treated as a statistical uncertainty in the fit. Due to practical constraints, a
2386 procedure for approximating the full bootstrap error band is developed which demonstrates
2387 good agreement with the full bootstrap uncertainty. This procedure is described below.

2388 9.1.1 Calculating the Bootstrap Error Band

2389 The standard procedure to calculate the bootstrap uncertainty would proceed as follows: first,
2390 each network trained on each bootstrap replica dataset would be used to produce a histogram
2391 in the variable of interest. This would result in a set of replica histograms (e.g. for 100
2392 bootstrap replicas, 100 histograms would be created). The nominal estimate would then be
2393 the mean of bin values across these replica histograms, with errors set by the corresponding
2394 standard deviation.

2395 In practice, such an approach is inflexible and demanding both in computation and in
2396 storage, in so far as we would like to produce histograms in many variables, with a variety
2397 of different cuts and binnings. This motivates a derivation based on event-level quantities.
2398 However, due to non-trivial correlations between replica weights, simple linear propagation of
2399 event weight variation is not correct.

2400 We therefore adopt an approach which has been empirically found to produce results
 2401 (for this analysis) in line with those produced by generating all of the histograms, as in the
 2402 standard procedure. This approach is described below. Note that, for robustness to outliers
 2403 and weight distribution asymmetry, the median and interquartile range (IQR) are used for
 2404 the central value and width respectively (as opposed to the mean and standard deviation).

2405 The components involved in the calculation have been mentioned in Chapter 8 and are as
 2406 follows:

- 2407 1. Replica weight (w_i): weight predicted for a given event by a network trained on replica
 2408 dataset i .
- 2409 2. Replica norm (α_i): normalization factor for replica i . This normalizes the reweighting
 2410 prediction of the network trained on replica dataset i to match the corresponding target
 2411 yield.
- 2412 3. Median weight (w_{med}): median weight for a given event across replica datasets, used
 2413 for the nominal estimate. Defined (for 100 bootstrap replicas) as

$$w_{med} \equiv \text{median}(\alpha_1 w_1, \dots, \alpha_{100} w_{100}) \quad (9.1)$$

- 2412 4. Normalization correction (α_{med}): normalization factor to match the predicted yield of
 2413 the median weights (w_{med}) to the target yield in the training region.

2414 As mentioned in Chapter 8, the *nominal estimate* is constructed from the set of median
 2415 weights and the normalization correction, i.e. $\alpha_{med} \cdot w_{med}$.

2416 For the bootstrap error band, a “varied” histogram is then generated by applying, for
 2417 each event, a weight equal to the median weight (with no normalization correction) plus half
 2418 the interquartile range of the replica weights: $w_{varied} = w_{med} + \frac{1}{2} \text{IQR}(w_1, \dots, w_{100})$.

2419 This varied histogram is scaled to match the yield of the nominal estimate. To account
 2420 for variation of the nominal estimate yield, a normalization variation is calculated from the

²⁴²¹ interquartile range of the replica norms: $\frac{1}{2} \text{IQR}(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_{100})$. This variation, multiplied into
²⁴²² the nominal estimate, is used to set a baseline for the varied histogram described above.

Denoting $H(\text{weights})$ as a histogram constructed from a given set of weights, $Y(\text{weights})$ as the predicted yield for a given set of weights, the final varied histogram is thus:

$$H(w_{med} + \frac{1}{2} \text{IQR}(w_1, \dots, w_{100})) \cdot \frac{Y(\alpha_{med} w_{med})}{Y(w_{med} + \frac{1}{2} \text{IQR}(w_1, \dots, w_{100}))} + \frac{1}{2} \text{IQR}(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_{100}) \cdot H(\alpha_{med} w_{med}) \quad (9.2)$$

²⁴²³ where the first term roughly describes the behavior of the bootstrap variation across the
²⁴²⁴ distribution of the variable of interest while the second term describes the normalization
²⁴²⁵ variation of the bootstrap replicas.

²⁴²⁶ The difference between the varied histogram and the nominal histogram is then taken to
²⁴²⁷ be the bootstrap statistical uncertainty on the nominal histogram.

²⁴²⁸ Figure 9.1 demonstrates how each of the components described above contribute to the
²⁴²⁹ uncertainty envelope for the non-resonant 2017 Control Region and compares this approximate
²⁴³⁰ band to the variation of histograms from individual bootstrap estimates. The error band
²⁴³¹ constructed from the above procedure is seen to provide a good description of the bootstrap
²⁴³² variation.

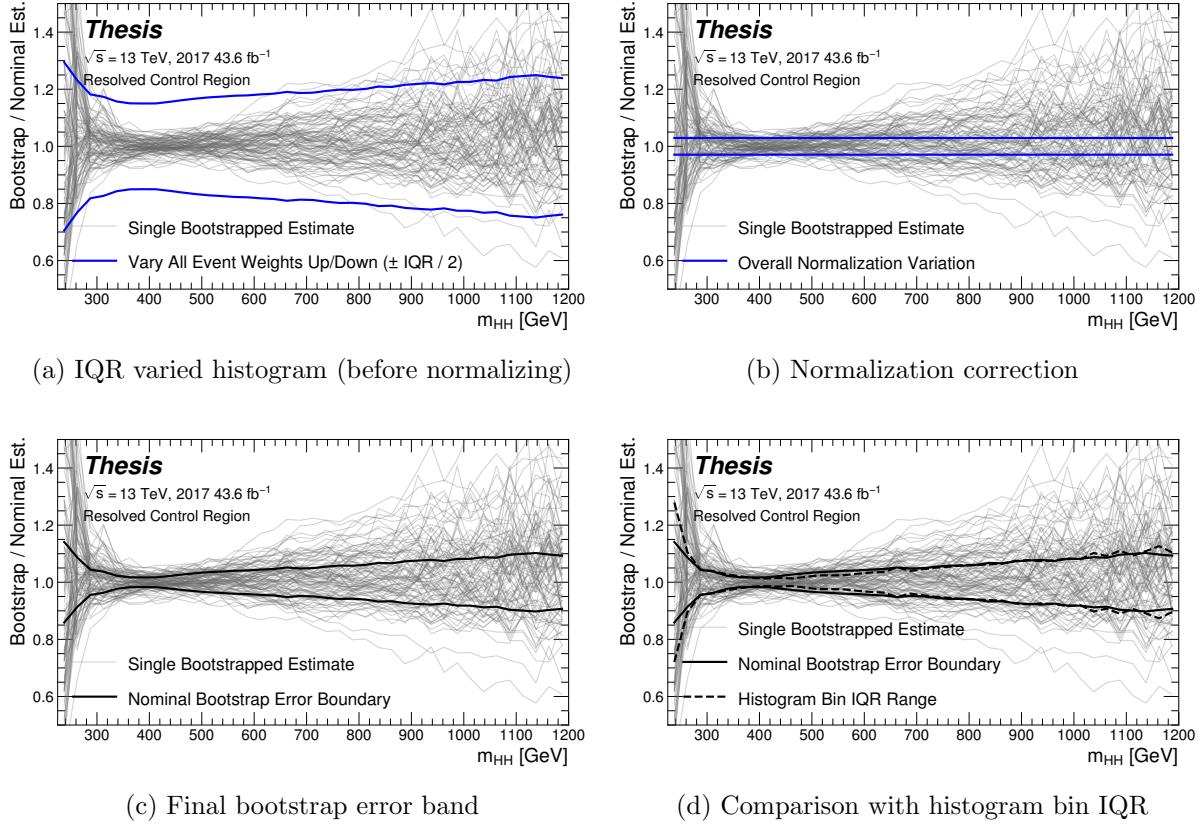


Figure 9.1: Illustration of the approximate bootstrap band procedure, shown as a ratio to the nominal estimate for the 2017 non-resonant background estimate. Each grey line is from the m_{HH} prediction for a single bootstrap training. Figure 9.1(a) shows the variation histograms constructed from median weight \pm the IQR of the replica weights. It can be seen that this captures the rough shape of the bootstrap envelope, but is not good estimate for the overall magnitude of the variation. Figure 9.1(b) demonstrates the applied normalization correction, and Figure 9.1(c) shows the final band (normalized Figure 9.1(a) + Figure 9.1(b)). Comparing this with the IQR variation for the prediction from each bootstrap in each bin in Figure 9.1(d), the approximate envelope describes a very similar variation.

2433 **9.2 Background Shape Uncertainties**

2434 To account for the systematic bias associated with deriving the reweighting function in the
2435 control region and extrapolating to the signal region, an alternative background model is
2436 derived in the validation region. Because of the fully data-driven nature of the background
2437 model, this is an uncertainty assessed on the full background. The alternative model and
2438 the baseline are consistent with the observed data in their training regions, and differences
2439 between the alternative and baseline models are used to define a shape uncertainty on the
2440 m_{HH} spectrum, with a two-sided uncertainty defined by symmetrizing the difference about
2441 the baseline.

2442 For the resonant analysis, this uncertainty is split into two components to allow for two
2443 independent variations of the m_{HH} spectrum: a low- H_T and a high- H_T component, where
2444 H_T is the scalar sum of the p_T of the four jets constituting the Higgs boson candidates, and
2445 serves as a proxy for m_{HH} , while avoiding introducing a sharp discontinuity. The boundary
2446 value is 300 GeV. The low- H_T shape uncertainty primarily affects the m_{HH} spectrum below
2447 400 GeV (close to the kinematic threshold) by up to around 5%, and the high- H_T uncertainty
2448 mainly m_{HH} above this by up to around 20% relative to nominal. These separate m_{HH}
2449 regimes are by design – the H_T split is introduced to prevent low mass bins from constraining
2450 the high mass uncertainty and vice-versa.

2451 This was the *status quo* shape uncertainty decomposition from the Early Run 2 analysis.
2452 A decomposition in terms of orthogonal polynomials, which would provide increased flexibility,
2453 was also evaluated. This study revealed that both decompositions are able to account for the
2454 systematic deviations between four tag data and the background estimate (evaluated in the
2455 kinematic validation region), and produce almost identical limits. The simpler *status quo*
2456 decomposition is therefore kept.

2457 For the non-resonant analysis, the quadrant nature of the background estimation leads to
2458 a natural breakdown of the nuisance parameters: quadrants are defined in the signal region
2459 along the same axes as those used for the control and validation region definitions. Variations

are then assessed in each of these signal region quadrants, corresponding to regions that are “closer to” and “further away from” the nominal and alternate estimate regions, fully leveraging the power of the two equivalent but systematically different estimates.

Figure 9.2 shows an example of the variation in each H_T region for the 2018 resonant analysis. Figure 9.3 shows the example quadrant variation for the 2018 $4b$ non-resonant analysis.

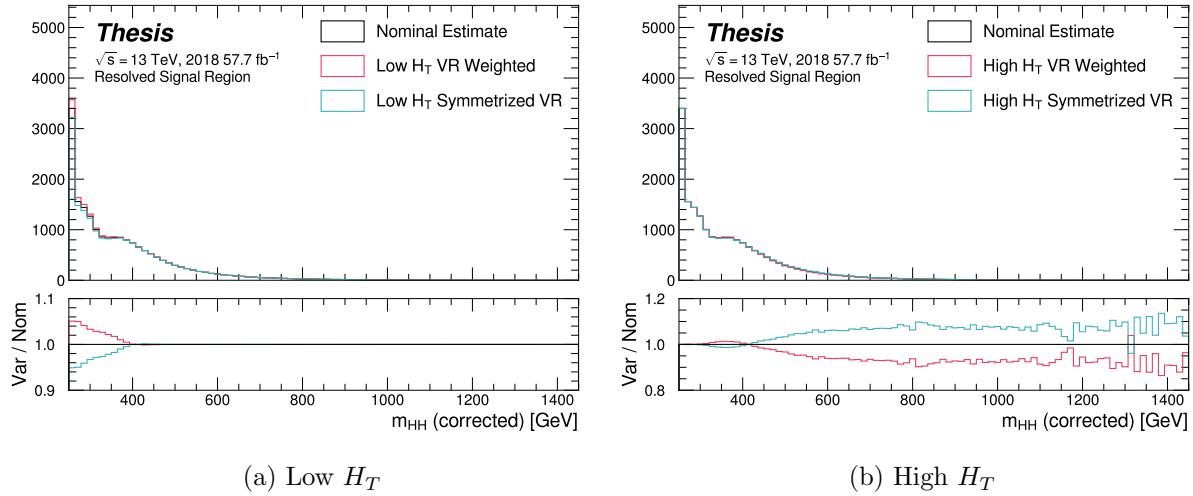
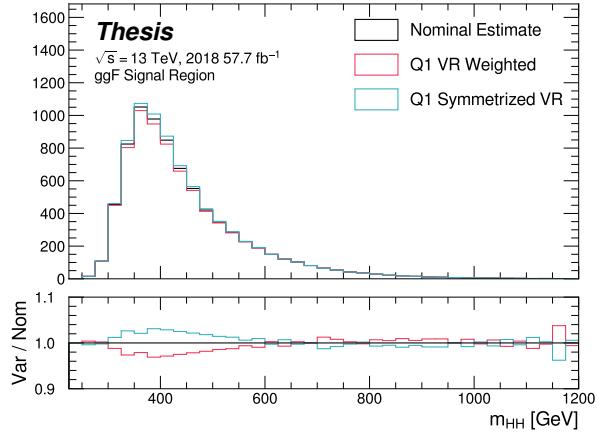
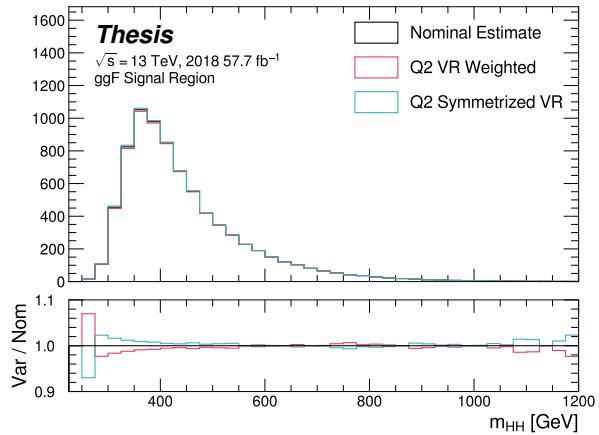


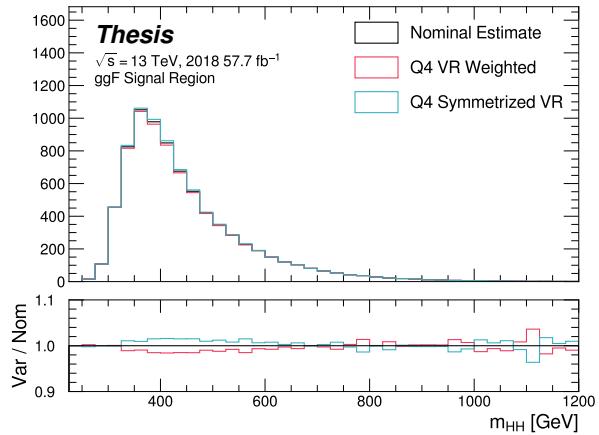
Figure 9.2: **Resonant Search:** Example of CR vs VR variation in each H_T region for 2018. The variation nicely factorizes into low and high mass components.



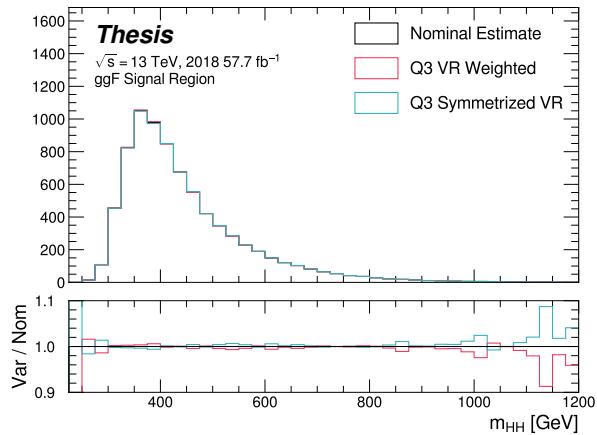
(a) Q1 (top)



(b) Q2 (left)



(c) Q4 (right)



(d) Q3 (bottom)

Figure 9.3: **Non-resonant Search (4b):** Example of CR vs VR variation in each signal region quadrant for 2018. Significantly different behavior is seen between quadrants, with the largest variation in quadrant 1 and the smallest in quadrant 4.

2466 **9.3 Signal Uncertainties**

2467 A variety of uncertainties are assessed on the signal Monte Carlo simulation. As the
2468 background estimate is fully data driven, such uncertainties are not needed for the background
2469 estimate. Note again that the results presented for the non-resonant search only include the
2470 background systematics described above.

2471 Detector modeling and reconstruction uncertainties account for differences between Monte
2472 Carlo simulation and real data due to mis-modeling of the detector as well as due to the
2473 different performance of algorithms on simulation compared to data. In this analysis they
2474 consist of uncertainties related to jet properties and uncertainties stemming from the flavor
2475 tagging procedure. The jet uncertainties are treated according to the prescription in [108] and
2476 are implemented as variations of the jet properties. These cover uncertainty in jet energy scale
2477 and resolution. Uncertainties in b -tagging efficiency are treated according to the prescription
2478 in Ref. [81] and implemented as scale factors applied to the Monte Carlo event weights. A
2479 systematic related to the PtReco b -jet energy correction has been studied in the $HH \rightarrow \gamma\gamma b\bar{b}$
2480 analysis [109] and found to be negligible compared to the other jet uncertainties. Following
2481 this example, such a systematic is therefore neglected here.

2482 Trigger uncertainties stem from imperfect knowledge of the ratio between the efficiency of
2483 a given trigger in data to its efficiency in Monte Carlo simulation. This ratio is applied as a
2484 scale factor to all simulated events, with the systematic variations produced by varying the
2485 scale factor up or down by one sigma. Such variations are evaluated based on measurements
2486 of per-jet online efficiencies for both jet reconstruction and b -tagging, and these are used to
2487 compute event-level uncertainties. These are then applied as overall weight variations on the
2488 simulated events.

2489 An uncertainty on the total integrated luminosity used in this analysis is also applied, and
2490 is measured to be 1.7% [98], obtained using the LUCID-2 detector for the primary luminosity
2491 measurements [110].

2492 A variety of theoretical uncertainties are also assessed on the signal. Such uncertainties

2493 are assessed by generating samples following the configuration of the baseline samples, but
 2494 with modifications to probe various aspects of the simulation. These include uncertainties in
 2495 the parton density functions (PDFs); uncertainties due to missing higher order terms in the
 2496 matrix elements; and uncertainties in the modelling of the underlying event, which includes
 2497 multi-parton interactions, of hadronic showers and of initial and final state radiation.

2498 Uncertainties due to modelling of the parton shower and the underlying event are eval-
 2499 uated by comparing results from using two different generators, namely HERWIG 7.1.3 and
 2500 PYTHIA 8.235. No significant dependence on the variable of interest, m_{HH} , is observed.
 2501 Therefore, a 5% flat systematic uncertainty is assigned to all signal samples, extracted from
 2502 the acceptance comparison for the full 4-tag selection.

2503 Uncertainties in the matrix element calculation are evaluated by varying the factorization
 2504 and renormalization scales used in the generator up and down by a factor of two, both
 2505 independently and simultaneously. This results in an effect smaller than 1% for all variations
 2506 and all masses; the impact of such uncertainties is therefore neglected.

2507 PDF uncertainties are evaluated using the PDF4LHC_NLO_MC set [99] by calculating
 2508 the signal acceptance for each PDF replica and taking the standard deviation. In all cases,
 2509 these uncertainties result in an effect smaller than 1% on the signal acceptance; therefore
 2510 these are also neglected.

2511 Theoretical uncertainties on the $H \rightarrow b\bar{b}$ branching ratio [111] are also included.

2512 **9.4 Background Validation**

2513 In addition to checking the performance of the background estimate in the control and
2514 validation regions, a variety of alternative selections are defined to allow for a full “dress
2515 rehearsal” of the background estimation procedure.

2516 Both the resonant and non-resonant analyses make use of a *reversed* $\Delta\eta$ region, in which
2517 the kinematic cut on $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ is reversed, so that events are required to have $\Delta\eta_{HH} > 1.5$.
2518 This is orthogonal to the nominal signal region and has minimal sensitivity, allowing for the
2519 comparison of the background estimate $4b$ data in the corresponding “signal region”. For
2520 this validation, a new reweighting is trained following nominal procedures, but entirely in
2521 the $\Delta\eta_{HH} > 1.5$ region. An example of such a validation is shown for the resonant search in
2522 Figure 9.4.

2523 The non-resonant analysis additionally makes use of the $3b + 1$ fail region mentioned
2524 above, which again is orthogonal to the nominal signal regions and has minimal sensitivity.
2525 The reweighting in this case is between $2b$ and $3b + 1$ fail events rather than between $2b$
2526 and $3b + 1$ loose or $2b$ and $4b$. However, the kinematic selections of signal region events are
2527 otherwise identical, allowing for a complementary test of the background estimate. This
2528 validation is shown in Figure 9.5.

2529 Additional validation regions are also being explored, including those based on shifting
2530 the position of the set of analysis regions in the Higgs candidate mass plane and rederiving
2531 the background estimate in these shifted regions. Though each of these validations is different
2532 in some way from the set of regions in which the analysis is performed, evaluation of the
2533 performance of the background estimate in these regions is useful for developing and gaining
2534 confidence in the background estimation method and the corresponding uncertainties. Non-
2535 closure of the method in such regions may additionally be used for assessing uncertainties,
2536 but this is not considered here.

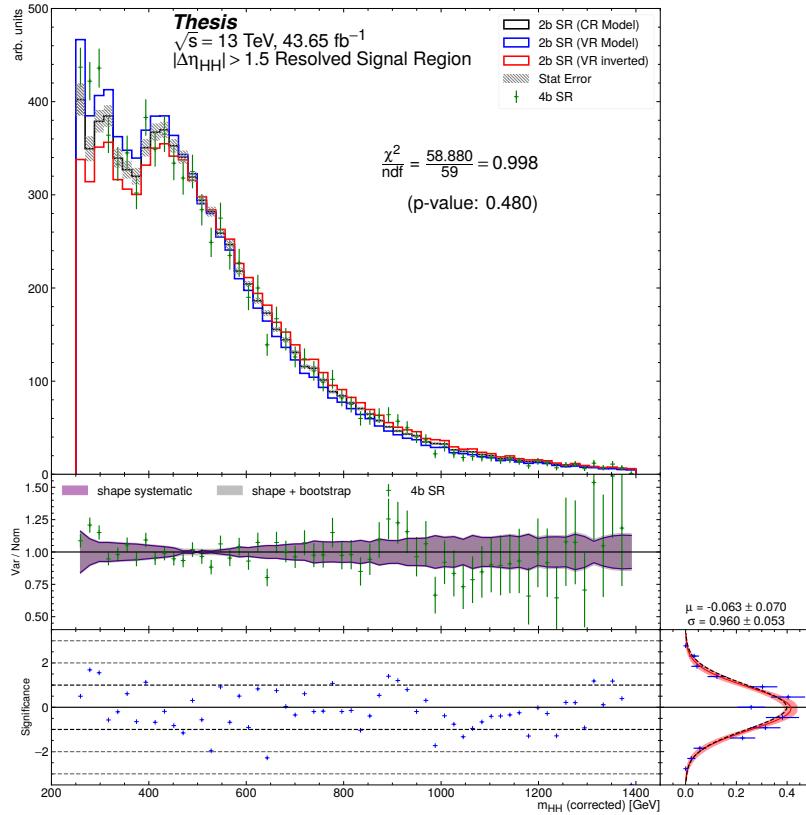


Figure 9.4: **Resonant Search:** Performance of the background estimation method in the resonant analysis reversed $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ kinematic signal region. A new background estimate is trained following nominal procedures entirely within the reversed $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ region, and the resulting model, including uncertainties, is compared with $4b$ data in the corresponding signal region. Good agreement is shown. The quoted p -value uses the χ^2 test statistic, and demonstrates no evidence that the data differs from the assessed background.

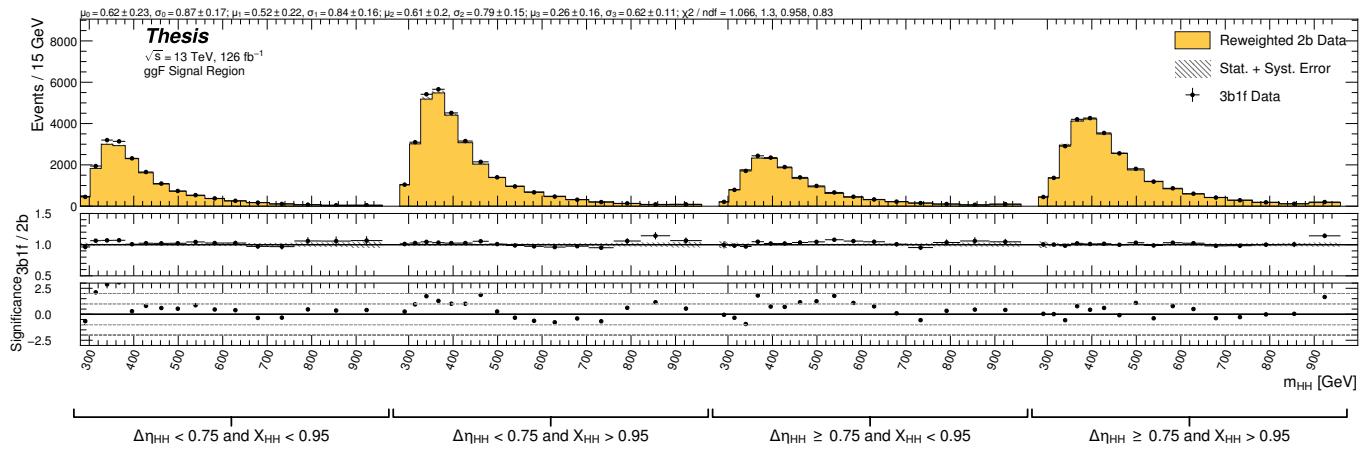


Figure 9.5: **Non-resonant Search:** Performance of the background estimation method in the $3b + 1$ fail validation region. A new background estimate is trained following nominal procedures but with a reweighting from $2b$ to $3b + 1$ fail events. Generally good agreement is seen, though there is some deviation at very low masses in the low $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ low X_{HH} category.

2537

Chapter 10

2538

RESULTS

2539 **10.1 m_{HH} Distributions**2540 **10.1.1 Resonant Search**

2541 The final discriminant used for the resonant search is corrected m_{HH} . Histogram binning
2542 was optimized for the resonant search to be 84 equal width bins from 250 GeV to 1450 GeV,
2543 corresponding to a bin width of 14.3 GeV, and overflow events (events above 1450 GeV) are
2544 included in the last bin. A demonstration of the performance of the reweighting on this
2545 distribution is shown in Figure 10.1 for the control region and Figure 10.2 for the validation
2546 region. A background-only profile likelihood fit is run for the distribution in the
2547 signal region, and results with representative signals overlaid are shown in Figure 10.3. 4b
2548 data yields, estimated background, and signal event yields are extracted for representative
2549 mass hypotheses in a corrected m_{HH} window containing roughly 90 % of the corresponding
2550 signal after this same background-only fit in the signal region. These results are shown in
2551 Tables 10.1 and 10.2 for spin-0 and spin-2 respectively. Note that the plots and tables show
2552 the sum across all years, but the signal extraction fit and background estimate are run with
2553 the years separately. Agreement is generally good throughout.

Table 10.1: Resolved 4*b* signal region data, estimated background, and signal event yields in corrected m_{HH} windows containing roughly 90% of each signal, for representative spin-0 mass hypotheses. The signal is normalized to the overall expected limit on its cross-section; its uncertainties are evaluated by adding all individual components in quadrature. The background yields and uncertainties are evaluated after a background-only fit to the data. [3].

$m(X)$ [GeV]	Corrected m_{HH} range [GeV]	Data	Background model	Spin-0 signal model
260	[250, 321]	18 554	18 300 \pm 110	503 \pm 43
500	[464, 536]	2 827	2 866 \pm 22	105.40 \pm 5.70
800	[750, 850]	358	366.2 \pm 7.3	37.70 \pm 1.70
1200	[1079, 1250]	68	52.6 \pm 1.7	11.71 \pm 0.62

Table 10.2: Resolved 4*b* signal region data, estimated background, and signal event yields in corrected m_{HH} windows containing roughly 90% of each signal, for representative spin-2 mass hypotheses. The signal is normalized to the overall expected limit on its cross-section; its uncertainties are evaluated by adding all individual components in quadrature. The background yields and uncertainties are evaluated after a background-only fit to the data. [3].

$m(G_{KK}^*)$ [GeV]	Corrected m_{HH} range [GeV]	Data	Background model	Spin-2 signal model
260	[250, 393]	26 775	26 650 \pm 130	368 \pm 25
500	[464, 636]	4 655	4 719 \pm 37	138.60 \pm 5.70
800	[707, 950]	795	811 \pm 13	52.10 \pm 1.90
1200	[993, 1279]	146	120.6 \pm 2.8	14.45 \pm 0.67

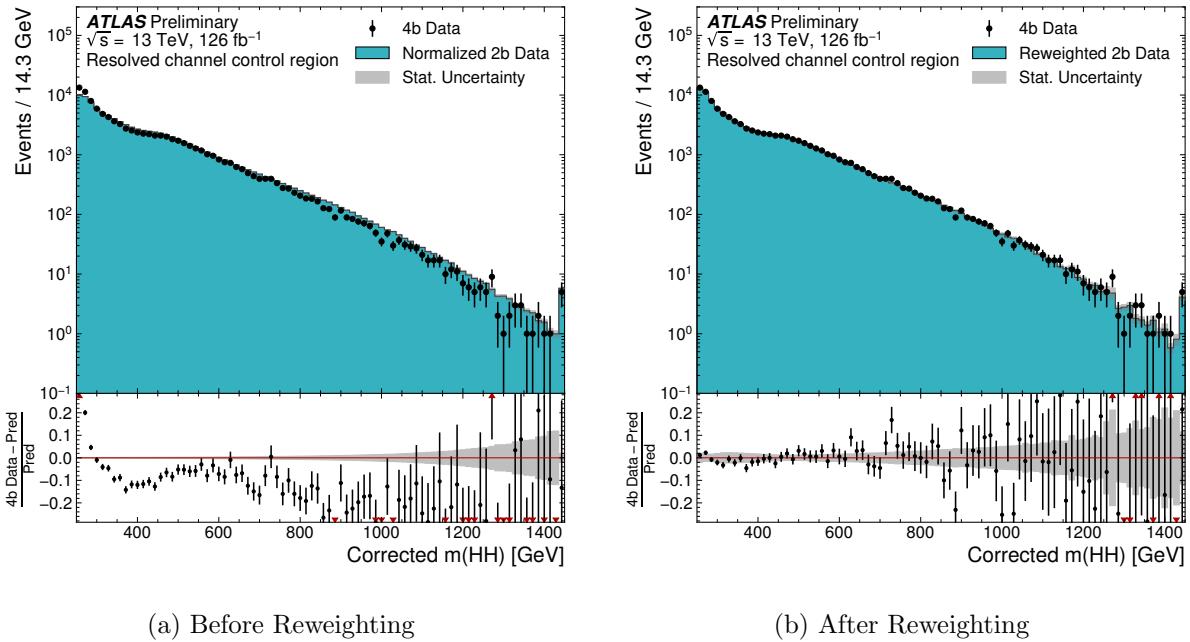


Figure 10.1: **Resonant Search:** Demonstration of the performance of the nominal reweighting in the control region on corrected m_{HH} , with Figure 10.1(a) showing $2b$ events normalized to the total $4b$ yield and Figure 10.1(b) applying the reweighting procedure. Agreement is much improved with the reweighting. Note that overall reweighted $2b$ yield agrees with $4b$ yield in the control region by construction.

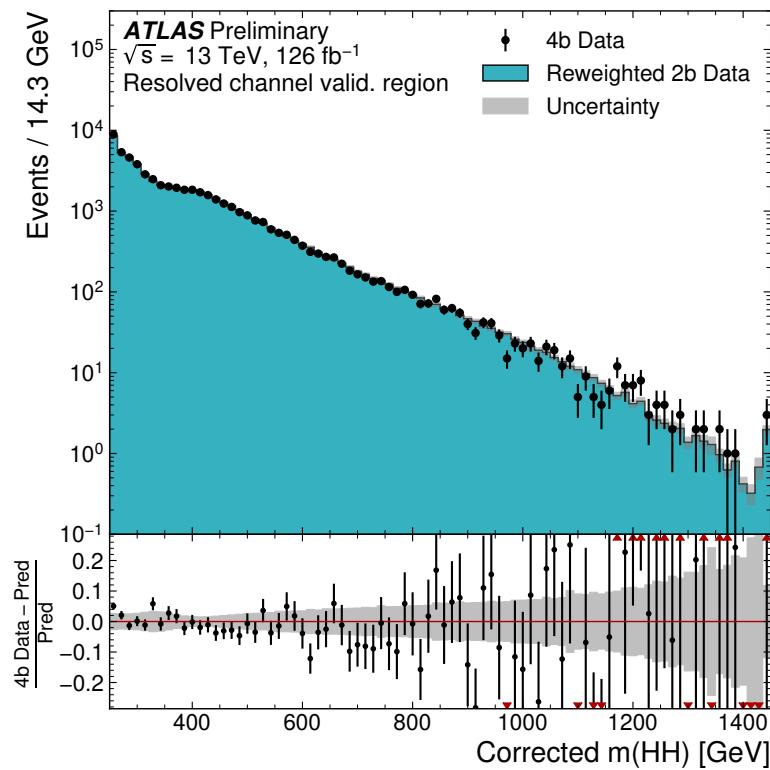


Figure 10.2: **Resonant Search:** Demonstration of the performance of the control region derived reweighting in the validation region on corrected m_{HH} . Agreement is generally good for this extrapolated estimate. Note that the uncertainty band includes the extrapolation systematic, which is defined by a reweighting trained in the validation region.

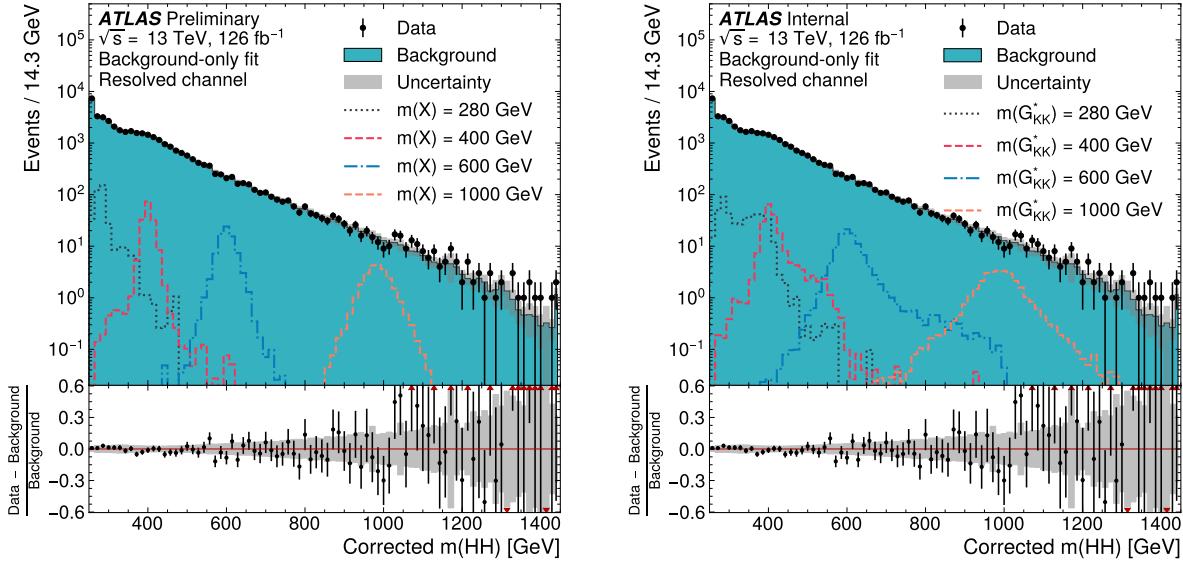


Figure 10.3: **Resonant Search:** Signal region agreement of the background estimate and observed data after a background-only profile likelihood fit. The left plot overlays a variety of representative spin-0 signals, while the right does the same for spin-2. The background and data are identical between the two. The closure is generally quite good, though there is an evident deficit in the background estimate relative to the data for higher values of corrected m_{HH} . Note that the spin-2 signals are significantly wider than the spin-0 signals. Near the kinematic threshold of 250 GeV, this leads to, e.g., the double peaked structure of the 280 GeV signal, which is understood to be an effect of the limited kinematic phase space in this region.

2554 10.1.2 Non-resonant Search

As discussed above, the non-resonant search splits the signal extraction into two categories of $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ ($0 \leq \Delta\eta_{HH} < 0.75$ and $0.75 \leq \Delta\eta_{HH} < 1.5$), and two categories of X_{HH} ($0 \leq X_{HH} < 0.95$ and $0.95 \leq X_{HH} < 1.6$). To maintain reasonable statistics in each bin entering the signal extraction fit, a variable width binning is considered defined by a resolution parameter, r , and a set range in m_{HH} , where bin edges are determined iteratively as

$$b_{low}^{i+1} = b_{low}^i + r \cdot b_{low}^i, \quad (10.1)$$

2555 where b_{low}^i is the low edge of bin i . The parameters used here are $r = 0.08$ over a range
2556 from 280 GeV to 975 GeV, and underflow and overflow are included in the initial and final
2557 bin contents respectively. m_{HH} with no correction is used as the final discriminant in each
2558 category.

2559 A demonstration of the performance of the reweighting on distributions unrolled across
2560 categories is shown in Figures 10.4 and 10.5 for the control region and Figures 10.6 and 10.7
2561 for the validation region. A background-only profile likelihood fit is run for the distribution in
2562 the signal region, and results with the Standard Model HH signal and $\kappa_\lambda = 6$ signal overlaid
2563 are shown for $4b$ in Figure 10.8 and $3b1l$ in Figure 10.9. Note that the plots show the sum
2564 across all years, but the signal extraction fit and background estimate are run with the years
2565 separately. All bins are normalized to represent a density of Events / 15 GeV.

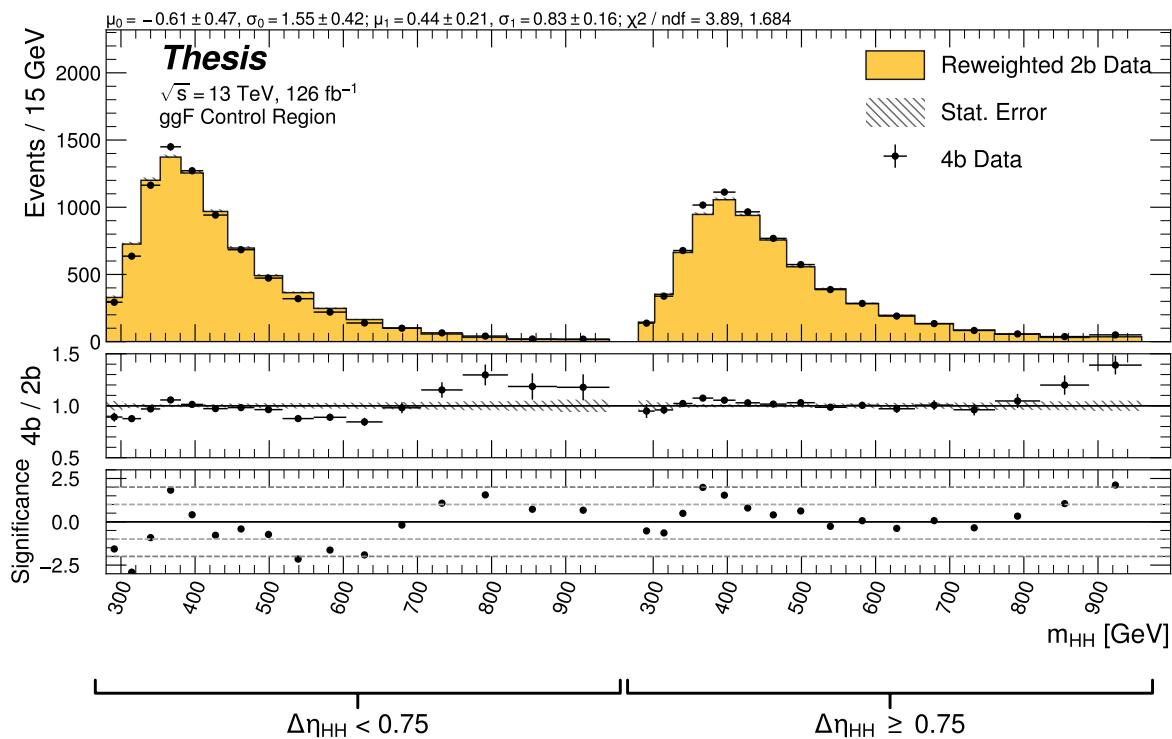


Figure 10.4: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Demonstration of the performance of the nominal reweighting in the control region on m_{HH} , split into the two $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ regions. Closure is generally good, with some residual mis-modeling in the low $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ region near 600 GeV.

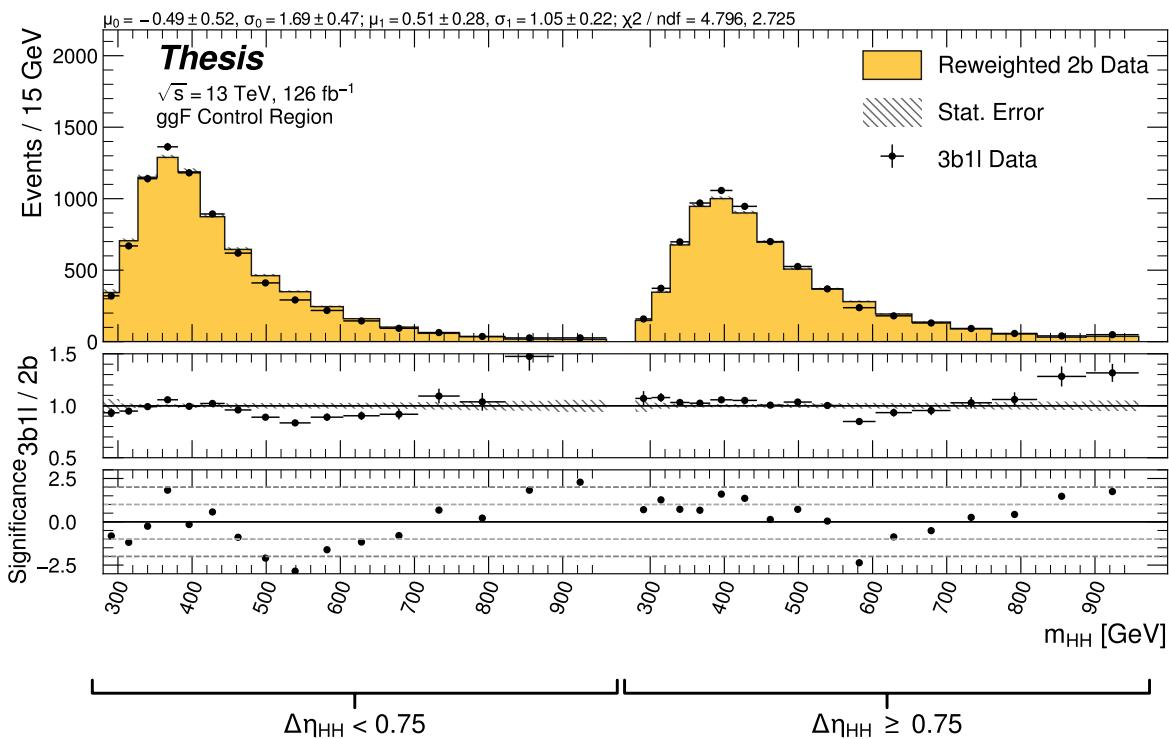


Figure 10.5: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l):** Demonstration of the performance of the nominal reweighting in the control region on m_{HH} , split into the two $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ regions. Closure is generally good, with similar conclusions as for the $4b$ region.

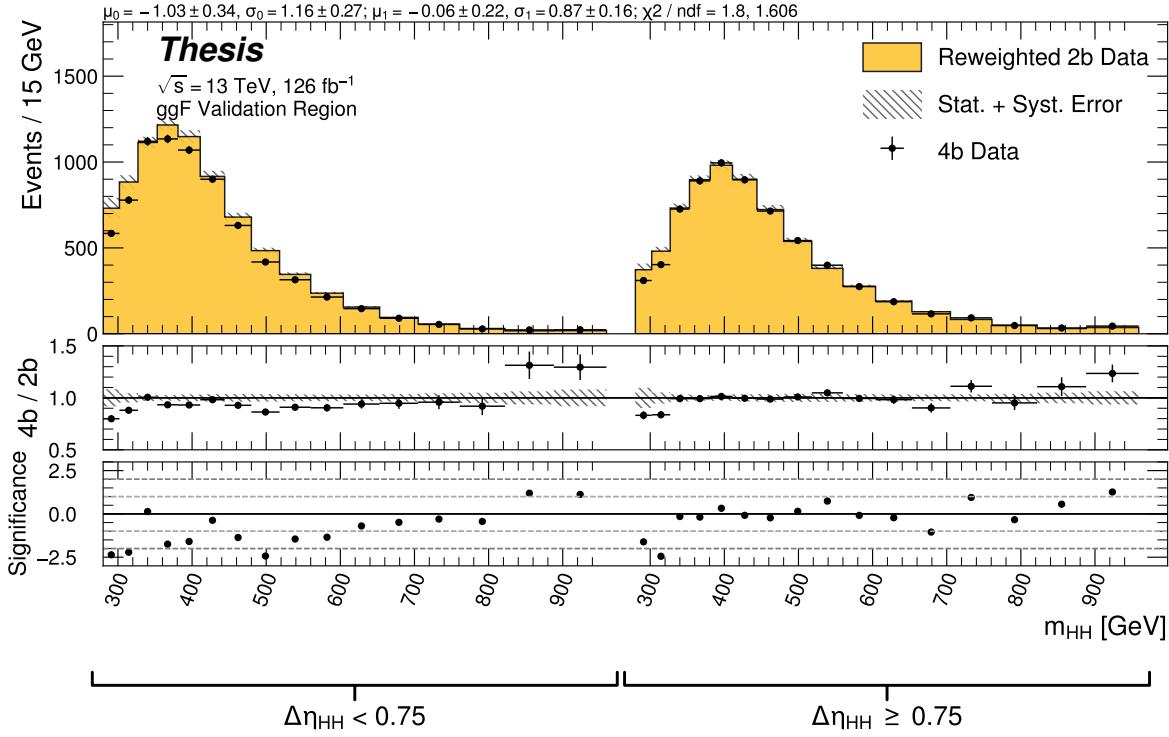


Figure 10.6: **Non-resonant Search (4b)**: Demonstration of the performance of the nominal reweighting in the validation region on m_{HH} , split into the two $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ regions. The low $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ region is consistently overestimated, but, systematic uncertainties are defined via the difference between VR and CR estimates.

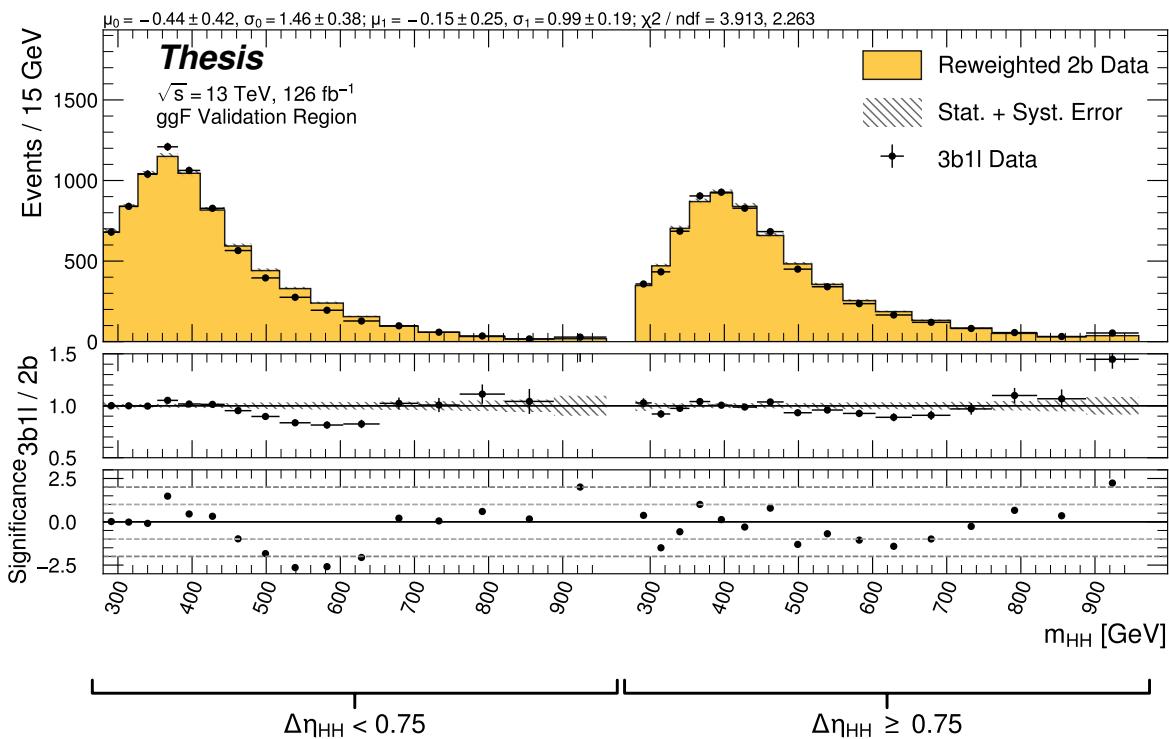


Figure 10.7: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l):** Demonstration of the performance of the nominal reweighting in the validation region on m_{HH} , split into the two $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ regions. A deficit is present near 600 GeV, but agreement is fairly good otherwise.

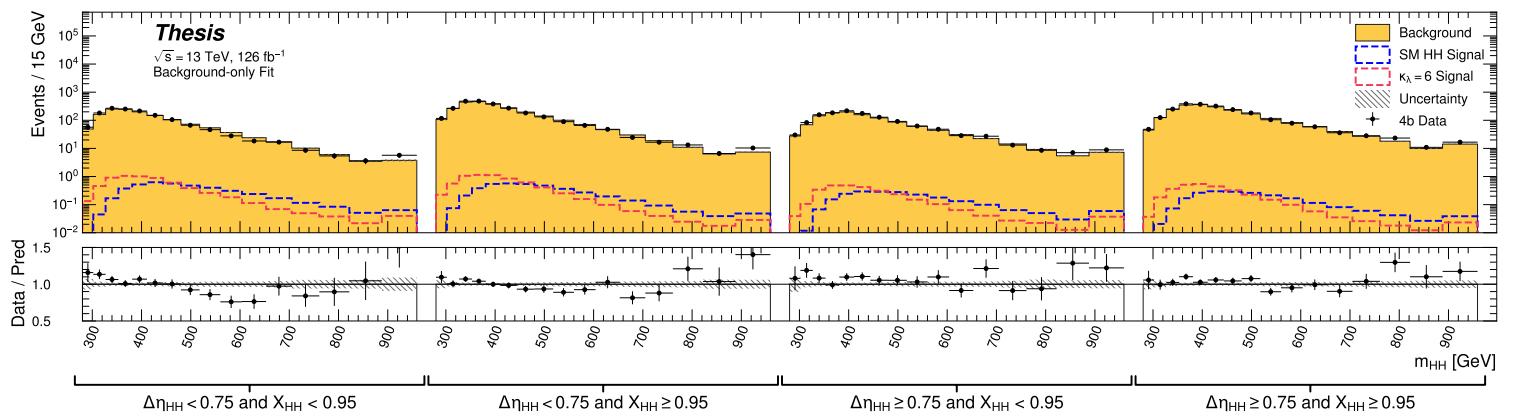


Figure 10.8: **Non-resonant Search (4b):** Signal region agreement of the background estimate and observed data after a background-only profile likelihood fit for the 4b channels, with Standard Model and $\kappa_\lambda = 6$ signal overlaid for reference. Modeling is generally quite good near the Standard Model peak, but disagreements are seen at very low and high masses. A deficit is present in low $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ bins near 600 GeV.

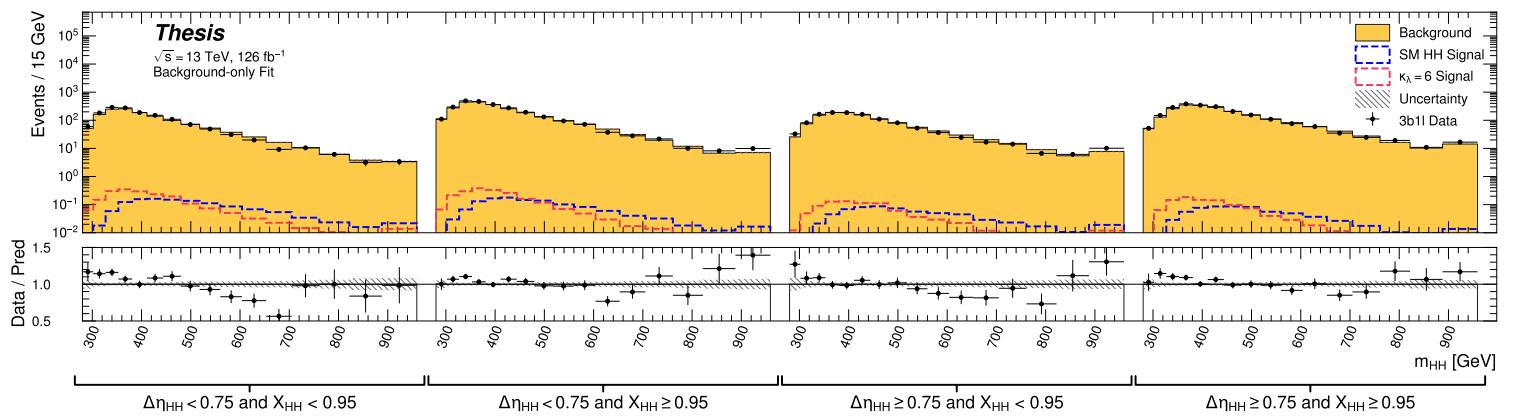


Figure 10.9: **Non-resonant Search (3b1l):** Signal region agreement of the background estimate and observed data after a background-only profile likelihood fit for the 3b1l channels, with Standard Model and $\kappa_\lambda = 6$ signal overlaid for reference. Conclusions are very similar to the 4b channels, with generally good modeling near the Standard Model peak, but disagreements at very low and high masses. A deficit is present near 600 GeV.

2566 **10.2 Statistical Analysis**

2567 The resonant analysis is used to set a 95% confidence level upper limit on the $pp \rightarrow X \rightarrow$
 2568 $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ and $pp \rightarrow G_{KK}^* \rightarrow HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ cross-sections, while the non-resonant analysis
 2569 is used to set a 95% confidence level upper limit on the $pp \rightarrow HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ cross sections for
 2570 a variety of values of the trilinear Higgs coupling.

2571 The upper limit is extracted using the CL_s method [112]. The test statistic used is q_μ
 2572 [113], where μ is the signal strength, and θ represents the nuisance parameters. A single
 2573 hat represents the maximum likelihood estimate of a parameter, while $\hat{\theta}(x)$ represents the
 2574 conditional maximum likelihood estimate of the nuisance parameters if the signal cross-section
 2575 is fixed at x .

$$q_\mu = \begin{cases} -2 \ln \left(\frac{\mathcal{L}(\mu, \hat{\theta}(\mu))}{\mathcal{L}(\hat{\mu}, \hat{\theta})} \right) & \hat{\mu} \leq \mu \\ 0 & \hat{\mu} > \mu \end{cases} \quad (10.2)$$

2576 CL_s for some test value of μ is then defined by

$$CL_s = \frac{CL_{s+b}}{CL_b} = \frac{p(q_\mu \geq q_{\mu, \text{obs}} | s+b)}{p(q_\mu \geq q_{\mu, \text{obs}} | b)}, \quad (10.3)$$

2577 where the p -values are calculated in the asymptotic approximation [113], which is valid in
 2578 the large sample limit.

2579 The signal cross-section μ fb is excluded at the 95% confidence level if $CL_s < 0.05$.

2580 **10.3 Results**

2581 Figure 10.10 shows the expected limit for the spin-0 and spin-2 resonant search. The resolved
 2582 channel covers the range between 251 and 1500 GeV and is combined with the boosted channel
 2583 between 900 and 1500 GeV. The boosted channel then extends to 5 TeV. All results use the
 2584 asymptotic approximation, though the validity of such an approximation for the boosted
 2585 results above 3 TeV is being studied. The most significant excess is seen for a signal mass of
 2586 1100 GeV, with local significance of 2.6σ for the spin-0 signal and 2.7σ for the spin-2 signal.
 2587 This is reduced to 1.0σ and 1.2σ globally.

2588 The spin-2 bulk Randall-Sundrum model with $k/\overline{M}_{\text{Pl}} = 1$ is excluded for graviton masses
 2589 between 298 and 1440 GeV.

2590 Results from the early Run 2 $4b$ resonant search [2] are included in Figure 10.11 for
 2591 comparison. The full Run 2 results of this thesis represent an improvement in sensitivity, with
 2592 an expanded exclusion for the spin-2 search of graviton masses between 298 and 1440 GeV,
 2593 relative to the early Run 2 result, with exclusion between 313 and 1362 GeV. An excess is
 2594 present in the early Run 2 results at 280 GeV, with local (global) significance $3.6(2.3)\sigma$. This
 2595 is no longer present in the full Run 2 results, indicative of improved background modeling in
 2596 this low mass region.

2597 Preliminary results are presented here for the gluon-gluon fusion non-resonant search,
 2598 combining results from the $4b$ and $3b + 1l$ signal regions in the 2×2 category scheme in
 2599 $\Delta\eta_{HH}$ and X_{HH} . These results will be further combined with a VBF channel (discussed in
 2600 Appendix A), but this is left for future work. Results shown here include background all
 2601 background uncertainties, but do not include signal systematics. Limits are set for κ_λ values
 2602 from -20 to 20 . The cross section limit for HH production is set at 140 fb (180 fb) observed
 2603 (expected), corresponding to an observed (expected) limit of 4.4 (5.9) times the Standard
 2604 Model prediction (see Table 10.3). κ_λ is constrained to be within the range $-4.9 \leq \kappa_\lambda \leq 14.4$
 2605 observed ($-3.9 \leq \kappa_\lambda \leq 10.9$ expected). These results are shown in Figure 10.12.

2606 This is a significant improvement over the early Run 2 result, which achieved an observed

Observed	-2σ	-1σ	Expected	$+1\sigma$	$+2\sigma$
4.4	3.1	4.2	5.9	8.2	11.0

Table 10.3: Limits on Standard Model $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ production, presented in units of the predicted Standard Model cross section. Results do not include signal systematics.

(expected) limit of 12.9 (20.7) times the Standard Model prediction. The dataset is 4.6 times larger, and a naive scaling of the early Run 2 result (Poisson statistics \implies a factor of $1/\sqrt{4.6}$) would predict an observed (expected) limit of 6.0 (9.7) times the Standard Model. The result of 4.4 (5.9) observed (expected) presented here is therefore both an improvement by a factor of 3 (3.5) over the previous result and also beats the statistical scaling by around 30 (40) %, demonstrating the impact of the various analysis improvements presented here. Note again that these results do not include the complete set of uncertainties – however, the addition of the remaining uncertainties is expected to have no more than a few percent impact.

Further comparisons of both the resonant and non-resonant results are presented in Chapter 11.

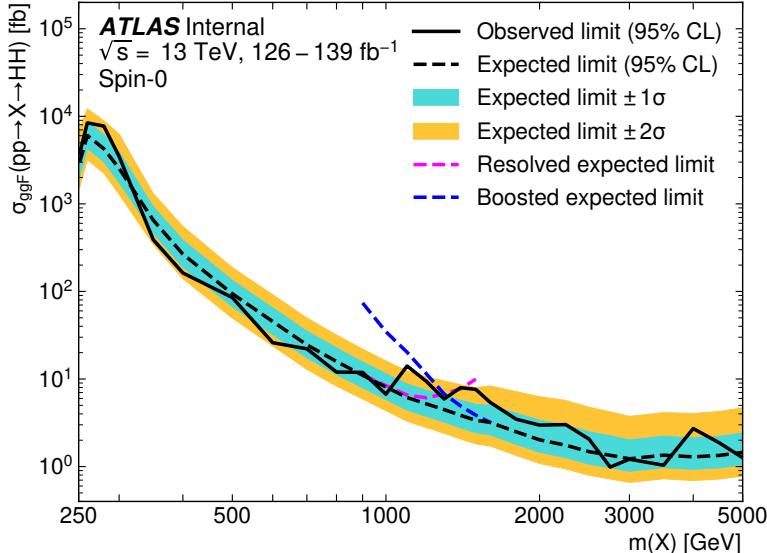
The observed limits presented in Figure 10.12 are consistently above the 2σ band for values of $\kappa_\lambda \geq 5$, peaking at a local significance of 3.8σ for $\kappa_\lambda = 6$. As this analysis is optimized for points near the Standard Model, and as there is no excess present in more sensitive channels in this same region (e.g. $HH \rightarrow bb\gamma\gamma$ [93]), it is not believed this is a real effect, but is rather due to a mis-modeling of the background at low mass, where the min ΔR pairing has poor signal efficiency and the assumption of well behaved background in the mass plane breaks down. This is consistent with the location of the $\kappa_\lambda = 6$ signal in m_{HH} , as shown in Figures 10.8 and 10.9. It was considered, but not implemented, for this analysis to impose a cut on m_{HH} near 350 or 400 GeV to avoid such a low mass modeling issue.

To check the impact of if such a cut would have been imposed, and to verify that the

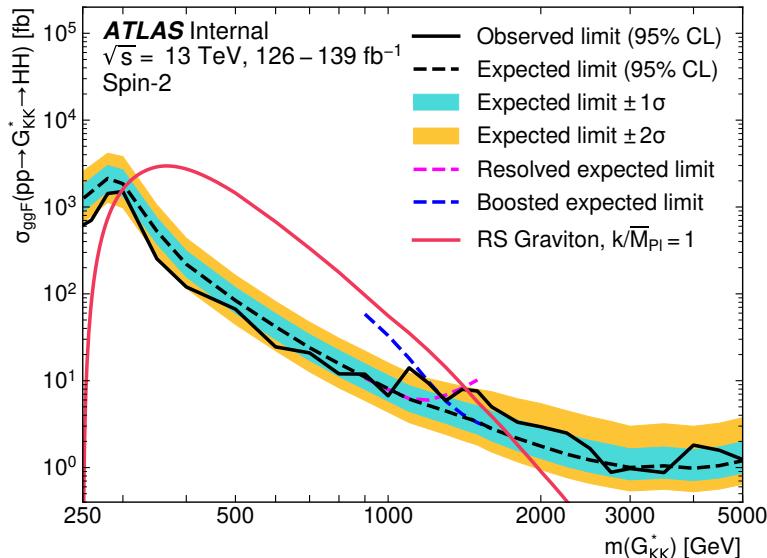
Observed	-2σ	-1σ	Expected	$+1\sigma$	$+2\sigma$
3.7	3.2	4.3	5.9	8.3	11.2

Table 10.4: Limits on Standard Model $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ production, presented in units of the predicted Standard Model cross section, corresponding to the $m_{HH} > 381$ GeV selection of Figure 10.13. Results do not include signal systematics. The deficit in the observed limit is larger than that of Table 10.3, but still within the 2σ band. There are only very minor differences in the expected limit band.

excess is due to the low mass regime, the same set of limits is run without the low mass bins. In this case, the first few bins in m_{HH} are simply dropped, such that everything else, including the higher mass bin edges, is kept the same. Due to the variable width binning, this corresponds to an m_{HH} cut of 381 GeV. The results of this check are shown in Figure 10.13, and the corresponding limits for Standard Model HH are quoted in Table 10.4. With the m_{HH} cut imposed, there is a slight degradation in the expected limits for larger positive and negative values of κ_λ , but the points near the Standard Model are nearly identical. Further, the observed excess is significantly reduced, with observed limits for $\kappa_\lambda \geq 5$ now falling entirely within the expected 1σ band. Due to the preliminary nature of these results, further study is left for future work. However, in conjunction with the $HH \rightarrow bb\gamma\gamma$ results and expectations about the difficulty of the background estimation at low mass, it is believed that this is demonstrative of a mis-modeling rather than a real excess.

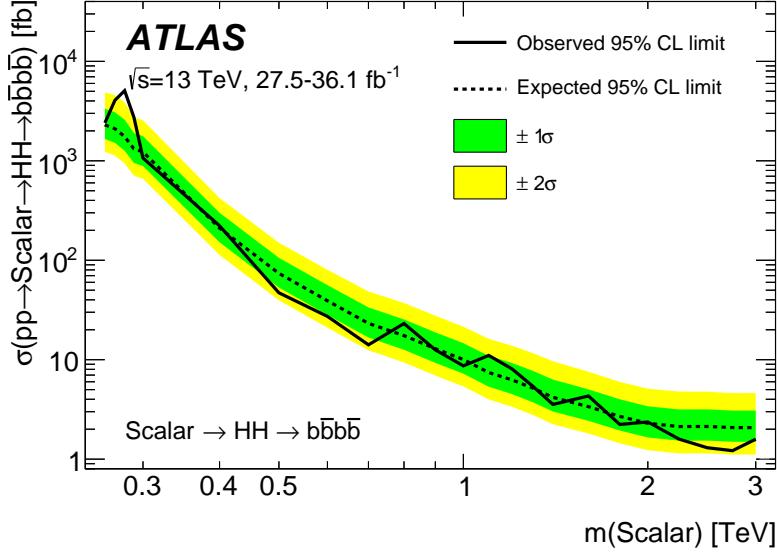


(a)

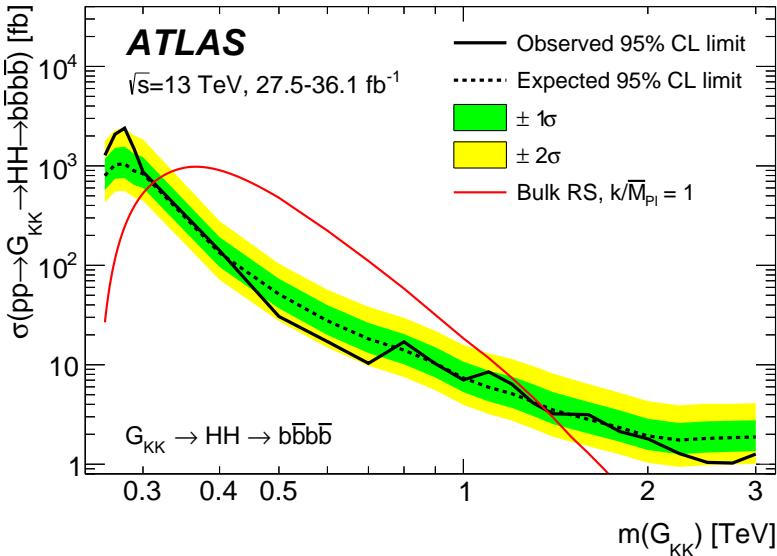


(b)

Figure 10.10: Expected (dashed black) and observed (solid black) 95% CL upper limits on the cross-section times branching ratio of resonant production for spin-0 ($X \rightarrow HH$) and spin-2 ($G_{KK}^* \rightarrow HH$). The $\pm 1\sigma$ and $\pm 2\sigma$ ranges for the expected limits are shown in the colored bands. The resolved channel expected limit is shown in dashed pink and covers the range from 251 and 1500 GeV. It is combined with the boosted channel (dashed blue) between 900 and 1500 GeV. The theoretical prediction for the bulk RS model with $k/\bar{M}_{\text{Pl}} = 1$ [25] (solid red line) is shown, with the decrease below 350 GeV due to a sharp reduction in the $G_{KK}^* \rightarrow HH$ branching ratio. The nominal $H \rightarrow b\bar{b}$ branching ratio is taken as 0.582. Note that all results use the asymptotic approximation, though the validity of this approximation for the boosted results above 3 TeV is being evaluated.



(a)



(b)

Figure 10.11: Expected (dashed black) and observed (solid black) 95% CL upper limits or spin-0 ($\text{Scalar} \rightarrow HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$) and spin-2 ($G_{KK} \rightarrow HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$) from the early Run 2 4b search [2], to be compared with the results in Figure 10.10. Note that the y -axis scaling differs from Figure 10.10 by a factor of the $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ branching ratio. An excess is present at 280 GeV, with local (global) significance $3.6(2.3)\sigma$. The spin-2 bulk Randall-Sundrum model with $k/\bar{M}_{\text{Pl}} = 1$ is excluded for graviton masses between 313 and 1362 GeV.

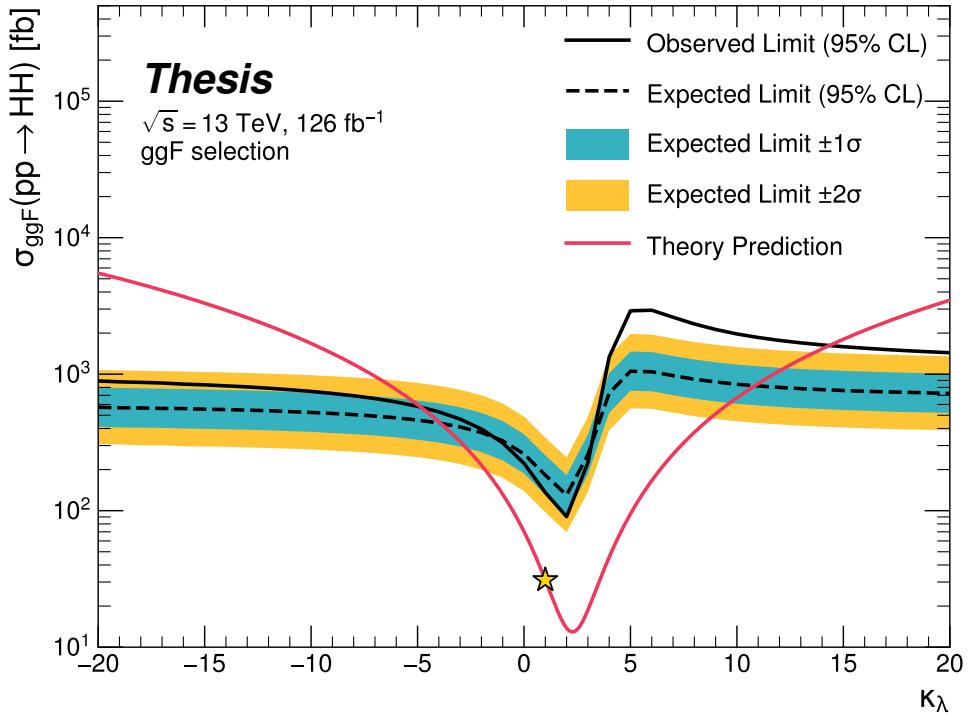


Figure 10.12: Expected (dashed black) and observed (solid black) 95% CL upper limits on the cross-section times branching ratio of non-resonant production for a range of values of the Higgs self-coupling, with the Standard Model value ($\kappa_\lambda = 1$) illustrated with a star. The $\pm 1\sigma$ and $\pm 2\sigma$ ranges for the expected limits are shown in the colored bands. The cross section limit for HH production is set at 140 fb (180 fb) observed (expected), corresponding to an observed (expected) limit of 4.4 (5.9) times the Standard Model prediction. κ_λ is constrained to be within the range $-4.9 \leq \kappa_\lambda \leq 14.4$ observed ($-3.9 \leq \kappa_\lambda \leq 10.9$ expected). The nominal $H \rightarrow b\bar{b}$ branching ratio is taken as 0.582 . The excess present for $\kappa_\lambda \geq 5$ is thought to be due to a low mass background mis-modeling, present due to the optimization of this analysis for the Standard Model point, and is not present in more sensitive channels in this same region (e.g. $HH \rightarrow bb\gamma\gamma$ [93]).

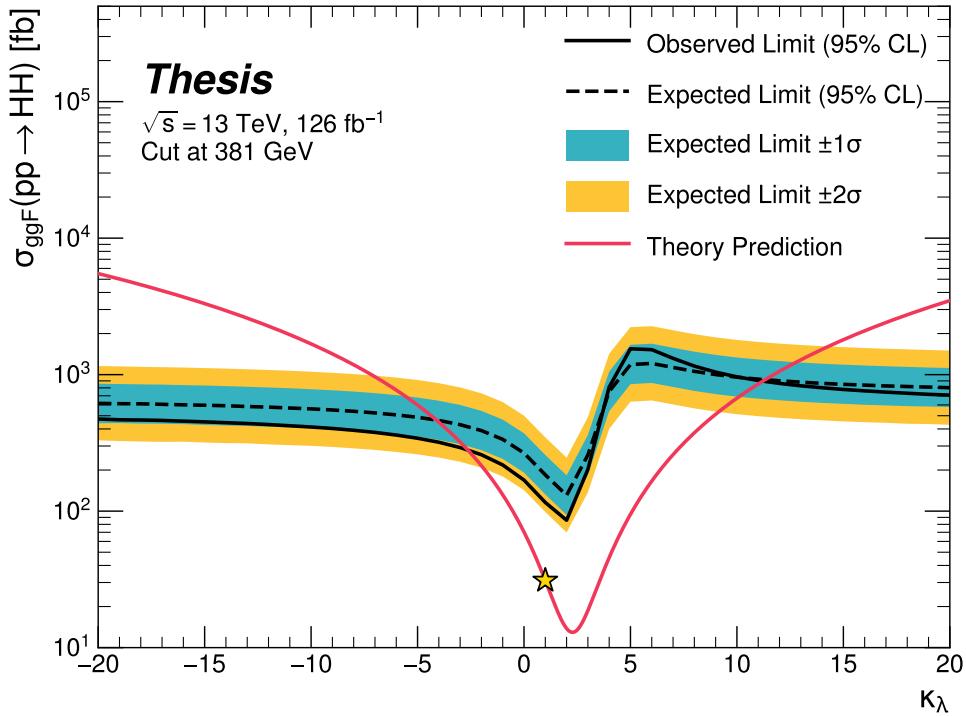


Figure 10.13: Limits including only events above 381 GeV in m_{HH} , to be compared with the limits in Figure 10.12. Such a cut is accomplished by dropping m_{HH} bins below 381 GeV, with the value of 381 GeV determined by the optimized variable width binning. All other aspects of the procedure and inputs are kept the same as in Figure 10.12. The excess at and above $\kappa_\lambda = 5$ is significantly reduced, demonstrating that such an excess is driven by low mass. Notably, there is minimal impact on the expected sensitivity with this m_{HH} cut.

2640

Chapter 11

2641

COMPARISONS WITH OTHER CHANNELS

2642 ATLAS has published comparisons of the released Full Run 2 results [114], shown for
 2643 the spin-0 resonant results in Figure 11.1 and the non-resonant results in Figure 11.2. The
 2644 results of this thesis for the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel are included in the resonant plot up to 3 TeV. The
 2645 preliminary non-resonant results presented here are not yet included. Both figures include a
 2646 comparison with the combined early Run 2 result [26].

2647 For the resonant, the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel has the leading sensitivity above a mass of around
 2648 700 GeV, and is competitive across much of the considered range, though it has limited sensi-
 2649 tivity at very low masses. The individual channels shown in general represent improvements
 2650 over the early Run 2 combined result, a promising indicator for a large increase in sensitivity
 2651 with the full Run 2 combination across channels, for which the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel will be a strong
 2652 contributor.

2653 The Standard Model non-resonant limits presented in this thesis are 4.4(5.9) times the
 2654 Standard Model observed (expected) for the gluon-gluon fusion channel only. This is a
 2655 significant gain on its own above the early Run 2 combined result. Though the leading
 2656 channels presented in Figure 11.2 include both VBF and ggF production modes, and are
 2657 normalized as such, the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ results of this thesis can still be seen to be quite competitive,
 2658 again demonstrating a strong contribution to the ATLAS experimental results for HH .
 2659 Roughly estimating the combined result for full Run 2 $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$, $b\bar{b}\tau^+\tau^-$, and $b\bar{b}\gamma\gamma$ yields a limit
 2660 of around 2 to 3 times the Standard Model. Such a result sets the stage for a very exciting
 2661 Run 3 – with a projected factor of around 2× increase in luminosity, plus any additional
 2662 analysis improvements, sensitivity to HH may be just on the horizon.

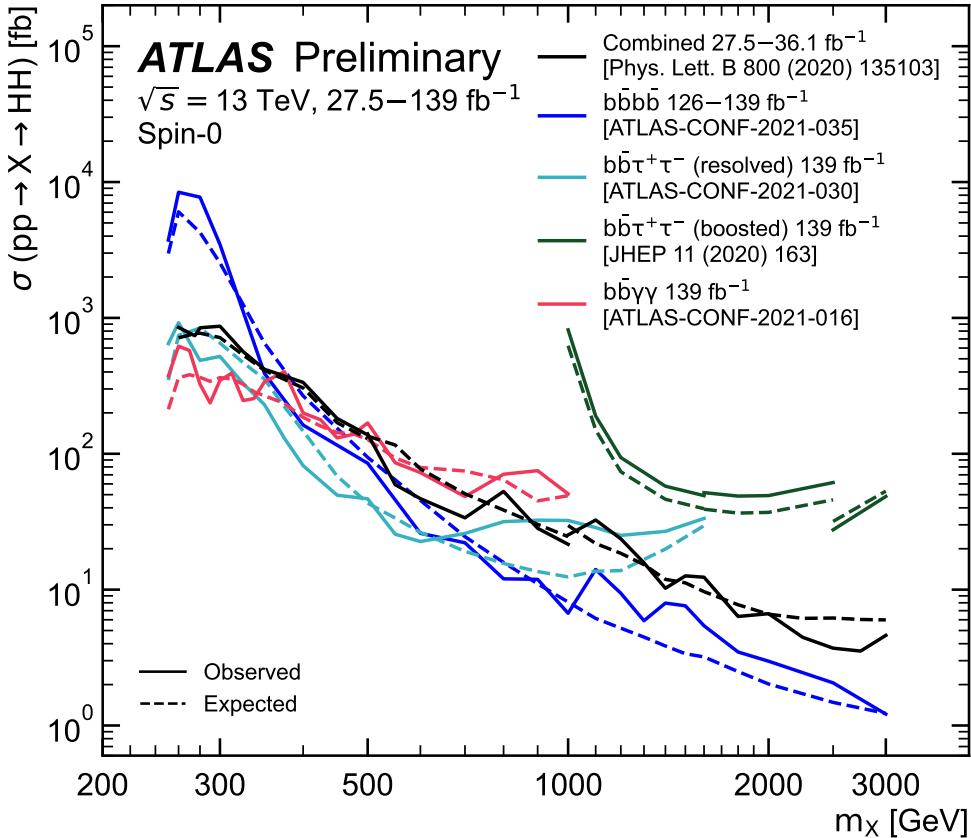


Figure 11.1: Comparison of full Run 2 ATLAS HH searches for spin-0 resonances. The $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel (blue) is compared with full Run 2 results from $b\bar{b}\tau^+\tau^-$ (both resolved and boosted) and $b\bar{b}\gamma\gamma$, as well as the combined early Run 2 results. The $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel has leading sensitivity above a mass of around 700 GeV, and is competitive with other channels across much of the mass range, demonstrating a strong contribution to the ATLAS HH experimental results. [114]

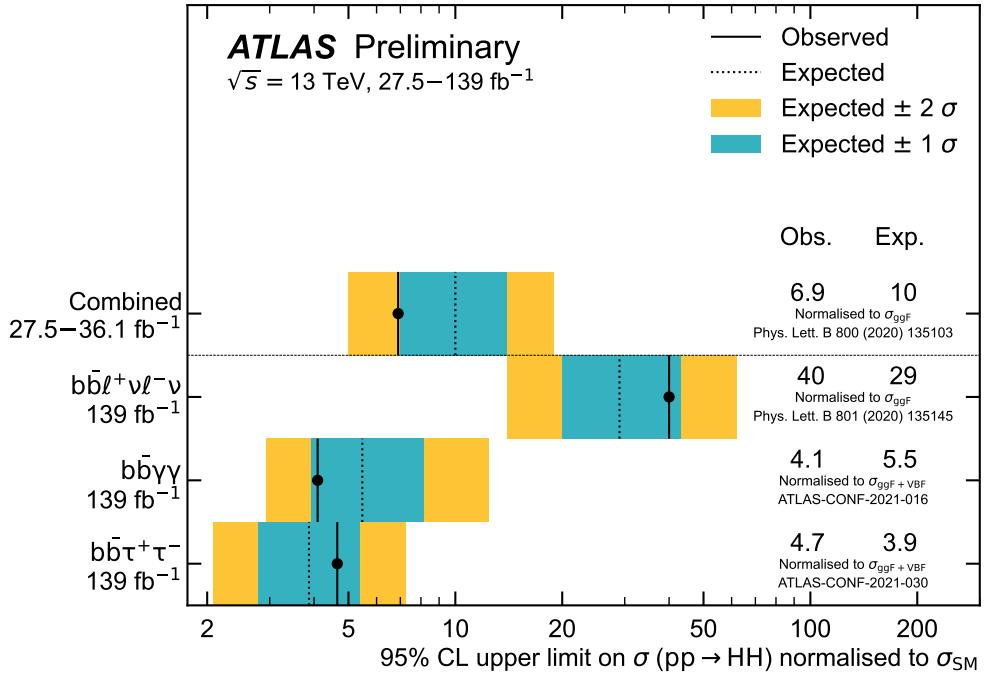


Figure 11.2: Comparison of full Run 2 ATLAS HH searches for Standard Model HH production. The preliminary results presented in this thesis are not yet included in these results. However, the results presented in Table 10.3 are quite competitive with the results from $b\bar{b}\tau^+\tau^-$ and $b\bar{b}\gamma\gamma$, two of the ATLAS channels with leading sensitivity in the search for HH . Note that these results include signals produced via both gluon-gluon fusion (ggF) and vector boson fusion (VBF), and are normalized as such, while the results of this thesis only include (and are normalized to) ggF production [114]

2663

Chapter 12

2664

CONCLUSIONS

2665 This thesis has provided an overview of the Standard Model, with an emphasis on pair
 2666 production of Higgs bosons and how this process may be used to both verify the Standard
 2667 Model and to search for new physics. An overview of the Large Hadron Collider and the
 2668 ATLAS detector has been provided, and the design and use of simulation infrastructure
 2669 has been explained, including work to improve hadronic shower modeling in fast detector
 2670 simulation. The translation of detector level information to analysis level information has
 2671 been explained, with an emphasis on jets and the identification of B hadron decay. Finally,
 2672 two searches for Higgs boson pair production have been presented, with a complete set of
 2673 results for resonant production included, focusing on searches beyond the Standard Model,
 2674 and a preliminary set of results for non-resonant production, targeting Standard Model
 2675 production, with variations of the Higgs self-coupling.

2676 This thesis represents a powerful contribution in multiple areas. My simulation work
 2677 provides two powerful options for the improvement of hadronic showering in fast calorimeter
 2678 simulation, and is emblematic of a hybrid approach to fast simulation which may leverage both
 2679 expert knowledge and the power of machine learning methods. The HH results presented in
 2680 this thesis are leading contributions to the full Run 2 statement from ATLAS about Higgs
 2681 boson pair production, and improve on previous results in a variety of ways.

2682 Within these HH searches, I was responsible for the development of the background
 2683 estimation and corresponding uncertainties, one of the most important aspects of the $4b$
 2684 channel. For the resonant search, I contributed strongly to the development of the selection,
 2685 the documentation, and final development of the result. No significant excesses are observed,
 2686 but a low mass mis-modeling has been reduced relative to the early Run 2 searches, and the

2687 limits set by the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel are very competitive with the other full Run 2 ATLAS results.

2688 For the non-resonant search, in addition to the background estimation, I was behind many
 2689 of the changes that were made relative to the resonant search. These changes result in a very
 2690 competitive limit of 4.4(5.9) times the Standard Model observed (expected), a result which is
 2691 both competitive with the other leading channels, and beats a projection of the early Run 2
 2692 result (from luminosity scaling) by 30 (40) %. This represents a significant improvement in
 2693 the analysis strategy, and sets the stage for a very promising set of HH results, both from
 2694 the full Run 2 combination and looking towards Run 3. Though an excess is seen for values
 2695 of $\kappa_\lambda \geq 5$, such an excess is demonstrated to be due to the low mass regime, where $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ has
 2696 limited sensitivity.

2697 With the contributions of this thesis work, the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ channel remains one of the leading
 2698 HH channels in sensitivity. With further increases in luminosity, as well as development of
 2699 even more advanced analysis techniques (see, e.g., Appendix B), the future is bright for HH
 2700 at the LHC.

2701

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 2702 [1] S. Gasiorowski and H. Gray, *Fast Calorimeter Simulation in ATLAS*, EPJ Web Conf.
 2703 **245** (2020) 02002. 7 p, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2756298> (cit. on pp. xxii,
 2704 56).
- 2705 [2] ATLAS Collaboration, *Search for pair production of Higgs bosons in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ final*
 2706 *state using proton–proton collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV with the ATLAS detector*, JHEP
 2707 **01** (2019) 030, arXiv: [1804.06174 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1804.06174) (cit. on pp. xxiii, 77, 86, 96, 103, 189,
 2708 193).
- 2709 [3] *Search for resonant pair production of Higgs bosons in the $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ final state using pp col-*
 2710 *lisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV with the ATLAS detector*, tech. rep., All figures including auxil-
 2711 *iary figures are available at [http://cds.cern.ch/record/2777861](https://atlas.web.cern.ch/Atlas/GROUPS/PHYSICS/CONFNOTES/ATL-</i>

 2712 <i>CONF-2021-035</i>: CERN, 2021, URL: <a href=) (cit. on
 2713 pp. xxiii, 177).*
- 2714 [4] A. Shmakov et al., *SPANet: Generalized Permutationless Set Assignment for Particle*
 2715 *Physics using Symmetry Preserving Attention*, 2021, arXiv: [2106.03898 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/2106.03898)
 2716 (cit. on p. xxiv).
- 2717 [5] D. M. Reiman, J. Tamanas, J. X. Prochaska, and D. Ďurovčíková, *Fully probabilistic*
 2718 *quasar continua predictions near Lyman- α with conditional neural spline flows*, 2020,
 2719 arXiv: [2006.00615 \[astro-ph.CO\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/2006.00615) (cit. on p. xxiv).
- 2720 [6] *A New Map of All the Particles and Forces*, [https://www.quantamagazine.org/a-](https://www.quantamagazine.org/a-new-map-of-the-standard-model-of-particle-physics-20201022/)
 2721 [new-map-of-the-standard-model-of-particle-physics-20201022/](https://www.quantamagazine.org/a-new-map-of-the-standard-model-of-particle-physics-20201022/), Accessed:
 2722 2021-07-23 (cit. on pp. 3, 27).
- 2723 [7] J. D. Jackson, *Classical electrodynamics; 2nd ed.* Wiley, 1975 (cit. on p. 2).

- 2724 [8] M. Thomson, *Modern particle physics*, Cambridge University Press, 2013, ISBN: 978-1-
 2725 107-03426-6 (cit. on p. 2).
- 2726 [9] M. Srednicki, *Quantum Field Theory*, Cambridge Univ. Press, 2007 (cit. on p. 2).
- 2727 [10] M. Gell-Mann, *A schematic model of baryons and mesons*, Physics Letters **8** (1964)
 2728 214, ISSN: 0031-9163, URL: <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0031916364920013> (cit. on p. 11).
- 2729 [11] G. Zweig, *An SU_3 model for strong interaction symmetry and its breaking; Version 1*,
 2730 tech. rep., CERN, 1964, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/352337> (cit. on p. 11).
- 2731 [12] O. W. Greenberg, *Spin and Unitary-Spin Independence in a Paraquark Model of
 2732 Baryons and Mesons*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **13** (20 1964) 598, URL: <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevLett.13.598> (cit. on p. 11).
- 2733 [13] M. Y. Han and Y. Nambu, *Three-Triplet Model with Double $SU(3)$ Symmetry*, Phys.
 2734 Rev. **139** (4B 1965) B1006, URL: <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRev.139.B1006> (cit. on p. 11).
- 2735 [14] F. L. Wilson, *Fermi's Theory of Beta Decay*, American Journal of Physics **36** (1968)
 2736 1150, eprint: <https://doi.org/10.1119/1.1974382>, URL: <https://doi.org/10.1119/1.1974382> (cit. on p. 14).
- 2737 [15] *The Nobel Prize in Physics 1979*, <https://www.nobelprize.org/prizes/physics/1979/summary/>, Accessed: 2021-07-23 (cit. on p. 15).
- 2738 [16] F. Englert and R. Brout, *Broken Symmetry and the Mass of Gauge Vector Mesons*,
 2739 Phys. Rev. Lett. **13** (9 1964) 321, URL: <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevLett.13.321> (cit. on p. 20).
- 2740 [17] P. W. Higgs, *Broken Symmetries and the Masses of Gauge Bosons*, Phys. Rev. Lett.
 2741 **13** (16 1964) 508, URL: <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevLett.13.508>
 2742 (cit. on p. 20).
- 2743 [18] G. 't Hooft, *Anticipating the Discovery of the Higgs Boson*, Physics Letters **54A** (1975) 47,
 2744 URL: <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/037596017590062X> (cit. on p. 20).
- 2745 [19] R. Brout, F. Englert, G. 't Hooft, and C. S. Gell-Mann, *Oblique Corrections to the
 2746 Standard Model*, Physics Letters **50A** (1975) 133, URL: <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/037596017590063X> (cit. on p. 20).
- 2747 [20] C. S. Gell-Mann, *Quarks*, Physics Letters **60A** (1975) 421, URL: <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/0375960175900641> (cit. on p. 20).
- 2748 [21] R. Brout, F. Englert, G. 't Hooft, and C. S. Gell-Mann, *Oblique Corrections to the
 2749 Standard Model*, Physics Letters **50A** (1975) 133, URL: <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/037596017590063X> (cit. on p. 20).

- 2749 [18] G. S. Guralnik, C. R. Hagen, and T. W. B. Kibble, *Global Conservation Laws and*
 2750 *Massless Particles*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **13** (20 1964) 585, URL: <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevLett.13.585> (cit. on p. 20).
- 2752 [19] ATLAS Collaboration, *Observation of a new particle in the search for the Standard*
 2753 *Model Higgs boson with the ATLAS detector at the LHC*, Phys. Lett. B **716** (2012) 1,
 2754 arXiv: [1207.7214 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1207.7214) (cit. on p. 20).
- 2755 [20] CMS Collaboration, *Observation of a new boson at a mass of 125 GeV with the CMS*
 2756 *experiment at the LHC*, Phys. Lett. B **716** (2012) 30, arXiv: [1207.7235 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1207.7235)
 2757 (cit. on p. 20).
- 2758 [21] S. Weinberg, *A Model of Leptons*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **19** (21 1967) 1264, URL: <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevLett.19.1264> (cit. on p. 25).
- 2760 [22] ATLAS Collaboration, *Search for the $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ process via vector-boson fusion*
 2761 *production using proton–proton collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV with the ATLAS detector*,
 2762 JHEP **07** (2020) 108, arXiv: [2001.05178 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/2001.05178) (cit. on pp. 30, 76, 103, 217, 219),
 2763 Erratum: JHEP **01** (2021) 145.
- 2764 [23] G. Branco et al., *Theory and phenomenology of two-Higgs-doublet models*, Physics
 2765 Reports **516** (2012) 1, Theory and phenomenology of two-Higgs-doublet models,
 2766 ISSN: 0370-1573, URL: <http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0370157312000695> (cit. on pp. 31, 32).
- 2768 [24] K. Agashe, H. Davoudiasl, G. Perez, and A. Soni, *Warped gravitons at the CERN*
 2769 *LHC and beyond*, Phys. Rev. D **76** (3 2007) 036006, URL: <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevD.76.036006> (cit. on pp. 31, 32).
- 2771 [25] A. Carvalho, *Gravity particles from Warped Extra Dimensions, predictions for LHC*,
 2772 2018, arXiv: [1404.0102 \[hep-ph\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1404.0102) (cit. on pp. 31, 32, 192).

- 2773 [26] ATLAS Collaboration, *Combination of searches for Higgs boson pairs in pp collisions*
 2774 at $\sqrt{s} = 13 \text{ TeV}$ with the ATLAS detector, *Phys. Lett. B* **800** (2020) 135103, arXiv:
 2775 1906.02025 [hep-ex] (cit. on pp. 32, 35, 76, 196).
- 2776 [27] P. D. Group et al., *Review of Particle Physics*, *Progress of Theoretical and Experimental*
 2777 *Physics* **2020** (2020), 083C01, ISSN: 2050-3911, eprint: <https://academic.oup.com/ptep/article-pdf/2020/8/083C01/34673722/ptaa104.pdf>, URL: <https://doi.org/10.1093/ptep/ptaa104> (cit. on p. 34).
- 2780 [28] T. van Ritbergen and R. G. Stuart, *On the precise determination of the Fermi coupling*
 2781 *constant from the muon lifetime*, *Nuclear Physics B* **564** (2000) 343, ISSN: 0550-3213,
 2782 URL: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0550-3213\(99\)00572-6](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0550-3213(99)00572-6) (cit. on p. 34).
- 2783 [29] S. Dawson, A. Ismail, and I. Low, *What's in the loop? The anatomy of double Higgs*
 2784 *production*, *Physical Review D* **91** (2015), ISSN: 1550-2368, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.91.115008> (cit. on p. 34).
- 2786 [30] A. M. Sirunyan et al., *Measurement of the top quark Yukawa coupling from $t\bar{t}$ kinematic*
 2787 *distributions in the dilepton final state in proton-proton collisions at $\sqrt{s}=13 \text{ TeV}$* ,
 2788 *Physical Review D* **102** (2020), ISSN: 2470-0029, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.102.092013> (cit. on p. 34).
- 2790 [31] S. Dawson, S. Dittmaier, and M. Spira, *Neutral Higgs-boson pair production at hadron*
 2791 *colliders: QCD corrections*, *Physical Review D* **58** (1998), ISSN: 1089-4918, URL:
 2792 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.58.115012> (cit. on pp. 36, 217).
- 2793 [32] S. Borowka et al., *Higgs Boson Pair Production in Gluon Fusion at Next-to-Leading*
 2794 *Order with Full Top-Quark Mass Dependence*, *Physical Review Letters* **117** (2016),
 2795 ISSN: 1079-7114, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.117.012001>
 2796 (cit. on pp. 36, 217).

- 2797 [33] J. Baglio et al., *Gluon fusion into Higgs pairs at NLO QCD and the top mass*
2798 *scheme*, The European Physical Journal C **79** (2019), ISSN: 1434-6052, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1140/epjc/s10052-019-6973-3> (cit. on pp. 36, 217).
- 2800 [34] D. de Florian and J. Mazzitelli, *Higgs Boson Pair Production at Next-to-Next-to-*
2801 *Leading Order in QCD*, Physical Review Letters **111** (2013), ISSN: 1079-7114, URL:
2802 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.111.201801> (cit. on pp. 36, 217).
- 2803 [35] D. Y. Shao, C. S. Li, H. T. Li, and J. Wang, *Threshold resummation effects in Higgs*
2804 *boson pair production at the LHC*, Journal of High Energy Physics **2013** (2013), ISSN:
2805 1029-8479, URL: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP07\(2013\)169](http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP07(2013)169) (cit. on pp. 36,
2806 217).
- 2807 [36] D. de Florian and J. Mazzitelli, *Higgs pair production at next-to-next-to-leading*
2808 *logarithmic accuracy at the LHC*, 2015, arXiv: [1505.07122 \[hep-ph\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.07122) (cit. on pp. 36,
2809 217).
- 2810 [37] M. Grazzini et al., *Higgs boson pair production at NNLO with top quark mass effects*,
2811 Journal of High Energy Physics **2018** (2018), ISSN: 1029-8479, URL: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP05\(2018\)059](http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP05(2018)059) (cit. on pp. 36, 217).
- 2813 [38] J. Baglio et al., *gg → HH: Combined uncertainties*, Physical Review D **103** (2021),
2814 ISSN: 2470-0029, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.103.056002> (cit. on
2815 pp. 36, 217).
- 2816 [39] F. Dulat, A. Lazopoulos, and B. Mistlberger, *iHixs 2 — Inclusive Higgs cross sections*,
2817 Computer Physics Communications **233** (2018) 243, ISSN: 0010-4655, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.cpc.2018.06.025> (cit. on p. 36).
- 2819 [40] ATLAS Collaboration, *Measurement prospects of the pair production and self-coupling*
2820 *of the Higgs boson with the ATLAS experiment at the HL-LHC*, ATL-PHYS-PUB-
2821 2018-053, 2018, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2652727> (cit. on p. 36).

- 2822 [41] D. de Florian, I. Fabre, and J. Mazzitelli, *Triple Higgs production at hadron colliders*
2823 *at NNLO in QCD*, Journal of High Energy Physics **2020** (2020), ISSN: 1029-8479, URL:
2824 [http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP03\(2020\)155](http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP03(2020)155) (cit. on p. 36).
- 2825 [42] A. Papaefstathiou, T. Robens, and G. Tetlamatzi-Xolocotzi, *Triple Higgs boson*
2826 *production at the Large Hadron Collider with Two Real Singlet scalars*, Journal of
2827 High Energy Physics **2021** (2021), ISSN: 1029-8479, URL: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP05\(2021\)193](http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP05(2021)193) (cit. on p. 36).
- 2829 [43] T. Robens, T. Stefaniak, and J. Wittbrodt, *Two-real-scalar-singlet extension of the*
2830 *SM: LHC phenomenology and benchmark scenarios*, The European Physical Journal C
2831 **80** (2020), ISSN: 1434-6052, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1140/epjc/s10052-020-7655-x> (cit. on p. 36).
- 2833 [44] D. Egana-Ugrinovic, S. Homiller, and P. Meade, *Multi-Higgs boson production probes*
2834 *Higgs sector flavor*, Physical Review D **103** (2021), ISSN: 2470-0029, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.103.115005> (cit. on p. 36).
- 2836 [45] CERN, *CERN’s accelerator complex*, <https://home.cern/science/accelerators/accelerator-complex>, Accessed: 27 July 2021 (cit. on p. 38).
- 2838 [46] J. Pequenao, “Computer generated image of the whole ATLAS detector”, 2008, URL:
2839 <https://cds.cern.ch/record/1095924> (cit. on p. 40).
- 2840 [47] ATLAS Collaboration, *The ATLAS Experiment at the CERN Large Hadron Collider*,
2841 JINST **3** (2008) S08003 (cit. on p. 41).
- 2842 [48] J. Pequenao and P. Schaffner, “How ATLAS detects particles: diagram of particle
2843 paths in the detector”, 2013, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/1505342> (cit. on
2844 p. 42).
- 2845 [49] ATLAS Collaboration, *ATLAS Insertable B-Layer: Technical Design Report*, ATLAS-
2846 TDR-19; CERN-LHCC-2010-013, 2010, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/>

- 2847 [1291633](#) (cit. on p. 43), Addendum: ATLAS-TDR-19-ADD-1; CERN-LHCC-2012-009,
 2848 2012, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/1451888>.
- 2849 [50] B. Abbott et al., *Production and integration of the ATLAS Insertable B-Layer*, JINST
 2850 **13** (2018) T05008, arXiv: [1803.00844 \[physics.ins-det\]](#) (cit. on p. 43).
- 2851 [51] A. Outreach, “ATLAS Fact Sheet : To raise awareness of the ATLAS detector and
 2852 collaboration on the LHC”, 2010, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/1457044>
 2853 (cit. on p. 45).
- 2854 [52] ATLAS Collaboration, *Performance of the ATLAS trigger system in 2015*, Eur. Phys.
 2855 J. C **77** (2017) 317, arXiv: [1611.09661 \[hep-ex\]](#) (cit. on p. 46).
- 2856 [53] ATLAS Collaboration, *The ATLAS Collaboration Software and Firmware*, ATL-SOFT-
 2857 PUB-2021-001, 2021, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2767187> (cit. on p. 46).
- 2858 [54] P. Nason, *A New method for combining NLO QCD with shower Monte Carlo algorithms*,
 2859 JHEP **11** (2004) 040, arXiv: [hep-ph/0409146 \[hep-ph\]](#) (cit. on pp. 50, 80).
- 2860 [55] S. Frixione, P. Nason and C. Oleari, *Matching NLO QCD computations with parton
 2861 shower simulations: the POWHEG method*, JHEP **11** (2007) 070, arXiv: [0709.2092
 2862 \[hep-ph\]](#) (cit. on pp. 50, 80).
- 2863 [56] S. Alioli, P. Nason, C. Oleari, and E. Re, *A general framework for implementing NLO
 2864 calculations in shower Monte Carlo programs: the POWHEG BOX*, JHEP **06** (2010)
 2865 043, arXiv: [1002.2581 \[hep-ph\]](#) (cit. on pp. 50, 80).
- 2866 [57] J. Alwall et al., *The automated computation of tree-level and next-to-leading order
 2867 differential cross sections, and their matching to parton shower simulations*, Journal of
 2868 High Energy Physics **2014** (2014), URL: [https://doi.org/10.1007/jhep07\(2014\)
 2869 079](https://doi.org/10.1007/jhep07(2014)079) (cit. on pp. 50, 79).
- 2870 [58] J. Bellm et al., *Herwig 7.0/Herwig++ 3.0 release note*, The European Physical Journal
 2871 C **76** (2016), URL: <https://doi.org/10.1140/epjc/s10052-016-4018-8> (cit. on
 2872 pp. 50, 79).

- 2873 [59] M. Bähr et al., *Herwig++ physics and manual*, The European Physical Journal C
 2874 **58** (2008) 639, URL: <https://doi.org/10.1140/epjc/s10052-008-0798-9> (cit. on
 2875 pp. 50, 79).
- 2876 [60] T. Sjöstrand et al., *An introduction to PYTHIA 8.2*, Computer Physics Communi-
 2877 cations **191** (2015) 159, ISSN: 0010-4655, URL: <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0010465515000442> (cit. on pp. 50, 80).
- 2879 [61] D. J. Lange, *The EvtGen particle decay simulation package*, Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A
 2880 **462** (2001) 152 (cit. on pp. 50, 79).
- 2881 [62] S. Höche, *Introduction to parton-shower event generators*, 2015, arXiv: [1411.4085](https://arxiv.org/abs/1411.4085)
 2882 [[hep-ph](#)] (cit. on p. 51).
- 2883 [63] S. Agostinelli et al., *Geant4—a simulation toolkit*, Nuclear Instruments and Methods
 2884 in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated
 2885 Equipment **506** (2003) 250, ISSN: 0168-9002, URL: <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168900203013688> (cit. on p. 52).
- 2887 [64] P. Calafiura, J. Catmore, D. Costanzo, and A. Di Girolamo, *ATLAS HL-LHC Com-
 2888 puting Conceptual Design Report*, tech. rep., CERN, 2020, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2729668> (cit. on p. 52).
- 2890 [65] A. Collaboration, *Computing and Software - Public Results*, <https://twiki.cern.ch/twiki/bin/view/AtlasPublic/ComputingandSoftwarePublicResults>, Accessed:
 2891 27 July 2021 (cit. on p. 53).
- 2893 [66] ATLAS Collaboration, *The ATLAS Simulation Infrastructure*, Eur. Phys. J. C **70**
 2894 (2010) 823, arXiv: [1005.4568](https://arxiv.org/abs/1005.4568) [[physics.ins-det](#)] (cit. on pp. 52, 79).
- 2895 [67] ATLAS Collaboration, *The new Fast Calorimeter Simulation in ATLAS*, ATL-SOFT-
 2896 PUB-2018-002, 2018, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2630434> (cit. on pp. 54,
 2897 55).

- 2898 [68] ROOT, *TPrincipal Class Reference*, <https://root.cern.ch/doc/master/classTPrincipal.html>, Accessed: 27 July 2021 (cit. on p. 54).
- 2899
- 2900 [69] M. Aharrouche et al., *Energy linearity and resolution of the ATLAS electromagnetic*
2901 *barrel calorimeter in an electron test-beam*, Nuclear Instruments and Methods in
2902 Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated
2903 Equipment **568** (2006) 601, ISSN: 0168-9002, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.nima.2006.07.053> (cit. on p. 55).
- 2904
- 2905 [70] ATLAS Collaboration, *Evidence for prompt photon production in pp collisions at*
2906 $\sqrt{s} = 7 \text{ TeV}$ *with the ATLAS detector*, ATLAS-CONF-2010-077, 2010, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/1281368> (cit. on p. 55).
- 2907
- 2908 [71] D. P. Kingma and M. Welling, *Auto-Encoding Variational Bayes*, 2014, arXiv: [1312.6114 \[stat.ML\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1312.6114) (cit. on p. 56).
- 2909
- 2910 [72] G. Aad et al., *Topological cell clustering in the ATLAS calorimeters and its performance*
2911 *in LHC Run 1*, The European Physical Journal C **77** (2017), ISSN: 1434-6052, URL:
2912 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1140/epjc/s10052-017-5004-5> (cit. on pp. 60, 61).
- 2913
- 2914 [73] A. Ghosh and A. Collaboration, *Deep generative models for fast shower simulation*
2915 *in ATLAS*, Journal of Physics: Conference Series **1525** (2020) 012077, URL: <https://doi.org/10.1088/1742-6596/1525/1/012077> (cit. on p. 62).
- 2916
- 2917 [74] R. Di Sipio, M. F. Giannelli, S. K. Haghight, and S. Palazzo, *DijetGAN: a Generative-*
2918 *Adversarial Network approach for the simulation of QCD dijet events at the LHC*,
2919 Journal of High Energy Physics **2019** (2019), ISSN: 1029-8479, URL: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP08\(2019\)110](http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP08(2019)110) (cit. on p. 62).
- 2920
- 2921 [75] ATLAS Collaboration, *Jet reconstruction and performance using particle flow with*
2922 *the ATLAS Detector*, Eur. Phys. J. C **77** (2017) 466, arXiv: [1703.10485 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1703.10485) (cit. on pp. 65, 78).
- 2923

- 2923 [76] ATLAS Collaboration, *Topological cell clustering in the ATLAS calorimeters and*
 2924 *its performance in LHC Run 1*, Eur. Phys. J. C **77** (2017) 490, arXiv: [1603.02934](https://arxiv.org/abs/1603.02934)
 2925 [[hep-ex](#)] (cit. on p. 65).
- 2926 [77] ATLAS Collaboration, *Variable Radius, Exclusive- k_T , and Center-of-Mass Subjet*
 2927 *Reconstruction for Higgs($\rightarrow b\bar{b}$) Tagging in ATLAS*, ATL-PHYS-PUB-2017-010, 2017,
 2928 URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2268678> (cit. on pp. 65, 216).
- 2929 [78] M. Cacciari, G. P. Salam, and G. Soyez, *The anti- k_T jet clustering algorithm*, Journal
 2930 of High Energy Physics **2008** (2008) 063, ISSN: 1029-8479, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1088/1126-6708/2008/04/063> (cit. on p. 65).
- 2932 [79] G. P. Salam, *Towards jetography*, The European Physical Journal C **67** (2010) 637,
 2933 ISSN: 1434-6052, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1140/epjc/s10052-010-1314-6>
 2934 (cit. on p. 65).
- 2935 [80] A. Collaboration, *Configuration and performance of the ATLAS b-jet triggers in Run*
 2936 *2*, 2021, arXiv: [2106.03584](https://arxiv.org/abs/2106.03584) [[hep-ex](#)] (cit. on p. 69).
- 2937 [81] ATLAS Collaboration, *ATLAS b-jet identification performance and efficiency mea-*
 2938 *surement with $t\bar{t}$ events in pp collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13$ TeV*, Eur. Phys. J. C **79** (2019)
 2939 970, arXiv: [1907.05120](https://arxiv.org/abs/1907.05120) [[hep-ex](#)] (cit. on pp. 68, 78, 171).
- 2940 [82] ATLAS Collaboration, *Topological b-hadron decay reconstruction and identification*
 2941 *of b-jets with the JetFitter package in the ATLAS experiment at the LHC*, ATL-
 2942 PHYS-PUB-2018-025, 2018, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2645405> (cit. on
 2943 p. 71).
- 2944 [83] R. Frühwirth, *Application of Kalman filtering to track and vertex fitting*, Nuclear
 2945 Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers,
 2946 Detectors and Associated Equipment **262** (1987) 444, ISSN: 0168-9002, URL: <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/0168900287908874> (cit. on
 2947 p. 71).
- 2948

- 2949 [84] ATLAS Collaboration, *Identification of Jets Containing b-Hadrons with Recurrent*
 2950 *Neural Networks at the ATLAS Experiment*, ATL-PHYS-PUB-2017-003, 2017, URL:
 2951 <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2255226> (cit. on p. 72).
- 2952 [85] *Expected performance of the 2019 ATLAS b-taggers*, <http://atlas.web.cern.ch/Atlas/GROUPS/PHYSICS/PLOTS/FTAG-2019-005/>, Accessed: 2021-07-14 (cit. on
 2953 p. 74).
- 2955 [86] ATLAS Collaboration, *Search for Higgs boson pair production in the $b\bar{b}WW^*$ decay*
 2956 *mode at $\sqrt{s} = 13 \text{ TeV}$ with the ATLAS detector*, JHEP **04** (2019) 092, arXiv: [1811.04671 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1811.04671) (cit. on p. 76).
- 2958 [87] ATLAS Collaboration, *A search for resonant and non-resonant Higgs boson pair*
 2959 *production in the $b\bar{b}\tau^+\tau^-$ decay channel in pp collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13 \text{ TeV}$ with the*
 2960 *ATLAS detector*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **121** (2018) 191801, arXiv: [1808.00336 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1808.00336)
 2961 (cit. on p. 76), Erratum: Phys. Rev. Lett. **122** (2019) 089901.
- 2962 [88] ATLAS Collaboration, *Search for Higgs boson pair production in the $WW^{(*)}WW^{(*)}$*
 2963 *decay channel using ATLAS data recorded at $\sqrt{s} = 13 \text{ TeV}$* , JHEP **05** (2019) 124,
 2964 arXiv: [1811.11028 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1811.11028) (cit. on p. 76).
- 2965 [89] ATLAS Collaboration, *Search for Higgs boson pair production in the $\gamma\gamma b\bar{b}$ final state*
 2966 *with 13 TeV pp collision data collected by the ATLAS experiment*, JHEP **11** (2018)
 2967 040, arXiv: [1807.04873 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1807.04873) (cit. on p. 76).
- 2968 [90] ATLAS Collaboration, *Search for Higgs boson pair production in the $\gamma\gamma WW^*$ channel*
 2969 *using pp collision data recorded at $\sqrt{s} = 13 \text{ TeV}$ with the ATLAS detector*, Eur. Phys.
 2970 J. C **78** (2018) 1007, arXiv: [1807.08567 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1807.08567) (cit. on p. 76).
- 2971 [91] ATLAS Collaboration, *Reconstruction and identification of boosted di- τ systems in*
 2972 *a search for Higgs boson pairs using 13 TeV proton-proton collision data in ATLAS*,
 2973 JHEP **11** (2020) 163, arXiv: [2007.14811 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/2007.14811) (cit. on p. 76).

- 2974 [92] ATLAS Collaboration, *Search for non-resonant Higgs boson pair production in the*
 2975 *$b\bar{b}\ell\nu\ell\nu$ final state with the ATLAS detector in pp collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13 \text{ TeV}$* , *Phys.*
 2976 *Lett. B* **801** (2020) 135145, arXiv: [1908.06765 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1908.06765) (cit. on p. 76).
- 2977 [93] ATLAS Collaboration, *Search for Higgs boson pair production in the two bottom quarks*
 2978 *plus two final state with in pp collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13 \text{ TeV}$ with the ATLAS detector*,
 2979 ATLAS-CONF-2021-016, 2021, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2759683> (cit. on
 2980 pp. 76, 190, 194).
- 2981 [94] CMS Collaboration, *Search for production of Higgs boson pairs in the four b quark*
 2982 *final state using large-area jets in proton–proton collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13 \text{ TeV}$* , *JHEP* **01**
 2983 (2019) 040, arXiv: [1808.01473 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1808.01473) (cit. on p. 76).
- 2984 [95] *Search for Higgs boson pair production in the four b quark final state*, tech. rep., CERN,
 2985 2021, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2771912> (cit. on p. 76).
- 2986 [96] CMS Collaboration, *Combination of Searches for Higgs Boson Pair Production in*
 2987 *Proton–Proton Collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13 \text{ TeV}$* , *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **122** (2019) 121803, arXiv:
 2988 [1811.09689 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1811.09689) (cit. on p. 76).
- 2989 [97] G. Bartolini et al., *Performance of the ATLAS b -jet trigger in $p\ p$ collisions at $\sqrt{s} =$*
 2990 *13 TeV* , tech. rep. ATL-COM-DAQ-2019-150, CERN, 2019, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2688819> (cit. on p. 79).
- 2992 [98] ATLAS Collaboration, *Luminosity determination in pp collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13 \text{ TeV}$*
 2993 *using the ATLAS detector at the LHC*, ATLAS-CONF-2019-021, 2019, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2677054> (cit. on pp. 79, 171).
- 2995 [99] J. Butterworth et al., *PDF4LHC recommendations for LHC Run II*, *J. Phys. G* **43**
 2996 (2016) 023001, arXiv: [1510.03865 \[hep-ph\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1510.03865) (cit. on pp. 80, 172).
- 2997 [100] T. Head et al., *scikit-optimize/scikit-optimize: v0.5.2*, version v0.5.2, 2018, URL: <https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.1207017> (cit. on p. 87).

- 2999 [101] A. Carvalho et al., *Higgs pair production: choosing benchmarks with cluster analysis*,
 3000 Journal of High Energy Physics **2016** (2016) 1, ISSN: 1029-8479, URL: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP04\(2016\)126](http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/JHEP04(2016)126) (cit. on p. 99).
- 3001
 3002 [102] A. Rogozhnikov, *Reweighting with Boosted Decision Trees*, Journal of Physics: Conference Series **762** (2016) 012036, ISSN: 1742-6596, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1088/1742-6596/762/1/012036> (cit. on p. 104).
- 3003
 3004 [103] G. V. Moustakides and K. Basioti, *Training Neural Networks for Likelihood/Density
 Ratio Estimation*, 2019, arXiv: [1911.00405 \[eess.SP\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1911.00405) (cit. on p. 104).
- 3005
 3006 [104] T. Kanamori, S. Hido, and M. Sugiyama, *A Least-Squares Approach to Direct Im-
 portance Estimation*, J. Mach. Learn. Res. **10** (2009) 1391, ISSN: 1532-4435 (cit. on
 3007 p. 104).
- 3008
 3009 [105] A. Andreassen and B. Nachman, *Neural networks for full phase-space reweighting
 and parameter tuning*, Physical Review D **101** (2020), ISSN: 2470-0029, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.101.091901> (cit. on p. 105).
- 3010
 3011 [106] S. Fort, H. Hu, and B. Lakshminarayanan, *Deep Ensembles: A Loss Landscape Per-
 spective*, 2020, arXiv: [1912.02757 \[stat.ML\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1912.02757) (cit. on p. 106).
- 3012
 3013 [107] B. Efron, *Bootstrap Methods: Another Look at the Jackknife*, Ann. Statist. **7** (1979) 1,
 3014 URL: <https://doi.org/10.1214/aos/1176344552> (cit. on p. 163).
- 3015
 3016 [108] ATLAS Collaboration, *Jet energy scale and resolution measured in proton–proton
 collisions at $\sqrt{s} = 13\text{ TeV}$ with the ATLAS detector*, (2020), arXiv: [2007 . 02645 \[hep-ex\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/2007.02645) (cit. on p. 171).
- 3017
 3018 [109] J. Adelman et al., *Search for Higgs boson pair production in the $b\bar{b}\gamma\gamma$ final state with
 the full Run 2 13 TeV pp collision data collected by the ATLAS Experiment Supporting
 note.*, tech. rep., CERN, 2020, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2711865> (cit. on
 3019 p. 171).
- 3020
 3021
 3022
 3023

- 3024 [110] G. Avoni et al., *The new LUCID-2 detector for luminosity measurement and monitoring*
 3025 in *ATLAS*, JINST **13** (2018) P07017. 33 p, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2633501> (cit. on p. 171).
- 3027 [111] D. de Florian et al., *Handbook of LHC Higgs Cross Sections: 4. Deciphering the Nature*
 3028 of the Higgs Sector, CERN Yellow Reports: Monographs, 869 pages, 295 figures, 248 ta-
 3029 bles and 1645 citations. Working Group web page: <https://twiki.cern.ch/twiki/bin/view/LHCPhysics/>
 3030 CERN, 2016, URL: <https://cds.cern.ch/record/2227475> (cit. on p. 172).
- 3031 [112] A. L. Read, *Presentation of search results: the CLs technique*, Journal of Physics G:
 3032 Nuclear and Particle Physics **28** (2002) 2693, ISSN: 0954-3899 (cit. on p. 188).
- 3033 [113] G. Cowan, K. Cranmer, E. Gross, and O. Vitells, *Asymptotic formulae for likelihood-*
 3034 *based tests of new physics*, The European Physical Journal C **71** (2011), ISSN: 1434-6052
 3035 (cit. on p. 188).
- 3036 [114] *Summary of non-resonant and resonant Higgs boson pair searches from the AT-*
 3037 *LAS experiment*, tech. rep., All figures including auxiliary figures are available at
 3038 <https://atlas.web.cern.ch/Atlas/GROUPS/PHYSICS/PUBNOTES/ATL-PHYS-PUB-2021-031>: CERN, 2021, URL: <http://cds.cern.ch/record/2777013> (cit. on pp. 196–
 3040 198).
- 3041 [115] A. Sherstinsky, *Fundamentals of Recurrent Neural Network (RNN) and Long Short-*
 3042 *Term Memory (LSTM) network*, Physica D: Nonlinear Phenomena **404** (2020) 132306,
 3043 ISSN: 0167-2789, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.physd.2019.132306> (cit. on
 3044 p. 221).
- 3045 [116] M. Zaheer et al., *Deep Sets*, 2018, arXiv: [1703.06114 \[cs.LG\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1703.06114) (cit. on p. 221).
- 3046 [117] J. Zhou et al., *Graph Neural Networks: A Review of Methods and Applications*, 2021,
 3047 arXiv: [1812.08434 \[cs.LG\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1812.08434) (cit. on p. 221).
- 3048 [118] A. Vaswani et al., *Attention Is All You Need*, 2017, arXiv: [1706.03762 \[cs.CL\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1706.03762)
 3049 (cit. on p. 221).

- 3050 [119] I. Goodfellow, Y. Bengio, and A. Courville, *Deep Learning*, <http://www.deeplearningbook.org>, MIT Press, 2016 (cit. on p. 222).
- 3051
- 3052 [120] I. Kobyzev, S. Prince, and M. Brubaker, *Normalizing Flows: An Introduction and*
3053 *Review of Current Methods*, IEEE Transactions on Pattern Analysis and Machine
3054 Intelligence (2020) 1, ISSN: 1939-3539, URL: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1109/TPAMI.2020.2992934> (cit. on p. 227).
- 3055
- 3056 [121] L. Dinh, J. Sohl-Dickstein, and S. Bengio, *Density estimation using Real NVP*, 2017,
3057 arXiv: [1605.08803 \[cs.LG\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1605.08803) (cit. on p. 228).
- 3058 [122] C. Durkan, A. Bekasov, I. Murray, and G. Papamakarios, *Neural Spline Flows*, 2019,
3059 arXiv: [1906.04032 \[stat.ML\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1906.04032) (cit. on p. 228).
- 3060 [123] F. Pedregosa et al., *Scikit-learn: Machine Learning in Python*, Journal of Machine
3061 Learning Research 12 (2011) 2825 (cit. on p. 230).

3062

Appendix A

3063

OVERVIEW OF OTHER $b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ CHANNELS

3064 The results discussed above have been developed in conjunction with (1) a boosted channel
 3065 for the resonant search and (2) a vector boson fusion (VBF) channel for the non-resonant
 3066 search. Detailed discussions of these two channels are beyond the scope of this thesis, though
 3067 a combined set of resolved and boosted results are presented below. The VBF results are not
 3068 included in this thesis, but much of this thesis work has been useful in the development of
 3069 that result. For completeness, we therefore briefly summarize both analyses here.

3070 *A.0.1 Resonant: Boosted Channel*

3071 The boosted analysis selection targets resonance masses from 900 GeV to 5 TeV. In such
 3072 events, H decays have a high Lorentz boost, such that the $b\bar{b}$ decays are very collimated. The
 3073 resolved analysis fails to reconstruct such HH events, as the $R = 0.4$ jets start to overlap.

3074 The boosted analysis instead reconstructs H decays as large radius, $R = 1.0$ jets, with
 3075 corresponding b -quarks identified with variable radius subjets, that is jets with a radius that
 3076 scales as ρ/p_T , the p_T is that of the jet in question, and ρ is a fixed parameter, here chosen
 3077 to be 30 GeV, which is optimized to maintain truth-level double b -labeling efficiency across
 3078 the full range of Higgs jet p_T [77].

3079 Due to limited boosted b -tagging efficiency and to maintain sensitivity even when b -jets
 3080 are highly collimated, the boosted analysis is divided into three categories based on the
 3081 number of b -tagged jets associated to each large radius jet:

- 3082 • 4 b category: two b -tagged jets in each
- 3083 • 2 $b - 1$ category: two b -tagged jets in one, one in the other

- 3084 • $1b - 1$ category: one b -tagged jet in each

3085 The analysis then proceeds in each of these categories.

3086 The resolved and boosted channels are combined for resonance masses from 900 GeV to
 3087 1.5 TeV inclusive. To keep the channels statistically independent, the boosted channel vetoes
 3088 events passing the resolved analysis selection.

3089 A.0.2 *Non-resonant: VBF Channel*

3090 The vector boson fusion channel is considered for the non-resonant search, and builds off of
 3091 the work developed in [22]. While the sensitivity is in general much more limited than the
 3092 gluon-gluon fusion analysis due to the much smaller production cross section (1.726 fb at \sqrt{s}
 3093 = 13 TeV [31–38]), VBF is sensitive to a variety of Beyond the Standard Model physics, both
 3094 complementary and orthogonal to the theoretical scope of gluon-gluon fusion. Representative
 3095 Feynman diagrams are shown in Figure A.1.

3096 The VBF channel proceeds very similarly to the ggF, with the primary differences being
 3097 the kinematic selections and the categorization, which are impacted by the presence of two
 3098 *VBF jets*, resulting from the two initial state quarks. The ggF channel result presented here
 3099 includes a veto on VBF events, such that if events pass the full VBF selection, they are not
 3100 included in the set of events considered for the ggF result.

3101 Beginning with the assumption of four HH jets and two VBF jets, the VBF channel first
 3102 requires an event to have a minimum six jets. The VBF jets are reconstructed as the two jets
 3103 with the highest di-jet invariant mass, m_{jj} , out of the set of all non-tagged jets in the event.
 3104 If no such pair exists (i.e., there are less than two non-tagged jets), the event is placed in the
 3105 ggF channel. To reduce the number of background events, three cuts are then applied, VBF
 3106 jets are required to have $\Delta\eta > 3$ and a combined invariant mass of $m_{jj} > 1000$ GeV. HH
 3107 jets are identified as in the ggF channel, and the vector sum of the p_T of the HH and VBF
 3108 jets is required to be less than 65 GeV. The remainder of the analysis proceeds similarly to
 3109 the ggF channel, and events failing any stage of this selection are considered for ggF.

₃₁₁₀ Note that the background estimation for the VBF channel is inherited from the resonant
₃₁₁₁ and ggF analyses, a significant additional contribution of this thesis work.

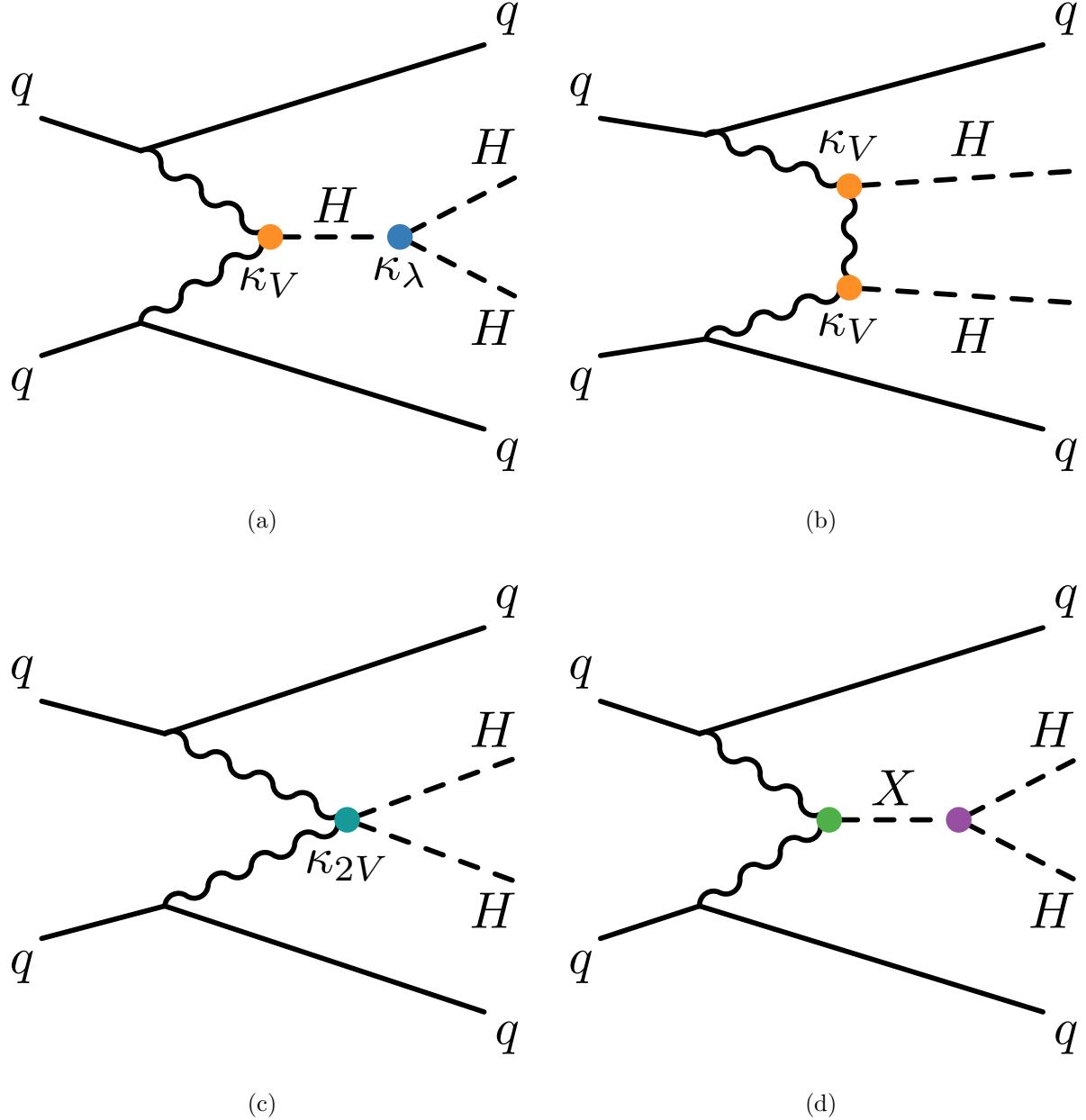


Figure A.1: Representative Feynman diagrams for the VBF channel. While this channel may be used for both resonant and non-resonant searches [22], this thesis work was developed concurrently with a focused non-resonant search. In addition to variations of the trilinear coupling, κ_λ , VBF is sensitive to various Higgs couplings to vector bosons, namely κ_V and κ_{2V} , attached to VVH and $VVHH$ vertices respectively.

Appendix B

FUTURE IDEAS FOR $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$

The searches presented in this thesis make use of a large suite of sophisticated techniques, selected through careful study and validation. During this process, a variety of interesting directions for the $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ analysis were explored by this thesis author, in collaboration with a few others¹, but were not used due to a variety of constraints. We present two such interesting directions here, with the hope of encouraging further exploration of these techniques in future work.

3120 B.1 pairAGraph: A New Method for Jet Pairing

As discussed in Chapter 7, one of the main problems to solve is the pairing of b -jets into Higgs candidates. Figure 7.1 demonstrates that the choice of the pairing method, while important for achieving good reconstruction of signal events, also significantly impacts the structure of non- HH events, leading to various biases in the background estimate. Evaluation of the pairing method therefore must take both of these factors into account. While we have presented some advantages in respective contexts for the pairing methods considered here, we of course would like to explore further improvements to this important component of the analysis.

To that end, we note that all of the pairing methods considered here share a common feature: four jets are selected, and the pairing is some discrimination between the available three pairings of these four jets. For the methods used in this analysis, the jet selection proceeds via a simple p_T ordering, with b -tagged jets receiving a higher priority than non-

¹Notably Nicole Hartman (SLAC), who spearheaded much of the development and proof of concept work, in collaboration with Michael Kagan and Rafael Teixeira De Lima.

3133 tagged jets.

3134 With the advent of a variety of machine learning methods for dealing with a variable number
3135 of inputs (e.g. recurrent neural networks [115], deep sets [116], graph neural networks [117],
3136 and transformers [118]), a natural place to improve on the pairing is to consider more than
3137 just four jets. The pairing and jet selection is then performed simultaneously, allowing for
3138 the incorporation of more event information in the pairing decision and the incorporation of
3139 jet correlation structure in the jet selection.

3140 In practice, the majority of $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ events have either four or five jets which pass the
3141 kinematic preselection, and any gain from this additional freedom would come from events
3142 with greater than or equal to five jets. However, this five jet topology is particularly exciting
3143 for scenarios such as events with initial state radiation (ISR), in which the $HH \rightarrow 4b$ jets are
3144 offset by a single jet with p_T similar in magnitude to that of the $HH \rightarrow 4b$ system. Such
3145 events have explicit event level information which is not encoded with the inclusion of only
3146 the $HH \rightarrow 4b$ jets, and are pathological if the ISR jet happens to pass b -tagging requirements.

3147 Additionally, with the use of lower tagged regions for background estimation and alternate
3148 signal regions, this extra flexibility in jet selection may provide a very useful bias – since the
3149 algorithm is trained on signal, the selected jets for the pairing will be the most “4b-like” jets
3150 available in the considered set.

3151 For the studies considered here, a transformer [118] based architecture is used. This is
3152 best visualized by considering the event as a graph with jets corresponding to nodes and edges
3153 corresponding to potential connections – for this reason, we term this algorithm “pairAGraph”.
3154 The approach is as follows: each jet, i , is represented by some vector of input variables, \vec{x}_i ,
3155 in our case the four-vector information, (p_T, η, ϕ, E) of each jet, plus information on the
3156 b -tagging decision. A multi-layer perceptron (MLP) is used to create a latent embedding,
3157 $\mathbf{h}(\vec{x}_i)$, of this input vector.

To describe the relationship between various jets in the event, we then define a vector \vec{z}_i

for each jet as

$$\vec{z}_i = \sum_j w_{ij} \mathbf{h}(\vec{x}_j) \quad (\text{B.1})$$

3158 where j runs over all jets in the event (including $i = j$), the w_{ij} can be thought of as edge
 3159 weights, and $\mathbf{h}(\vec{x}_j)$ is the latent embedding for jet j mentioned above.

Within this formula, both \mathbf{h} and the w_{ij} are learnable. To learn an appropriate latent mapping and set of edge weights, we define a similarity metric corresponding to each possible jet pairing:

$$\vec{z}_{1a} \cdot \vec{z}_{1b} + \vec{z}_{2a} \cdot \vec{z}_{2b} \quad (\text{B.2})$$

3160 where subscripts $1a$ and $1b$ correspond to the two jets in pair 1, $2a$ and $2b$ to the jets in pair
 3161 2 for a given pairing of four distinct jets.

3162 This similarity metric is calculated for all possible pairings, which are then passed through
 3163 a softmax [119] activation function, which compresses these scores to between 0 and 1 with
 3164 sum of 1, lending an interpretation as probability of each pairing.

3165 In training, the ground truth pairing is set by *truth matching* jets to the b -jets in the
 3166 HH signal simulation – a jet is considered to match if it is < 0.3 in ΔR away from a b -jet in
 3167 the simulation record. Given this ground truth, a cross-entropy loss *TODO: cite* is used on
 3168 the softmax outputs, and w_{ij} and \mathbf{h} are updated correspondingly. Training in such a way
 3169 corresponds to updating w_{ij} and \mathbf{h} to maximize the similarity metric for the correct pairing.

3170 In evaluation, the pairings with a higher score (and therefore higher softmax output)
 3171 given the trained h and w_{ij} therefore correspond to the pairings that are most “ HH -like”.

3172 The maximum over these scores is therefore the pairing used as the predicted result from the
 3173 algorithm.

3174 Because the majority of $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ events have either four or five jets, it was found to
 3175 be sufficient to only consider a maximum of 5 jets. Consideration of more is in principle
 3176 possible, but the quickly expanding combinatorics leads to a rapidly more difficult problem.
 3177 The jets considered are the five leading jets in p_T . Notably, this set of jets may include jets
 3178 which are not b -tagged, even for the nominal 4 b region – therefore events with 4 b -tagged jets

3179 are not required to use all of them in the construction of Higgs candidates, in contrast to the
 3180 other algorithms used in this thesis.

3181 A comparison of the pairAGraph jet selection with the baseline selection used in Chapter
 3182 7 is considered in Table B.1 for the MC16a Standard Model non-resonant signal. As a
 3183 reminder, the baseline selection orders jets by p_T , selecting first the highest p_T b -tagged jets
 3184 (according to the b -tag region definition) and then the highest p_T non-tagged jets. The first
 3185 four jets in this ordering are used.

3186 For the comparison presented in Table B.1, only the leading five jets are considered in
 3187 applying both algorithms in order to compare results on more equal footing. The numbers
 3188 shown are the percent of the time that the correct jets are selected for the Higgs candidates
 3189 by each algorithm, given that the correct jets fall within these leading five jets, where “correct”
 3190 here means truth matched to the corresponding b -quarks. pairAGraph demonstrates a slight
 3191 improvement over the baseline for $4b$, which widens when considering lower b -tag categories.
 3192 Given that four b -quarks are present in all of these categories, this suggests that pairAGraph
 3193 is able to recover information in the case of, e.g., mis-tagged jets.

3194 Table B.2 compares the HH pairing accuracy of a few different pairing algorithms for
 3195 the Standard Model signal. Notably, pairAGraph demonstrates a higher pairing accuracy
 3196 immediately after paring, but all methods are quite comparable after the full analysis selection.

3197

3198 As mentioned in Chapter 7, though the pairing is quite important for signal events, it also
 3199 must be applied to events in data, where the overwhelming majority of events do not contain
 3200 HH . Though in general, pairing methods select for an HH -like topology, the additional
 3201 flexibility of pairAGraph to choose which jets enter the candidate HH system provides an
 3202 additional handle to shape the kinematics of events in data. Examples of this impact are
 3203 seen in Figures B.1 and B.2, which compare the $2b$ and $4b$ distributions of p_T of the HH
 3204 candidate system between BDT pairing and pairAGraph pairing before and after reweighting.
 3205 HH p_T was chosen as it is a variable which demonstrates both a large difference between
 3206 $2b$ and $4b$ and a residual mis-modeling after reweighting. As can be seen in Figure B.1, the

4b correct jets	96.7%	96.0%
3b+1 loose correct jets	96.3%	95.2%
3b correct jets	91.6%	83.2%

Table B.1: Percent of the time that the correct jets are selected for the Higgs candidates by each algorithm, given that the correct jets fall within the set of considered jets, where “correct” here means truth matched to the corresponding b -quarks. Only the leading five jets are considered in the assessment of both algorithms. Definitions of the $4b$ and $3b + 1$ loose categories are as described in Section 7.1, where $3b$ requires three b -tagged jets and the fourth jet is untagged. pairAGraph demonstrates a slight improvement over the baseline for $4b$, which widens when considering lower b -tag categories. Given that four b -quarks are present in all of these categories, this suggests that pairAGraph is able to recover information in the case of, e.g., mis-tagged jets.

	After Pairing	After Full Selection
D_{HH}	71.8%	93.6%
$\min \Delta R$	69.7%	94.7%
pairAGraph	78.4%	94.2%

Table B.2: Pairing accuracy evaluated for the Standard Model signal (MC16a), comparing D_{HH} and $\min \Delta R$ (discussed in Chapter 7) with pairAGraph trained on the Standard Model signal. Numbers are shown both immediately after pairing and after the full analysis selection. pairAGraph demonstrates a 7-8% higher accuracy than the other algorithms immediately after pairing, but all methods are quite comparable after the full analysis selection.

3207 *2b* and *4b* distributions are more similar before reweighting with pairAGraph. Figure B.2
 3208 further shows that the residual mis-modeling after reweighting is reduced, along with the
 3209 corresponding uncertainty. While this is not fully conclusive, it provides a hint that the jets
 3210 chosen for the *2b* event *HH* candidate system may be more “*4b-like*” than the jets chosen
 3211 with the baseline selection.

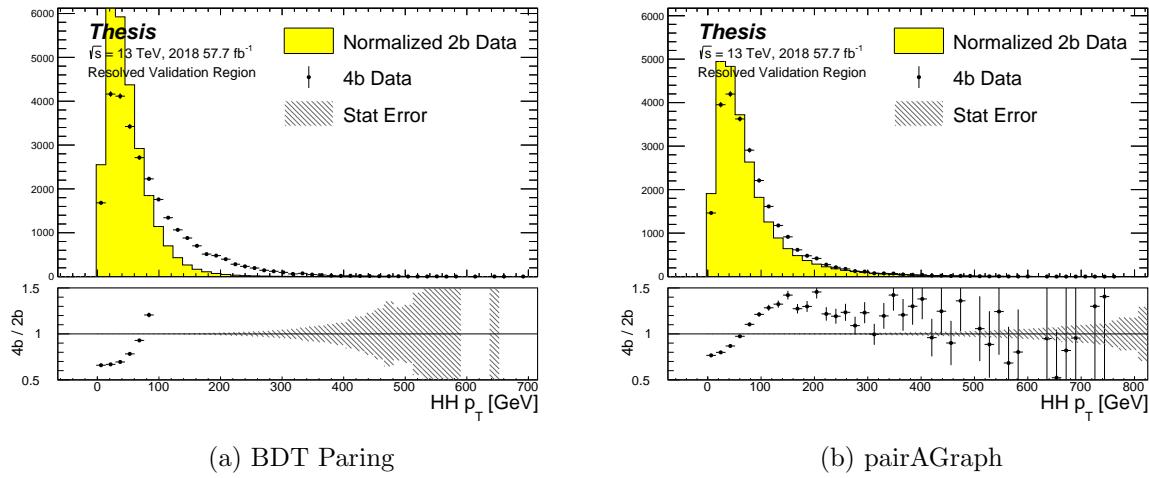


Figure B.1: Comparison of distributions of $HH p_T$ in the 2018 resonant validation region before reweighting for BDT pairing (left) and pairAGraph (right). $HH p_T$ is a variable with a large difference between *2b* and *4b*, but the relative shapes seem to be more similar for pairAGraph than for BDT paring, corresponding to the hypothesis that pairAGraph chooses more “*4b-like*” jets.

3212 **B.2 Background Estimation with Mass Plane Interpolation**

3213 The choice of a pairing algorithm that results in a smooth mass plane (such as $\min \Delta R$)
 3214 opens up a variety of options for the background estimation. While the method based on
 3215 reweighting of *2b* events used for this thesis performs well and has been extensively studied
 3216 and validated, it also relies on several assumptions. In particular, the reweighting is derived

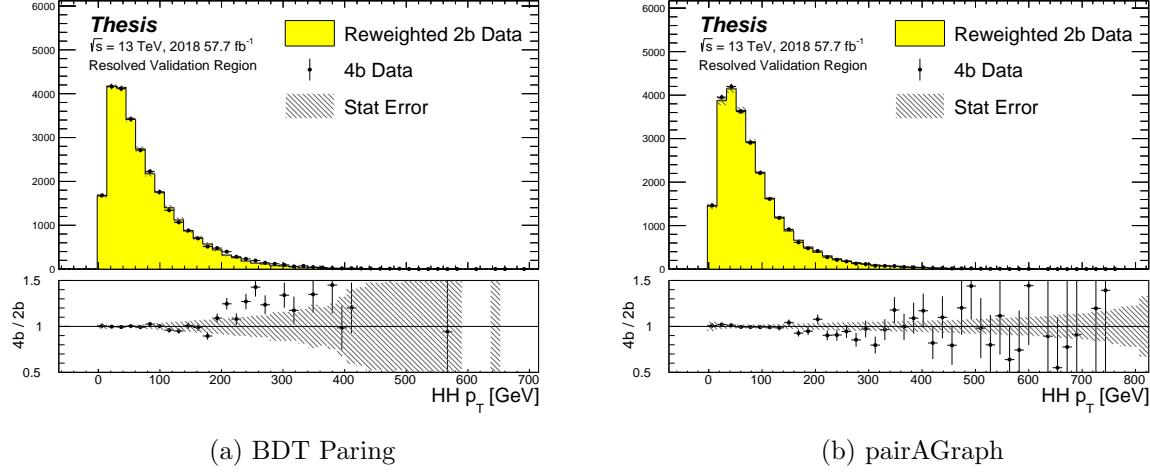


Figure B.2: Comparison of distributions of $HH p_T$ in the 2018 resonant validation region after reweighting for BDT pairing (left) and pairAGraph (right). $HH p_T$ is a variable with a large difference between $2b$ and $4b$, and the reweighted agreement in the high p_T tail is significantly improved with pairAGraph, with a corresponding reduction in the assigned bootstrap uncertainty in that region.

3217 between e.g., $2b$ and $4b$ events *outside* of the signal region and then applied to $2b$ events *inside*
 3218 the signal region, with the assumption that the $2b$ to $4b$ transfer function will be sufficiently
 3219 similar in both regions of the mass plane. An uncertainty is assigned to account for the bias
 3220 due to this assumption, but the extrapolation in the mass plane is never explicitly treated in
 3221 the nominal estimate. While the approach of reweighting $2b$ events within the signal region
 3222 does have the advantage of incorporating explicit signal region information (that is, the $2b$
 3223 signal region events), the importance of the extrapolation bias motivates consideration of
 3224 a method that operates within the $4b$ mass plane. This additionally removes the reliance
 3225 on lower b -tagging regions, allowing for the use of, e.g. $3b$ triggers, and future-proofing the
 3226 analysis against trigger bandwidth constraints in the low tag regions.

3227 The pairAGraph pairing method discussed in the previous section was developed concur-

3228 rently with these studies and demonstrates good properties for an interpolated estimate (as
3229 shown below), and is therefore used in the following.

The method considered here relies on the following: for a given vector of input variables (event kinematics, etc), \vec{x} , the joint probability in the HH mass plane may be written as:

$$p(\vec{x}, m_{H1}, m_{H2}) = p(\vec{x}|m_{H1}, m_{H2})p(m_{H1}, m_{H2}) \quad (\text{B.3})$$

3230 by the chain rule of probability. This means that the full dynamics of events in the HH mass
3231 plane may be described by (1) the conditional probability of considered variables \vec{x} , given
3232 values of m_{H1} and m_{H2} , and (2) the density of the mass plane itself.

3233 We present here an approach which uses normalizing flows [120] to model the conditional
3234 probabilities of events in the mass plane and Gaussian processes to model the mass plane
3235 density. These models are trained in a region around, but not including, the signal region,
3236 and the trained models are then used to construct an *interpolated* estimate of the signal
3237 region kinematics. This approach therefore explicitly treats event behavior within the mass
3238 plane, avoiding the concerns associated with a reweighted estimate. Validation of such a
3239 method, as well as assessing of closure and biases of the method, may be done in alternate
3240 b -tagging or kinematic regions, notably the now unused $2b$ region, results of which are shown
3241 below.

3242 B.2.1 Normalizing Flows

Normalizing flows model observed data $x \in X$, with $x \sim p_X$, as the output of an invertible, differentiable function $f : X \rightarrow Z$, with $z \in Z$ a latent variable with a simple prior probability distribution (often standard normal), $z \sim p_Z$. From a change of variables, given such a function, we may write

$$p_X(x) = p_Z(f(x)) \left| \det \left(\frac{d(f(x))}{dx} \right) \right| \quad (\text{B.4})$$

3243 where $\left(\frac{d(f(x))}{dx} \right)$ is the Jacobian of f at x .

3244 The problem of normalizing flows then reduces to (1) choosing sets of f which are both
3245 tractable and sufficiently expressive to describe observed data, and (2) optimizing associated

3246 sets of functional parameters on observed data via maximum likelihood estimation using
 3247 the above formula. Sampling from the learned density is done by drawing from the latent
 3248 distribution $z \sim p_Z$ (cf. inverse transform sampling) – the corresponding sample is then
 3249 $x \sim p_X$ with $x = f^{-1}(z)$.

3250 A standard approach to the definition of these f is as a composition of affine transfor-
 3251 mations (e.g. RealNVP [121]), that is, transformations of the form $\alpha z + \beta$, with α and β
 3252 learnable parameter vectors. This can roughly be thought of as shifting and squeezing the
 3253 input prior density in order to match the data density. However, this has somewhat
 3254 limited expressivity, for instance in the case of a multi-modal density.

This work thus instead relies on neural spline flows [122] in which the functions considered are monotonic rational-quadratic splines, which have an analytic inverse. A rational quadratic function has the form of a quotient of two quadratic polynomials, namely,

$$f_j(x_i) = \frac{a_{ij}x_i^2 + b_{ij}x_{ij} + c_{ij}}{d_{ij}x_i^2 + e_{ij}x_i + f_{ij}} \quad (\text{B.5})$$

3255 with six associated parameters (a_{ij} through f_{ij}) per each piecewise bin j of the spline and
 3256 each input dimension i . This is explicitly more flexible and expressive than a simple affine
 3257 transformation, allowing, e.g., the treatment of multi-modality via the piecewise nature of
 3258 the spline.

3259 The rational quadratic spline is defined on a set interval. The transformation outside of
 3260 this interval is set to the identity, with these linear tails allowing for unconstrained inputs.
 3261 The boundaries between bins of the spline are set by coordinates called *knots*, with $K + 1$
 3262 knots for K bins – the two endpoints for the spline interval plus the $K - 1$ internal boundaries.
 3263 The derivatives at these points are constrained to be positive for the internal knots, and
 3264 boundary derivatives are set to 1 to match the linear tails.

3265 The bin widths and heights are learnable ($2 \cdot K$ parameters) as are the internal knot
 3266 derivatives ($K - 1$ parameters), and these $3K - 1$ outputs of the neural network are sufficient
 3267 to define a monotonic rational-quadratic spline which passes through each knot and has the
 3268 given derivative value at each knot.

3269 In the context of the $HH \rightarrow 4b$ analysis, a neural spline flow is used to model the four
 3270 vector information of each Higgs candidate, conditional on their respective masses. The
 3271 resulting flow is therefore five dimensional, with inputs $x = (p_{T,H1}, p_{T,H2}, \eta_{H1}, \eta_{H2}, \Delta\phi_{HH})$,
 3272 where the ATLAS ϕ symmetry has been encoded by assuming $\phi_{H1} = 0$. Conditional variables
 3273 m_{H1} and m_{H2} are not modeled by the flow, but “come along for the ride”. A standard normal
 3274 distribution in 5 dimensions is used for the underlying prior. Modeling of the four vectors
 3275 was chosen in order to reduce bias from modeling m_{HH} directly.

3276 The trained flow model then gives a model for $p(x|m_{H1}, m_{H2})$ which may be sampled
 3277 from to reconstruct distributions of HH kinematics given values of m_{H1} and m_{H2} .

3278 *B.2.2 Gaussian Processes*

3279 The second piece of this background estimate is the modeling of the mass plane density,
 3280 $p(m_{H1}, m_{H2})$. This is done using Gaussian process regression – note that a similar procedure
 3281 is used to define a systematic in the boosted $4b$ analysis. Generally, Gaussian processes
 3282 are a collection of random variables in which every finite collection of said variables is
 3283 distributed according to a multivariate normal distribution. For the context of Gaussian
 3284 process regression, what we consider is a Gaussian process over function space, that is, for a
 3285 collection of points, x_1, \dots, x_N , the space of corresponding function values, $(f(x_1), \dots, f(x_N))$
 3286 is Gaussian process distributed, that is, described by an N dimensional normal distribution
 3287 with mean μ , covariance matrix Σ .

3288 For a single point, this would correspond to a function space described entirely by a
 3289 normal distribution, with various samples from that distribution yielding various candidate
 3290 functions. For multiple points, a covariance matrix describes the relationship between each
 3291 pair of points – correspondingly, it is represented via a *kernel function*, $K(x, x')$. As, in
 3292 practice, μ may always be set to 0 via a centering of the data, the kernel function fully defines
 3293 the considered family of functions.

The considered family of functions describes a Bayesian *prior* for the data. This prior
 may be conditioned on a set of training data points (X_1, \vec{y}_1) . This conditional *posterior* may

then be used to make predictions $\vec{y}_2 = f(X_2)$ at a set of new points X_2 . Because of the Gaussian process prior assumption, \vec{y}_1 and \vec{y}_2 are assumed to be jointly Gaussian. We may therefore write

$$\begin{pmatrix} \vec{y}_1 \\ \vec{y}_2 \end{pmatrix} \sim \mathcal{N} \left(\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} K(X_1, X_1) & K(X_1, X_2) \\ K(X_1, X_2) & K(X_2, X_2) \end{pmatrix} \right) \quad (\text{B.6})$$

3294 where we have used that the kernel function is symmetric and assumed prior mean 0.

By standard conditioning properties of Gaussian distributions,

$$\vec{y}_2 | \vec{y}_1 \sim \mathcal{N}(K(X_2, X_1)K(X_1, X_1)^{-1}\vec{y}_1, K(X_2, X_2) - K(X_2, X_1)K(X_1, X_1)^{-1}K(X_1, X_2)) \quad (\text{B.7})$$

3295 which is the sampling distribution for a Gaussian process given kernel K . In practice, the
3296 mean of this sampling distribution is used as the function estimate, with an uncertainty from
3297 the predicted variance at a given point.

The choice of kernel function has a very strong impact on the fitted curve, and must therefore be chosen to express the expected dynamics of the data. A common such choice is a radial basis function (RBF) kernel, which takes the form

$$K(x, x') = \exp \left(-\frac{d(x, x')^2}{2l^2} \right) \quad (\text{B.8})$$

3298 where $d(\cdot, \cdot)$ is the Euclidean distance and $l > 0$ is a length scale parameter. Conceptually, as
3299 distances $d(x, x')$ increase relative to the chosen length scale, the kernel smoothly dies off –
3300 further away points influence each other less.

3301 Coming back to our case of the mass plane, the procedure runs as follows:

- 3302 1. A binned 2d histogram of the blinded mass plane is created in a window around the
3303 “standard” analysis regions. Bins which have any overlap with the signal region are
3304 excluded.
- 3305 2. A Gaussian process is trained using the bin centers, values as training points. The
3306 scikit-learn implementation [123] is used, with RBF kernel with anisotropic length scale
3307 (l is dimension 2). The length scale is initialized to $(50, 50)$ to cover the signal region,

3308 and optimized by minimizing the negative log-marginal likelihood on the training data,
 3309 $-\log p(\vec{y}|\theta)$. Training data is centered and scaled to mean 0, variance 1, and a statistical
 3310 error is included in the fit.

3311 3. The Gaussian process is then used to predict the density $p(m_{H1}, m_{H2})$ in the signal
 3312 region. This may then be sampled from via an inverse transform sampling to generate
 3313 values (m_{H1}, m_{H2}) according to the density (specifically, according to the mean of the
 3314 Gaussian process posterior). Though in principle the Gaussian process sampling is not
 3315 limited to bin centers, this is kept for simplicity, with a uniform smearing applied within
 3316 each sampled bin to approximate the continuous estimate, namely, if a bin is sampled
 3317 from, the returned value is drawn uniformly at random within the sampled bin.

3318 4. The sampling in the previous step can be arbitrary – to set the overall normalization,
 3319 a Monte Carlo sampling of the Gaussian process is done to approximate the relative
 3320 fraction of events predicted both inside (f_{in}) and outside (f_{out}) of the signal region,
 within the training box. The number of events outside of the signal region (n_{out}) is
 known, therefore, the number of events inside of the signal region, n_{in} , may be estimated
 as

$$n_{in} = \frac{n_{out}}{f_{out}} \cdot f_{in}. \quad (\text{B.9})$$

3318 Note that the Monte Carlo sampling procedure is simply a set of samples of the Gaussian
 3319 process from uniformly random values of m_{H1}, m_{H2} , and is the most convenient approach
 3320 given the irregular shape of the signal region.

3321 This procedure results in a generated set of predicted m_{H1}, m_{H2} values for signal region
 3322 background events, along with an overall yield prediction.

3323 B.2.3 The Full Prediction

3324 Given the normalizing flow parametrization of $p(x|m_{H1}, m_{H2})$ and the Gaussian process
 3325 generation of $(m_{H1}, m_{H2}) \sim p(m_{H1}, m_{H2})$ and prediction of the signal region yield, all of the

3326 pieces are in place to construct an interpolation background estimate. Namely

- 3327 1. Gaussian process sampled (m_{H1}, m_{H2}) values are provided to the normalizing flow to
3328 predict the other variables for the Higgs candidate four-vectors. These are used to
3329 construct the HH system (notably m_{HH}).
- 3330 2. These final distributions are normalized according to the predicted background yield.

3331 *B.2.4 Results*

3332 All of the following results use the pairAGraph pairing algorithm, and reweighted results use
3333 the region definitions from the resonant analysis.

3334 The Gaussian process sampling procedure is trained on a small fraction (0.01) of $2b$ data
3335 to mimic the available $4b$ statistics. This fraction of $2b$ data is blinded, and the prediction of
3336 the estimate trained on this blinded region may then be compared to real $2b$ data in the signal
3337 region. The predictions for signal region m_{H1} and m_{H2} individually are shown in Figure B.3,
3338 and the resulting mass planes are compared in Figure B.4. Good agreement is seen.

3339 The $4b$ region is kept blinded for this work, meaning that a direct comparison of the
3340 Gaussian process estimate in the $4b$ signal region is not done. However, a Gaussian process is
3341 trained on the blinded $4b$ region and compared to the corresponding reweighted $2b$ estimate,
3342 trained per the nominal procedures from the analyses above. The predictions for signal
3343 region m_{H1} and m_{H2} individually are shown in Figure B.5, compared to both the control and
3344 validation region derived reweighting estimates, and the resulting signal region mass planes
3345 are compared in Figure B.6. The estimates are seen to be compatible.

3346 The Gaussian process estimate may then be used as an input to the normalizing flow
3347 estimate to form a complete background estimate. Figure B.7 shows such an estimate for the
3348 subsampled $2b$ signal region. Results for the prediction of the normalizing flow with inputs of
3349 real $2b$ signal region m_{H1} and m_{H2} are compared to the results of using Gaussian process
3350 predicted m_{H1} and m_{H2} , and are seen to be consistent, demonstrating the above closure of

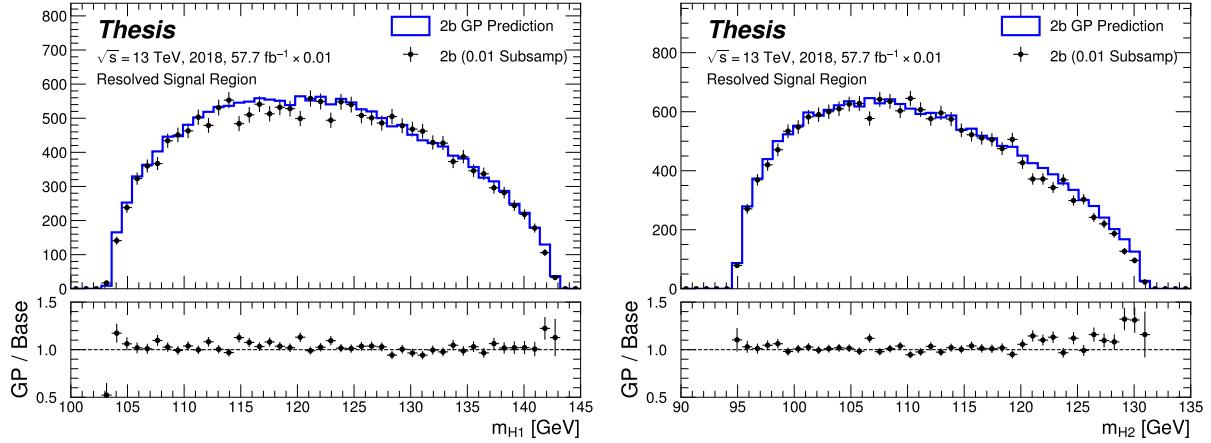


Figure B.3: Gaussian process sampling prediction of marginals m_{H_1} and m_{H_2} for $2b$ signal region events compared to real $2b$ signal region events for the 2018 dataset. Good agreement is seen. Only a small fraction (0.01) of the $2b$ dataset is used for both training and this final comparison to mimic $4b$ statistics.

3351 the Gaussian process prediction. Reasonable agreement with real $2b$ signal region data is
 3352 seen.

3353 Figure B.8 demonstrates the application of this process to the $4b$ region, closely following
 3354 how such an estimate would be used in the $HH \rightarrow b\bar{b}b\bar{b}$ analysis. As the $4b$ signal region
 3355 is kept blinded for these studies, no direct evaluation is made, but results are compared to
 3356 a resonant control region derived reweighting. Both signal region predictions are seen to
 3357 be comparable, though there are some systematic differences. However, only the nominal
 3358 estimates are compared here, with assessment of uncertainties on the interpolated estimate
 3359 left for future work.

3360 *B.2.5 Outstanding Points*

3361 While good performance is demonstrated from the nominal interpolated background estimate,
 3362 various uncertainties must be assigned according to the various stages of the estimate. These

3363 notably include

3364 • Assessing a statistical uncertainty on the normalizing flow training (cf. bootstrap
3365 uncertainty).

3366 • Propagation of the Gaussian process uncertainty through the sampling procedure.

3367 • Validation of the resulting estimate and assessment of necessary systematic uncertainties
3368 (e.g. from validation region non-closure).

3369 These are all quite tractable, but some, especially the choice of an appropriate systematic
3370 uncertainty, are certainly not obvious and require detailed study. In this respect, the
3371 reweighting validation work of the non-resonant analysis is certainly quite useful as a starting
3372 place in terms of the available regions and their correspondence to the nominal $4b$ signal
3373 region.

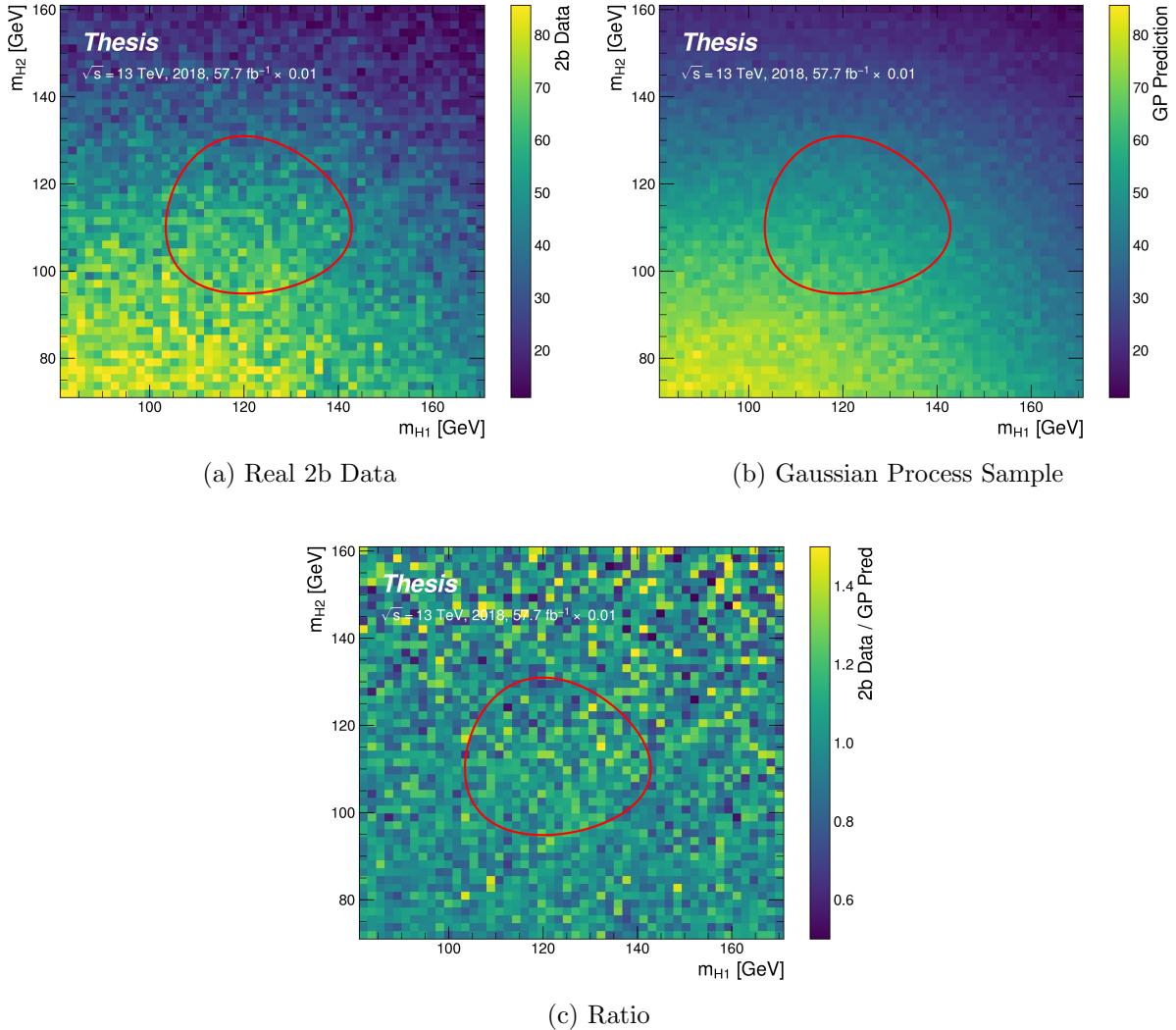


Figure B.4: Gaussian process sampling prediction for the mass plane compared to the real 2b dataset for 2018. Only a small fraction (0.01) of the 2b dataset is used for both training and this final comparison to mimic 4b statistics. Good agreement is seen.

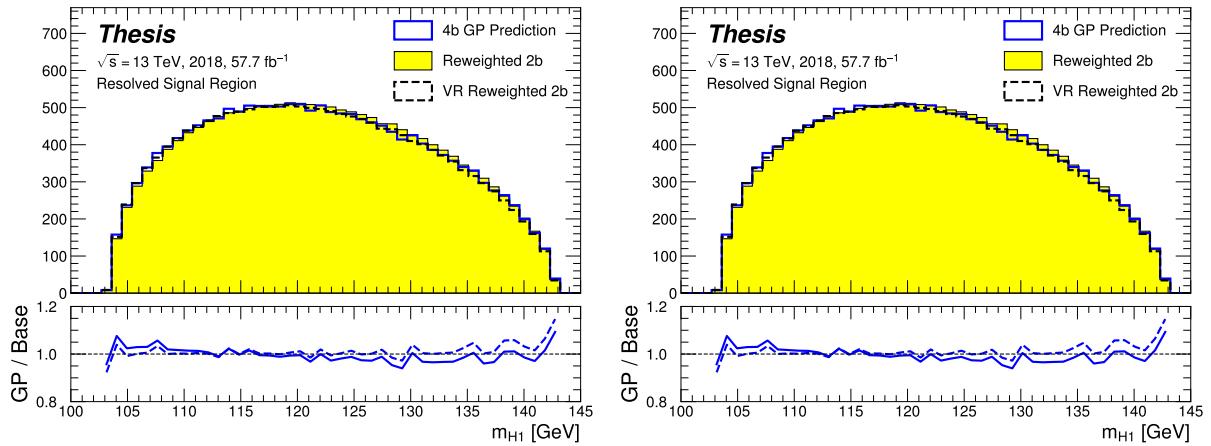


Figure B.5: Gaussian process sampling prediction of marginals m_{H1} and m_{H2} for 4b signal region events compared to both control and validation reweighting predictions. While there are some differences, the estimates are compatible.

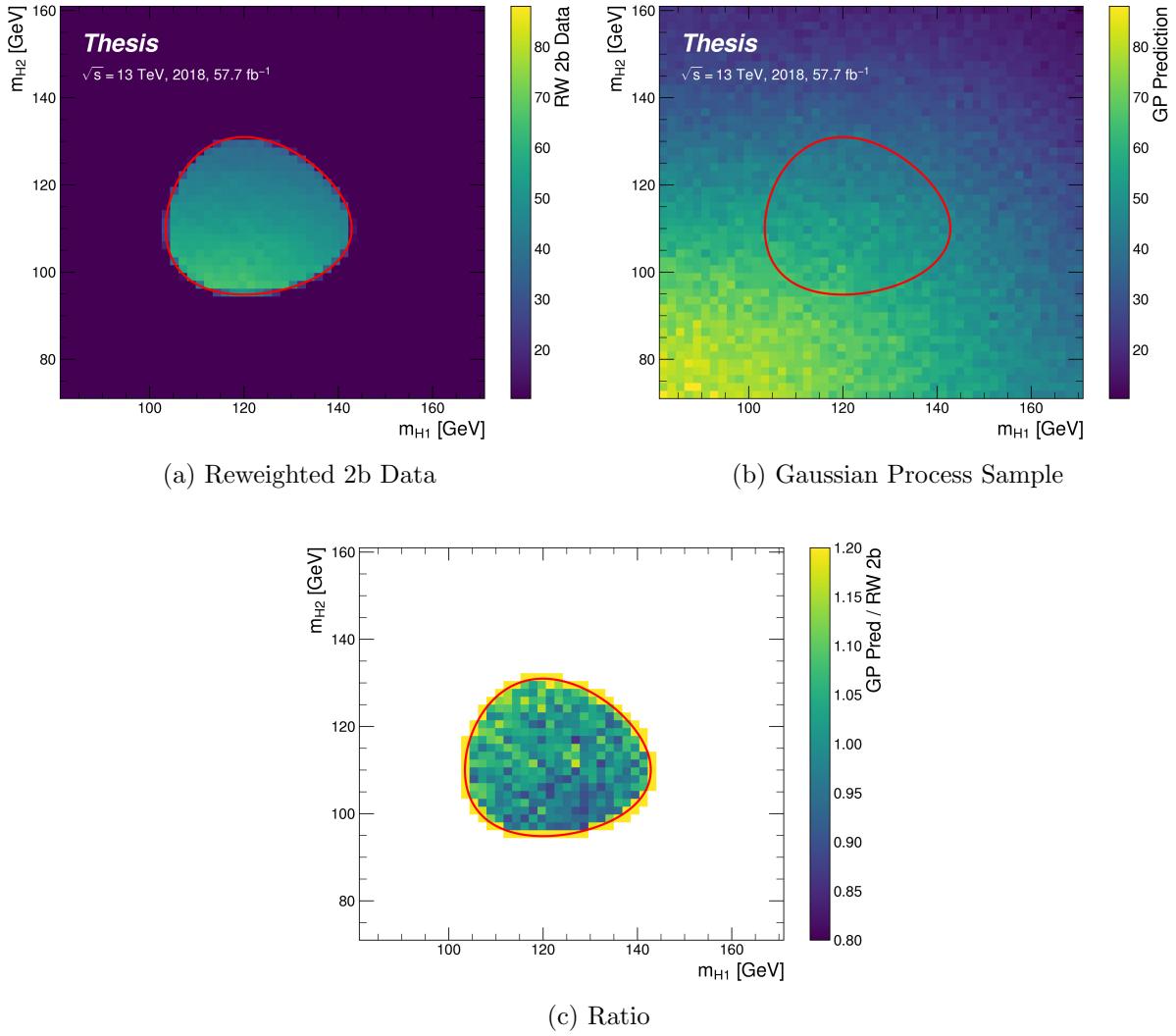


Figure B.6: Gaussian process sampling prediction for the $4b$ mass plane compared to the reweighted $2b$ estimate in the signal region. Both estimates are compatible.

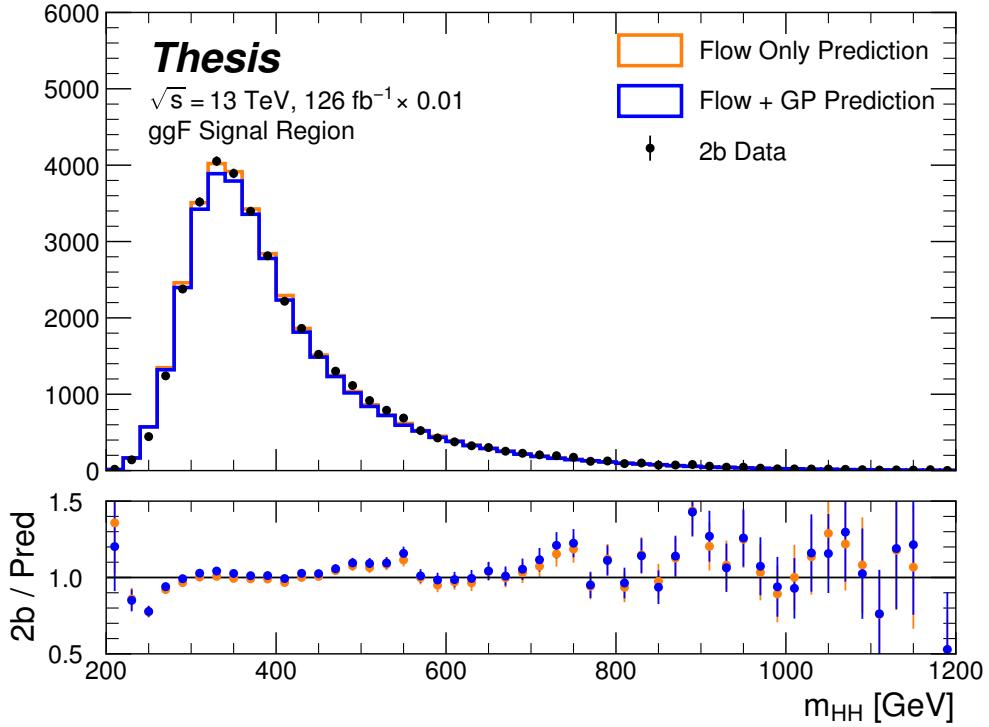


Figure B.7: Comparison of the interpolation background estimate with real 2b data in the signal region. Only 1 % of 2b data is used in order to mimic 4b statistics, and results are presented here summed across years. The “Flow Only” prediction uses samples of actual 2b signal region data for the input values of m_{H_1} and m_{H_2} , whereas the “Flow + GP” prediction uses samples following the Gaussian process procedure above, more closely mimicking a the full background estimation procedure. The two predictions are quite comparable, demonstrating the closure of the Gaussian process estimate, and the predicted m_{HH} shape agrees well with 2b data. Only 2b statistical uncertainty is shown.

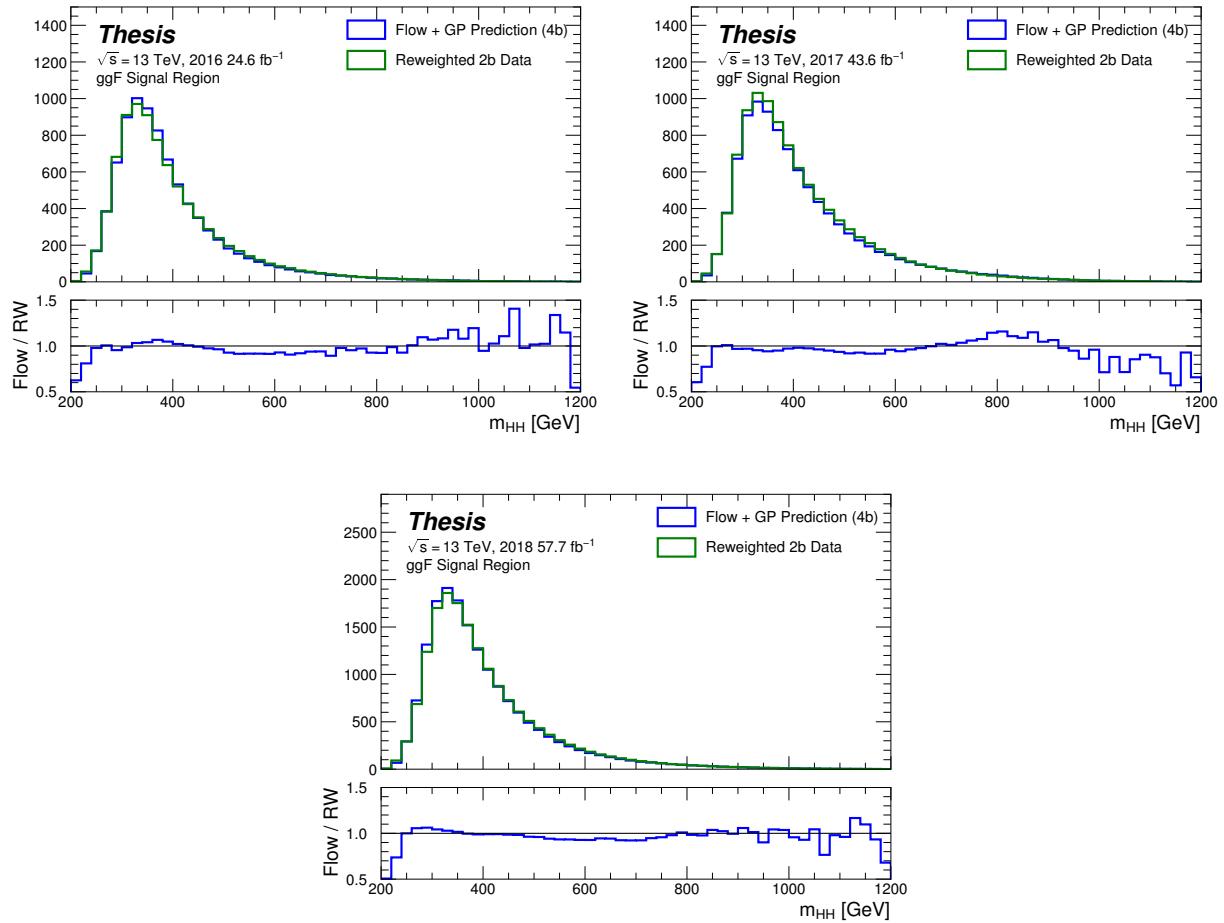


Figure B.8: Comparison of the interpolation background estimate in the $4b$ signal region with the control region derived reweighted 2b estimate, shown for each year individually. Results are generally similar, within around 10 %.